



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Sansk. O. 69. 4.538

~~Dr. B. B. B.~~







# WORKS

BY

THE LATE

**HORACE HAYMAN WILSON,**  
M.A., F.R.S.,

MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY, OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETIES OF  
CALCUTTA AND PARIS, AND OF THE ORIENTAL SOCIETY OF GERMANY;  
FOREIGN MEMBER OF THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE;  
MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL ACADEMIES OF ST. PETERSBURGH AND VIENNA,  
AND OF THE ROYAL ACADEMIES OF MUNICH AND BERLIN;  
PH. D. Breslau; M. D. Marburg, etc.;  
AND BODEN PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD.

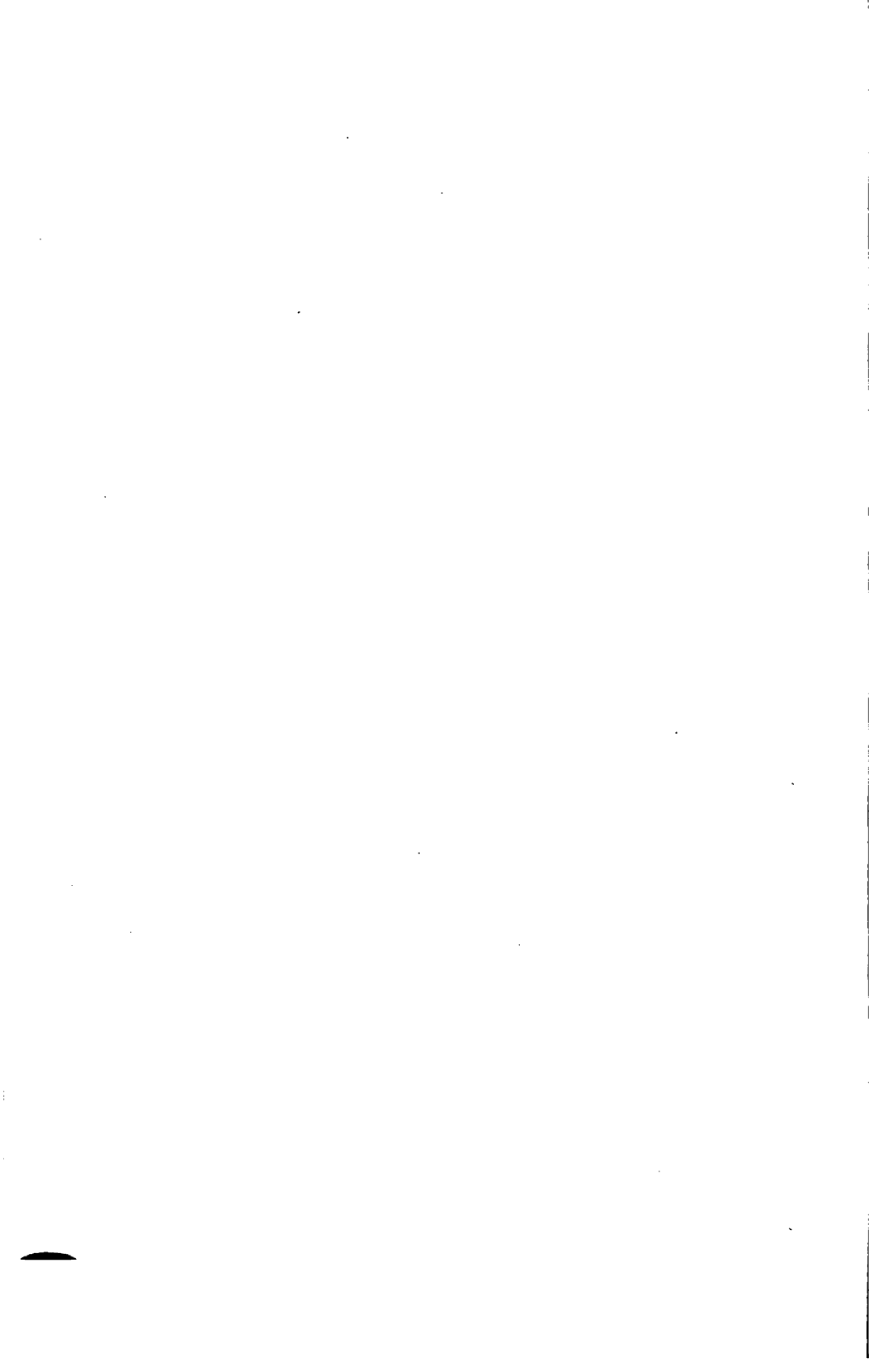
VOL. VIII.



LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1866.



THE  
**VISHŃU PURĀNA:**  
A SYSTEM  
OF  
HINDU MYTHOLOGY AND TRADITION.

TRANSLATED  
FROM THE ORIGINAL SANSKRIT,  
AND  
ILLUSTRATED BY NOTES  
DERIVED CHIEFLY FROM OTHER PURĀNAS,

BY THE LATE  
**H. H. WILSON, M.A., F.R.S.,**  
BODEN PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,  
ETC., ETC.

EDITED BY  
FITZEDWARD HALL.

**VOL. III.**

LONDON:  
TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.  
1866.



# VISHŪ PURĀŅĀ.

## BOOK III.

### CHAPTER I.

Account of the several Manus and Manwantaras. Swárochisha, the second Manu : the divinities, the Indra, the seven Řishis, of his period, and his sons. Similar details of Auttami, Támasa, Raivata, Chákshusha, and Vaivaswata. The forms of Vishúu, as the preserver, in each Manwantara. The meaning of Vishúu.

**MAITREYA.**—The disposition of the earth and of the ocean, and the system of the sun and the planets, the creation of the gods and the rest, the origin of the Řishis, the generation of the four castes, the production of brute creatures, and the narratives of Dhruva and Prahláda, have been fully related by thee, my venerable preceptor. I am now desirous to hear from you the series of all the Manwantaras, as well as an account of those who preside over the respective periods, with Śakra, the king of the gods, at their head.

**PARÁŚARA.**—I will repeat to you, Maitreya, in their order, the different Manwantaras,—those which are past, and those which are to come.

The first Manu was Swáyambhuva; then came Swárochisha; then, Auttami;\* then, Támasa; then, Raivata;

---

\* Some of my MSS. have Uttama. See note 2 at p. 5, *infra*.

then, Chákshusha: these six Manus have passed away. The Manu who presides over the seventh Manwantara, which is the present (period), is Vaivaswata, the son of the Sun.\*

The period of Swáyambhuva Manu, in the beginning of the Kalpa, † has already been described by me, together with the gods, Rishis, (and other personages) who then flourished.<sup>1</sup> I will now, therefore, enumerate the presiding gods, Rishis, and sons of the Manu, in the Manwantara of Swárochisha.<sup>2</sup> The deities of this period (or the second Manwantara) were the classes

\* The gods were said to be the Yámas (Vol. I., p. 109); the Rishis were Maríchi, Angiras, &c. (Vol. I., p. 100, note 2); and the sons were Priyavrata and Uttánápáda (Vol. I., pp. 107, 108). The Váyu adds, to the Yamas, the Ajitas, who share with the former, it observes, sacrificial offerings. The Matsya, Padma, Brahma Purānas, and Hari Vamśa ‡ substitute, for the sons, the grandsons, of Swáyambhuva, — Agnídhra and the rest (Vol. II., pp. 101, 102).

<sup>2</sup> This Manu, according to the legend of his birth in the Márkaṇḍeya Purāna, § was the son of Swárochis, so named from the splendour of his appearance, when born, and who was the son of the nymph Varúthini, by the Gandharva Kali. || The text, in another place, makes him a son of Priyavrata. ¶

\* Compare the *Laws of the Mánavas*, I., 61, 62.

† The present Kalpa, the Várāha, from *varāha*, 'boar'. See Vol. I., pp. 58, 59.

‡ *Śl.* 415.

§ Chapter LXIII.

|| I find Kāla.

¶ See p. 11, note ‡, *infra*. According to the *Bhāgavata-purāna*, VIII., I., 19, Swárochisha was son of Agni.

called Párávatas and Tushitas;<sup>1\*</sup> and the king of the gods was the mighty Vipáschit.† The seven Řishis<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Váyú gives the names of the individuals of these two classes, consisting, each, of twelve. It furnishes, also, the nomenclature of all the classes of divinities, and of the sons of the Manus, in each Manwantara. According to the same authority, the Tushitas were the sons of Kratu:‡ the Bhágavata calls them the sons of Tushitá by Vedaśiras.§ The divinities of each period are, according to the Váyú, those to whom offerings of the Soma juice and the like are presented collectively.

<sup>2</sup> The Váyú describes the Řishis of each Manwantara as the sons, or, in some cases, the descendants, in a direct line, of the seven sages, Atri, Angiras, Bhřigu, Kaśyapa, Pulaha, Pulastya, and Vasishtha: with some inconsistency; for Kaśyapa, at least, did not appear, himself, until the seventh Manwantara. In the present series,|| Ūrja is the son of Vasishtha; Stambha springs from Kaśyapa; Práña, from Bhřigu; Řishabha descends from Angiras; Dattoli is the son of Pulastya; Níšchara springs from Atri; and Arvarivat is the son of Pulaha. The Brahma Purána and Hari Vamśa ¶ have a rather different list, or, Aurva, Stambha, Kaśyapa,

---

\* We read, Vol. II., p. 27, after an enumeration of twelve names: "These, who, in the Chákshusha Manwantara, were the gods called Tushitas, were called the twelve Ádityas, in the Manwantara of Vairavaswata." But our text, as now appears, places the Tushitas in the second Manwantara, not in the sixth: see p. 12, *infra*. Nor, according to the *Váyú-purána*, were they Vishnú, Śakra, &c.

† The *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., I., 20, gives Rochana as the Indra of the second Manwantara or Patriarchate.

‡ Tushitá, according to the same authority, was their mother, as in our text, p. 17, *infra*.

§ So, rather, the *Bhágavata* appears to imply: VIII., I., 21.

|| Professor Wilson seems to have followed, here, his own MSS. of the *Váyú-purána*, exclusively; and they must differ greatly from those to which I, after him, have access. Instead of Ūrja occurs, in these MSS., what looks like a corruption of Turya or Ūrva; for Práña, Droña; for Dattoli, Dattátri; for Níšchara, Níšchala; and, for Arvarivat, Dhávat.

¶ Śl. 417.

were Urja, Stambha,\* Prāna, Dattoli,† Rishabha, Nis-

Prāna, Bṛihaspati, Chyavana, and Dattoli:‡ but the origin of part of this difference is nothing more than an imperfect quotation from the Vāyu Purāna; the two first, Aurva and Stambha, being specified as the son of Vasishṭha and the descendant of Kaśyapa, and then the parentage of the rest being omitted: to complete the seven, therefore, Kaśyapa becomes one of them. Some other errors of this nature occur in these two works, and from the same cause,—a blundering citation§ of the Vāyu, which is named as their authority:

एते महर्षयस्तात वायुप्रोक्ता महाव्रताः ।

A curious peculiarity, also, occurs in these mistakes. They are confined to the first eight Manwantaras. The Brahma Purāna omits all details of the last six; and the Hari Vamśa inserts them fully and correctly, agreeably to the authority of the Vāyu. It looks, therefore, as if the compiler of the Hari Vamśa had followed the Brahma, as far as it went, right or wrong, but had had recourse to the original Vāyu Purāna, when the Brahma failed him. Dattoli is sometimes written Dattoni and Dattotri; and the latter appears to have been the case with the copy of the Hari Vamśa employed by M. Langlois, who || makes one of the Rishis of this Manwantara, "le pénitent Atri." He is not without countenance in some such reading; for the Padma Purāna changes the name to Dattātreyā, no doubt suggested by Datta-atrī. Dattātreyā, however, is the son of Atri; whilst the Vāyu calls the person of the text the son of Pulastya. There can be no doubt,

\* Stamba is an equally common reading in my MSS.

† So read three of my MSS. Variants are Dattoni, Dattori, Dattobhi, Dattokti, Dantoli, Dantobhi, and Dambholi. See, further, Vol. I., p. 154, note ‡.

‡ In MSS. of the *Brahma-purāna* I find Stamba and Dattoni. The Calcutta edition of the *Harivamśa* has Stamba, Kaśyapa, and Dattoni.

§ In *Sl.* 418.

|| Vol. I., p. 38.



chara,\* and Arvarivat;† and Chaitra, Kimpurusha, and others were the Manu's sons.<sup>1</sup>

In the third period, or Manwantara of Auttami,<sup>2</sup> Su-

---

therefore, of the correct reading; for the son of Pulastya is Datoli. ‡ (Vol. I., p. 154.)

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu agrees with the text in these names, adding seven § others. The Bhágavata has a different series. || The Padma has four other names: Nabha, Nabhasya, Prasṛiti, Bhavana. The Brahma has ten names, including two of these, and several of the names of the Rishis of the tenth Manwantara. The Matsya has the four names of the Padma for the sons of the Manu, and gives seven others, Havindhra, Sukṛita, Mṛti, Apas, Jyotis, Aya, Smṛita (the names of the Brahma), as the seven Prajāpatis of this period, and sons of Vasishṭha. The sons of Vasishṭha, however, belong to the third Manwantara, and bear different appellations. There is, no doubt, some blundering, here, in all the books except the Váyu and those which agree with it.

<sup>2</sup> The name occurs Auttami, Auttama, and Uttama. The Bhágavata ¶ and Váyu agree with our text (p. 11, *infra*), in making him a descendant from Priyavrata. The Márkaṇḍeya calls him the son of Uttama,\*\* the son of Uttānapáda; †† and this appears to be the correct genealogy, both from our text and the Bhágavata. ‡‡

---

\* One MS. gives Nischira.

† The much more frequent lection known to me is Urvarivat.

‡ There is, I incline to think, room for very grave doubt as to both these points. See note † in p. 4, *supra*.

§ I do not count so many; and those that I find are very corruptly written.

|| At VIII., I., 20, it says there were seven, but names only Úrja and Stambha. Burnouf melts these two names into one.

¶ It calls him Priyavrata's son: VIII., I., 23.

\*\* LXXII., 39. Auttama is the grandson's name, in the *Márkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*.

†† LXXIX., 3. Suruchi is there said to be Uttama's mother. For the same parentage, see Vol. I., p. 159, of the present work.

‡‡ Not from the *Bhágavata*, certainly. See note ¶, in this page. As to our text, see note † at p. 11, *infra*.

śánti\* was the Indra, the king of the gods; the orders of whom were the Sudhámans,† Satyas, Śivas, Pradarśanas,‡ and Vaśavartins;¹ § each of the five orders consisting of twelve (divinities). The seven sons of Vasishthā were the seven Řishis;² and Aja,|| Paraśu,¶

¹ The Brahma and Hari Vamśa\*\* have, in place of these, the Bhánus; but the Váyū and Márkaṇḍeya†† concur with the text.††

² All the authorities agree in this; but the Brahma and Hari Vamśa§§ appear to furnish a different series, also; or even a third, according to the French translation: ||| 'Dans le troisième Manwantara parurent, comme Saptarchis, les fils de Vasichthā, de son nom appelés *Vásichthas*, les fils d'Hirañyagarbha, et les illustres enfans d'Oúrdja. The text is:

वसिष्ठपुत्राः सप्तासन्वासिष्टा इति विद्युताः ।

हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुता ऋषीः ¶¶ नाम सुतेजसः ॥

The meaning of which is: "There were (in the first Manwantara) seven celebrated sons of Vasishthā, who (in the third Manwantara) were sons of Brahmá (i. e., Řishis), the illustrious posterity

\* Satyajit, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 24.

† Five MSS. have Swadhámans.

‡ Pratardanas represents the reading of two MSS.

§ Three MSS. exhibit Vamśavartins. Professor Wilson put "Vasavertis".

|| In three MSS. Prajas occurs.

¶ A single MS. reads Parabhu.

\*\* Śl. 825.

†† In my three MSS. I find Pratardanas, as in the Calcutta edition, instead of Pradarśanas. The Calcutta edition, at variance with my copies, has Swadhámans, for Sudhámans.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 24, names the Satyas, Vedaśrutas, and Bhadras. Also see note \* at p. 17, *infra*.

§§ Śl. 422.

||| Vol. I., p. 38.

¶¶ The Calcutta edition reads ऊर्जा.

Divya, and others were the sons of the Manu.<sup>1</sup>

The Surúpas,\* Haris, Satyas, and Sudhís<sup>2</sup>† were the classes of gods, each comprising twenty-seven, in the period of Támasa, (the fourth Manu).<sup>3</sup> Šibi‡ was the

of Úrjá. We have already seen that Úrjá was the wife of Vasishtha, by whom she had seven sons, Rajas," &c. (see Vol. I., p. 155), in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara; and these were born again, as the Rishis of the third period. The names of these persons, according to the Matsya and Padma, are, however, very different from those of the sons of Vasishtha given in Vol. I., p. 155, or, Kaukuṇḍihi, Kuruṇḍi, Dálbhya, Śankha, Praváhita, Mita, and Saṁmita. §

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu adds ten other names to those of the text. The Brahma gives ten altogether different. The Bhágavata || and Padma have, each, a separate nomenclature.

<sup>2</sup> Of these the Brahma and Hari Vamśa ¶ notice only the Satyas; the Matsya and Padma have only Sádhyas. The Váyu, Bhágavata,\*\* Kúrma, and Márkaṇḍeya †† agree with the text.

<sup>3</sup> He is the son of Priyavrata, according to the text, ‡ the Váyu, &c. The Márkaṇḍeya §§ has a legend of his birth by a doe;

\* One MS. has Swarúpas. † Swadhis is the reading of one MS.

‡ Šikhi is, in my MSS., almost as common a lection. And herewith agrees the *Márkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXIV., 58. Triśikha is the name in the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 28.

§ I have put Dálbhya for "Dalaya", on manuscript authority. The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 24, names only Pramada, out of the seven; and he is not of the family as detailed in IV., I., 41, 42. See Vol. I., p. 155, note 3.

|| VIII., I., 23: Pavana, Śínjaya, Yajnahotra, and others unnamed.

¶ Śi. 427.

\*\* I find—VIII., I., 28, 29—the Satyakas, Haris, Viras, and Vaidhítis.

†† LXXIV., 57.

‡ See p. 11, note ‡, *infra*; also, p. 17, text and notes ‡ and §.

§§ Chapter LXXIV.

Indra, also designated by his performance of a hundred sacrifices, (or named Śatakratu \*). The seven Ṛishis were Jyotirdhāman, Prīthu, Kāvya, Chaitra, Agni, Vanaka,† and Pívara.<sup>1</sup> The sons of Tāmāsa were the mighty kings Nara, Khyāti, Śántahaya,‡ Jānujāgha, and others.<sup>2</sup>

---

and, from his being begotten in dark tempestuous weather (तमस्), he derives his name. §

<sup>1</sup> Severally, according to the Vāyu, the progeny of Bhṛigu, Kaśyapa, Angiras, Pulastya, Atri, Vasishtha, and Pulaha. There is considerable variety in some of the names. Thus, the Matsya has Kavi, Prīthu, Agni, Akapi, Kapi, Jalpa, || Dhīmat. The Hari Vamśa ¶ has Kāvya, Prīthu, Agni, Jahnu, Dhātri,\*\* Kapivat, Akapivat. For the two last the Vāyu reads Gātra and Vanapītha. The son of Pulaha is in his place (Vol. I., p. 155, note 1),—Arvarivat or Vanakapivat. Gātra is amongst the sons of Vasishtha (Vol. I., p. 155). The Vāyu is, therefore, probably, most correct, although our text, in regard to these two denominations, admits of no doubt: †† अग्निर्वनकश्चा पीवरश्च । ‡‡

<sup>2</sup> The Vāyu, &c. agree with the text; the Vāyu naming eleven. The Brahma, Matsya, and Padma have a series of ten names, Sutapas, Tapomūla, &c., of which seven are the Ṛishis of the twelfth Manwantara. §§

---

\* This parenthesis was supplied by the Translator.

† Five of my MSS. read Varada. Two of my MSS. of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have Vanaka; the third, Varuṇa. The Calcutta edition, LXXIV., 59, gives Valaka.

‡ In one MS. is Śāntihaya; and, in one, Śāntihavya.

§ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 27, represents him as brother of Uttama.

|| Corrected from the printer's "Salpa". ¶ *Śl.* 426.

\*\* The Calcutta edition has Janyu and Dhāman.

†† See, however, note † in this page.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 28, names Jyotirdhāman only.

§§ Agreeably to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 27, they were ten in number, of whom it specifies Prīthu, Khyāti, Nara, and Ketu.

In the fifth interval, the Manu was Raivata;<sup>1</sup> the Indra was Vibhu; the classes of gods, consisting of fourteen each, were the Amitābhas, Abhūtarajasas,\* Vai-kunthas, and Sumedhasas;<sup>2</sup>† the seven Rishis were

<sup>1</sup> Raivata, as well as his three predecessors, is regarded, usually, as a descendant of Priyavrata. ‡ The Márkaṇḍeya§ has a long legend of his birth, as the son of King Durgama by the nymph Revatī, sprung from the constellation Revatī, whom Ritavāch, a Muni, caused to fall from heaven. Her radiance became a lake on Mount Kumuda, thence called Raivatāka; and from it appeared the damsel, who was brought up by Pramucha Muni. Upon the marriage of Revatī, the Muni, at her request, restored the asterism to its place in the skies.

<sup>2</sup> The Brahma inserts, of these, only the Abhūtarajasas, with

\* Two MSS. have Ábhūtaramas; two, Ábhūtārayas; both which words look very like depravations of the reading in all my other copies, to-wit, Ábhūtarajas. The ordinary reading of the line containing this term is:

अमिताभाभूतरजा वैकुण्ठाः समुमेधसः ।

That the first two names must be taken as welded into a compound embodying Ábhūtarajas is attempted to be shown in note || in the next page. See, further, note ¶, p. 17, *infra*. And hence the “Abhūtarajasas” — i. e., Abhūtarajasas — of Professor Wilson may be open to correction, as regards its first syllable. Moreover, on the assumption that his MSS. were like mine, he has substituted the longer ending of the word for the shorter. See Vol. II., p. 101, note \*; and p. 107, note ‡.

The Sanskrit scholar will have noticed, that, other considerations permitting, the line just quoted might yield Bhūtarajas. The reading, unquestionably, of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, omits the vowel at the beginning. It is Bhūtarayas; and it involves a corruption, I take it, as to its y, such as we have in Ábhūtārayas. The *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXV., 71, has, in my three MSS., Ábhūtanayas or Bhūtanayas, which, as could be shown, may easily have grown out of Abhūtarajas. The Calcutta edition exhibits Bhūpatis!

† In the singular, Sumedhas. Three MSS. agree in reading Susamedhasas.

‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 2, calls him uterine brother of Tāmāsa. And see p. 11, note ‡, *infra*.

§ Chapter LXXV.

Hirañyaroman, Vedaśrī,\* Ūrdhwabáhu, Vedabáhu,† Sudhāman,‡ Parjanya, and Mahāmuni.¹§ The sons of the remark, that 'they were of like nature (with their name):' ||

देवाद्याभूतरजसस्यप्रकृतयः क्षुताः ।

i. e., they were exempt from the quality of passion. M. Langlois,¶ in rendering the parallel passage of the Hari Vamśa,\*\* has confounded the epithet and the subject: 'dont les dieux furent les Pracritis, dépourvus de colère et de passion.' He is, also, at a loss what to do with the terms Páriplava and Raibhya, in the following passage, पारिप्लवश्च रैभ्यश्च,†† asking: 'Qu'est-ce que Páriplava? qu'est-ce que Rêbhya?' If he had had the commentary at hand, these questions would have been unnecessary: they are there said to be two classes of divinities: पारिप्लवो रैभ्यश्च देवता-गणविशेषौ ।‡‡

¹ There is less variety in these names than usual. §§ Vedabáhu

\* Devaśrī, according to a single MS.

† In three MSS., Devabáhu.

‡ Two MSS. have Swadhāman.

§ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, says that they were, with others, Hirañyaroman, Vedaśiras, and Ūrdhwabáhu.

|| The Sanskrit allows us to take the word as Abhūtarajases; meaning, perhaps, 'endowed with activity—*rajas*—as far as that possessed by the Bhūtas.' See Vol. I., p. 83; and Vol. II., p. 74, note 2.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* speaks of the Amṛitābhas and Abhūtarajas:

अमृताभाभूतरजा वैकुण्ठाः ससुमेधसः ।

For, just below this, it has the line:

इत्येतानीह नामानि आभूतरजसं विदुः ।

On now comparing note \* in the last page with note ¶ at p. 17, *infra*, it will be seen, that the gods under discussion were characterized by their possession, not want, of activity. In the latter passage here referred to, all Professor Wilson's MSS., including those now at Oxford, have, like my own, संभूतो राजसैः, or else संभूतो मागसैः.

¶ Vol. I., p. 39.

\*\* *Sl.* 432:

देवाद्याभूतरजसस्यप्रकृतयो ऽ परे ।

†† *Sl.* 432.

‡‡ Of the gods of the fifth Manwantara the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, 4, particularizes the Bhūtarajas and Vaikuṇṭhas only. See note \* in the preceding page.

§§ See the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXV., 73, 74.

Raivata were Balabandhu, Susāmbhavya,\* Satyaka, and other valiant kings.†

These four Manus, Swārochisha, Auttami,‡ Tāmāsa, and Raivata, were, all, descended from Priyavrata, who, in consequence of propitiating Vishṇu by his devotions,§ obtained these rulers of the Manwantaras for his posterity.

Chākshusha was the Manu of the sixth period,<sup>1</sup> in

is read Devabāhu; Sudhāman, Satyanetra; and Mahāmuni, Muni, Yajus, Vāsishtha, and Yadudhra. According to the Vāyu, those of the text are, respectively, of the lineage of Angiras, Bhṛigu, Vasishtha, Pulastya, Atri, Pulaha, and Kaśyapa. There is considerable variety in the names of the Manu's sons.

<sup>1</sup> Chākshusha, according to the best authorities, descended from Dhruva (see Vol. I., p. 177): but the Mārkaṇḍeya has a legend of his birth as the son of a Kshatriya named Anamitra; of his being exchanged, at his birth, for the son of Viśrānta Rāja, and being brought up, by the prince, as his own; of his revealing the business, when a man, and propitiating Brahmā by his devotions, in consequence of which, he became a Manu. In his former birth, he was born from the eye of Brahmā, whence his name, from Chakshus, 'the eye.'||

\* Sāmbhavya is the reading of five MSS.; Swasāmbhavya, that of one.

† Only Arjuna and Balivindhya are named in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 2.

‡ Uttama, as before, is here a variant. The *Vishṇu-purāṇa* is at odds with itself, if it here derives Auttami from Priyavrata,—not from Uttānapāda. See Vol. I. p. 159: also, p. 5, note ¶; p. 7, note 3; p. 8, note §; p. 9, note ‡, *supra*.

"Descended from Priyavrata" translates प्रियव्रतान्वयाः; and "for his posterity", आत्मवंशजान्. We may render: "one in lineage with Priyavrata"; but hardly, considering the context, "as his kindred", instead of "for his posterity". Uttānapāda and Priyavrata were brothers.

§ *Tapas*, 'austerity'. || Compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 7.

which the Indra was Manojava:\* the five classes of gods† were the Ādyas,‡ Prastútas,§ Bhavyas, Prithugas,|| and the magnanimous Lekhas, eight of each:¶ Sumedhas, Virajas, Havishmat, Uttama, Madhu,\*\* Abhináman,†† and Sahishnú were the seven sages.‡ The kings of the earth, the sons of Chákshusha, were the

¹ The authorities agree as to the number, but differ as to the names; reading, for Ādyas, Áryas and Ápyas;‡‡ for Prastútas, Prabhútas and Prasútas; for Prithugas, Prithukas and Prithusas; and, which is a more wide deviation, Ríbhús for Bhavyas. M. Langlois§§ omits the Prasútas, and inserts Divaukasas; but the latter, meaning 'divinities,' is only an epithet. The Hari Vamśa || has:

आद्याः प्रसूताः अभवः पृथुगाश्च दिवौकसः । ¶¶

लेखा नाम महाराज पञ्च देवगणाः स्मृताः ॥

The comment adds: दिवौकस इति सर्वेषां विशेषणम् ।

² The Váyu reads Sudháman,\*\*\* for the first name; Unnata, for Uttama; and Abhimána, for Abhináman.††† The latter occurs

\* Mantradruma: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 8.

† See note \* at p. 3, *supra*.

‡ One MS. has Áryas.

§ This reading is in none of my MSS. Two have Prasútas; all the rest, Prasútas. || Three MSS. have Prithugas.

¶¶ See p. 3, note \*, *supra*.

\*\* Maru is in one MS.

†† Every one of my MSS. has Atináman.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* names the Ápyas only, of all the gods of this Patriarchate.

§§ Vol. I., p. 39.

||| *Sl.* 437.

¶¶¶ The Calcutta edition has आद्याः, प्रभूताः, and पृथुकाः.

\*\*\* And so does the *Harivaṃśa*, *sl.* 435.

††† The *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXVI., 54, has, in one of my three MSS., Unnata, as against Uttama in the other two; and so has the Calcutta edition, with which they all concur in reading Atináman.



powerful Uru,\* Puru,† Śatadyumna, and others.‡

The Manu of the present period is the wise lord of obsequies,§ the illustrious offspring of the Sun. The deities are the Ádityas,|| Vasus, and Rudras:¶ their sovereign is Purandara. Vasishthā, Kaśyapa, Atri, Jamadagni, Gautama, Viśwāmitra, and Bharadvāja are the seven Rishis; and the nine pious sons of Vaivaswata Manu are the kings\*\* Ikshwāku, Nabhaga,†† Dhṛishṭa,‡‡ Saryāti,§§ Narishyanta, Nábhānidishṭa,||||

also Abhināmin (Matsya) and Atināman (Hari Varṇa¶¶). The latter

\* Here—as in Vol. I., p. 177—I have corrected the Translator's "Uru".

† Para is the worthless reading of two MSS.; and as many have Púru, the ancient form of the name. See Vol. I., p. 177, note †.

‡ Those named in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 7, are Puru, Purusha, and Sudyumna.

§ Śráddhadeva; often taken as a proper name. Vaivaswata is intended. See p. 2, *supra*.

|| See Vol. II., p. 27, for their names.

¶ Add 'etc.' And see p. 15, note ‡, *infra*.

\*\* See Book IV., Chapters I.–V., where I return to these kings.

†† Three MSS. have Nábhaga. As will be seen further on, this king should seem to bear another name, that of Nfiga, which word several of my copies give here, as the reading.

‡‡ In two MSS., Dhṛishṭu; in one, Vishnú; the former of which lections is of no account.

§§ Here I correct the "Sanyati" of the original edition. Half my MSS. have Saryāti.

|||| Not one of my MSS. has this reading. Six—like two of Professor Wilson's, now at Oxford—give Nábhāga and Dishṭa; two, Nábhāga and Arishṭa; one, Nábhaga and Dishṭa; one, Nabhāga and Dishṭa; one, Nábhā and Dishṭa, &c. Moreover, it is shown, in the next page, that at least one of the commentators understands two kings to be here spoken of. And there is strong ground for believing that herein he is right.

Professor Wilson's choice of name—to which there is nothing, in any of the MSS. he used, nearer than नभो नेदिष्टः, occurring in one of them—must have been suggested by the Nábhānedishṭha of the *Rigveda* and other ancient writings, to whom he refers in a note to Book IV., Chapter I.

¶¶ *Sl.* 436.

Karúsha, Prishadhra, and the celebrated Vasumat.<sup>1\*</sup>

The unequalled energy of Vishnú, combining with

reads,† no doubt incorrectly, Bhṛigu, Nabha, and Vivaswat, for Uttama, Madhu, and Havishmat.‡

The sons of Chákshusha are enumerated in Vol. I., p. 177.

<sup>1</sup> There is no great variety of nomenclature in this Manwantara. The Váyu adds, to the deities, the Sádhyas, Viśwas, Ma-

\* The text is as follows:

कक्षस पुषधस वसुमौलोकविभुतः ।

On this it is remarked, in one of the commentaries, the other being silent: वसुमौलोकविभुत इति विशेषणद्वयं पुषधसखिव । वसुमान्वैर्यवान् । वसिष्ठश्रुतिं ज्ञातेऽपि श्रीभाषावाक्यलोकविभुतः सर्वसंगपरित्यगेन मुक्तिप्राप्तेः । तथा सति नव पुत्रा महाबला इति नवत्वमुपपन्नं भवति । That is to say, the "Vasumat" of the text is an epithet of Prishadhra, denoting 'fortitudinous'.

It is thus evident how the commentator here makes out the exact tale of nine kings.

Discordantly, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 2, 3, has Ikshváku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nábhāga, Dishṭa, Karúsha, Prishadhra, and Vasumat,—ten, as it distinctly states. Reference will be made, in the sequel, to IX., I., 12. See, for nine sons of Vaivaswata, the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXIX., 11, 12.

At present, it need only be added, that the *Váyu-purāṇa*, professing to name but nine sons of the reigning Manu, makes Prámśu the last, and says nothing of Vasumat as one of his brothers. Later Purāṇas than the *Váyu* have manipulated its statements with a very free hand. For instance, the first line of the stanza in which it speaks of the sixth and seventh of Vaivaswata's Ŗishis, served, pretty certainly, as the type of the quotation given above; and hence the creation, there, of Vasumat. This stanza is thus expressed:

षष्ठो वसिष्ठपुत्रस्तु वसुमौलोकविभुतः ।

वत्सारः काक्षपणस्य सन्नेति साधुसंमताः ॥

Of the two commentaries adduced in my annotations, that which I have hitherto designated as the smaller becomes, here at the beginning of Book III., considerably the ampler. From this point, not to mislead, I shall, till further notice, distinguish it as B; the other being called A.

† Śl. 435.

‡ Havishmat and Viraka, and these only, are spoken of in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 8.

the quality of goodness, and effecting the preservation of created things, presides over all the Manwantaras, in the form of a divinity.\* Of a portion of that divinity Yajna was born, in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara,

and gods sprung from Bhṛigu and Angiras.† The Bhágavata‡ adds the Ribhus;§ and most include the two Aświns, as a class. Of the Maruts, however, the Hari Varṇa remarks, that they are born in every Manwantara, seven times seven (or forty-nine); that, in each Manwantara, four times seven (or twenty-eight) obtain emancipation, but their places are filled up by persons reborn in that character. So the commentator explains the passages

मन्वन्तरेषु सर्वेषु प्राग्देशं सप्तसप्तकाः ।॥

and

मन्वन्तरे व्यतिक्रान्ते चत्वारः सप्तका गणाः । ¶

सप्तसप्तका एकोनपञ्चाशत्पदतो देवाः प्रतिमन्वन्तरे भवन्ति । Commentary. तेषां मध्ये चत्वारः सप्तका अष्टाविंशति मरुतः । Commentary. It may be suspected, however, that these passages have been derived from the simple statement of the Matsya, that, in all the Manwantaras, classes of Rishis appear by seven and seven, and, having established a code of law and morality, depart to felicity:

मन्वन्तरेषु सर्वेषु सप्त सप्त महर्षयः ।

कृत्वा धर्मेव्यवस्थानं प्रयान्ति परमं पदम् ॥

The Váyu has a rather different list of the seven Rishis:\*\* or, Vasumat, the son of Vasishthā; Vatsára, descended from Kaśyapa;

\* विष्णुशक्तिरनीपम्या सत्त्वोद्भक्ता स्थितौ स्थिता ।

मन्वन्तरेष्वग्नेषु देवत्वेनाधितिष्ठति ॥

† With this enumeration corresponds that in the *Márk.-pur.*, LXXIX., 1.

‡ At VIII., XIII., 4, it adds, to the Ádityas, Vasus, and Rudras, the Viśve devas, Maruts, Aświns, and Ribhus.

§ For these gods, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 46, note a.

¶ Śl. 444.

¶ Śl. 445.

\*\* In this order: Viśwámitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Śaradvat, Atri, Vasumat, Vatsára.

the will-begotten progeny of Akúti.<sup>1\*</sup> When the Swá-

Viśwámitra, the son of Gádhi, and of the Kuśika race; Jama-dagni, son of Kuru,† of the race of Bhṛigu; Bharadwája, son of Bṛihaspati; Śaradwat, son of Gotama,‡ of the family of Utathya;§ and Brahmakośa or Atri, descended from Brahmá.|| All the other authorities agree with our text.

<sup>1</sup> The nominal ¶ father being the patriarch Ruchi. (See Vol. I., p. 108.)

\* अग्निं तस्य जज्ञे ऽसौ यज्ञः स्वायम्भुवे ऽन्तरे ।

आकूत्यां मानसो देव उत्पन्नः प्रथमे ऽन्तरे ॥

On this the two commentaries remark: तस्य विष्णोरग्निं स्वायम्भुव-मन्वन्तरे । आकूत्यां मातरि यज्ञसंज्ञ उत्पन्नो जज्ञे बभूवेत्यर्थः । यद्वा । प्रथमे ऽन्तरे ऽवसरे ब्रह्मणो मानसो य उत्पन्नो इति । इति ।

According to this, "From a portion of him Yajna was born, in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara, of Akúti; or, in this first Manwantara, *Yajna* was born from *Ruchi*, a god will-begotten of *Brahmá*." Hence the term *mánasa* must be taken to allude to *Ruchi*, Akúti's husband, born from *Brahmá* in the first epoch of the Swáyambhuva Patriarchate. *Mánasa* cannot be applied to the child of a virgin. Males, not females, had will-begotten offspring.

† I find Ūru; also, Kuśa. See Book IV., Chapter VII.

‡ Corrected from "Gautama". This, importing 'son of Gotama', is Śaradwat's patronymic. See Book IV., Chapter XIX.

§ Corrected from "Utatthya". In Vol. I., p. 153, note 2, I have amended "Uttathya".

In Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. II., p. 63, appears "Uchatthya"—*recte*, Uchathya—as father of Dirghatamas; and it is added, in a note: "The reading of the Purāṇas is, invariably, Uttathya." "Utatthya" occurs *ibid.*, p. 83, note 6. These spellings, which I have never met with, must be incorrect; as the etymology—*uchatha*, 'praise'—of the Vaidik form of the name, Uchathya, clearly evinces.

These and suchlike minutiae are not purposeless, seeing that the great Sanskrit Dictionary of Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth inserts so copiously, as variants, transformations of proper names which owe their existence to mere inadvertence, but the reality or unreality of which cannot be judged of in the absence of manuscripts.

|| *Swáyambhuva*, in the original, ¶ But see note \* in this page.

rochisha Manwantara had arrived, that divine (Yajna) was born as Ajita, along with the Tushita gods, the sons of Tushitá. In the third Manwantara,\* Tushita† was again born of Satyá, as Satya, along with the class of deities so denominated. In the next period, Satya became Hari,‡ along with the Haris, the children of Hari.§ The excellent Hari was again born, in the Raivata Manwantara, of Sambhúti,|| as Mánasa, along with the gods called Abhútarajasas.¶ In the next period, Vishnú\*\* was born of Vikunthí,†† as Vaikuntha, along

\* Bhagavat then appeared as Satyasena, along with the Satyavratas, according to the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, VIII., I., 25.

† Here a name of Vishnú.

‡ Son of Hariñi and Harimedhas, says the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, VIII., I., 30.

§ The original has the locative हरीयां, which supposes Haryá for the nominative.

|| Bhagavat manifested himself as Ajita, son of Vairaja and Sambhúti, in the time of the sixth Manu, Chákshusha, according to the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, VIII., V., 9. We read, in this page, that Vishnú appeared as Ajita, in the age of Swárochisha. His epiphany then was as Vibhu, son of Vedaśiras and Tushitá, declares the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, VIII., I., 21.

¶ All my MSS.—except that four of them have मानसैः for राजसैः—concur in reading:

देवते ऽ प्यन्तरे देवः संभूत्यां मानसो ऽ भवत् ।  
संभूतो राजसैः सार्धं देवदेववरो हरिः ॥

‘In the Raivata *patriarchal* period, again, Hari, best of gods, was born, of Sambhúti, as the divine Mánasa,—originating with the deities called Rajasas’.

Mánasa is no inappropriate name for a deity associated with the Rajasas. We appear to have, in it, *mánasam*—the same as *manas*—with the change of termination required to express male personification. See Vol. I., p. 35, note \*.

Sambhúti had a son Pauríamása. See Vol. I., p. 153. Also see the note immediately preceding this, and note ||, at p. 10, *supra*.

\*\* In the original, Purushottama.

†† We must read Vikunthá. The Sanskrit presents the locative case as विकुण्ठायाम्.

Vikunthá's husband was Subhra, alleges the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, VIII.,

with the deities called Vaikuṇthas.\* In the present Manwantara, Vishṇu was again born as Vāmana, the son of Kaśyapa by Aditi.† With three paces‡ he subdued the worlds, and gave them, freed from all embarrassment, to Purandara.<sup>1</sup> These are the seven persons

---

<sup>1</sup> There is no further account of this incarnation in the Vishṇu Purāṇa. Fuller details occur in the Bhāgavata, Kūrma, Matsya,

---

V., 4. But, according to that authority, Vikuṇtha appeared in the fifth Patriarchate, not, as here, in the sixth.

\* That these gods appeared under Raivata, not under Chākshusha, we read in p. 9, *supra*.

† Hence, Vāmana was brother of the Ādityas and Tushitas. See Vol. II., p. 27. Also see p. 3, note \*, *supra*. He is called the last-born of the Ādityas, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 6.

‡ On the three strides of Vishṇu, by reason of which he is called Tri-vikrama, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Ṛigveda*, Vol. I., Introduction, p. xxxiv.; and Vol. IV., p. 17, note: also, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part II., pp. 187 and 214–216; Part IV., Chapter II., especially pp. 54–58, and pp. 118, 119.

Dr Muir, in his *Mataparikshā*, Part I.,—p. 105 of the Sanskrit, p. 16 of the English,—and twice in pages, just referred to, of his *Texts*, has quoted and translated a curious relevant passage from Durga Āchārya on Yaska's *Nirukta*. It is subjoined, together with Dr. Muir's latest version of it:

विष्णुरादित्यः । कथमिति । यत आह तेषां निधे पदं निधत्ते  
पदं निधानं पदेः । क्व तत्तावत् । पृथिव्यामन्तरिक्षे दिवीति शाक-  
पूणिः । पार्थिवो ऽपिभूत्वा पृथिव्यां यत्किंचिदस्ति तद्विक्रमते तदधि-  
तिष्ठति । अन्तरिक्षे वैद्युतात्मना । दिवि सूर्यात्मना । यदुत्तमं । तमू  
अहस्त्वन्नेधा भुवे कमिति । समारोह्ये उद्यमिरावुद्यन्पदमेकं नि-  
धत्ते । विष्णुपदे मध्यंदिने ऽन्तरिक्षे । गयशिरस्त्र्यम्बिराविर्त्तार्यवाम  
आचार्यो मन्यते ।

“Vishṇu is the sun [Āditya]. How so? Because [the hymn] says: ‘In three places he planted his step’; i. e., plants his step, [makes] a planting with his steps. Where, then, is this done? ‘On the earth, in the firmament, and in the sky’, according to Śākapuṇi. Becoming terrestrial fire, he strides over, abides in, whatever there is on earth; in the shape of lightning, in the firmament; and in the form of the sun,

by whom, in the several Manwantaras, created beings have been protected. Because this whole world has been pervaded by the energy of the deity, he is entitled Vishnú, from the root Viś, 'to enter', or 'pervade'; for all the gods, the Manus, the seven Řishis, the sons of the Manus, the Indras the sovereigns of the gods, all are but the impersonated might\* of Vishnú.<sup>1</sup>

---

and Vámana Puráñas. The first of these (Book VIII., Chapters 15—23) relates the penance and sacrifices of Bali, son of Virochana, by which he had overcome Indra and the gods, and obtained supreme dominion over the three spheres. Vishnú, at the request of the deities, was born as a dwarf, Vámana, the son of Aditi by Kaśyapa; who, applying to Bali for alms, was promised, by the prince, whatever he might demand, notwithstanding Śukra, the preceptor of the Daityas, apprised him whom he had to deal with. The dwarf demanded as much space as he could step over at three steps, and, upon the assent of Bali, enlarged himself to such dimensions as to stride over the three worlds. Being worshipped, however, by Bali and his ancestor Prahláda, he conceded to them the sovereignty of Pátála.

<sup>1</sup> See the same etymology in Vol. I., p. 4, note 2.

---

in the sky. As it is said (in the R. V., X., 88, 10): 'They made him to become threefold'. Aurnávabha Áchárya thinks [the meaning is] this: 'He plants one foot on the *'samárohaña'* (place of rising), when mounting over the hill of ascension; [another], on the *'vishnúpada'*, the meridian sky; [a third], on the *'gayasíras'*, the hill of setting".

\* *Vibhútayah*, 'potencies'.

## CHAPTER II.

Of the seven future Manus and Manwantaras. Story of Sanjná and Chháyá, wives of the Sun. Sávarñi, son of Chháyá, the eighth Manu. His successors, with the divinities, &c. of their respective periods. Appearance of Vishnú in each of the four Yugas.

MAITREYA.—You have recapitulated to me, most excellent Brahman, the particulars of the past Manwantaras. Now give me some account of those which are to come.

PARÁŚARA.—Sanjná, the daughter of Viśwakarman, was the wife of the Sun, and bore him three children, the Manu (Vaivaswata), Yama, and the goddess Yamí (or the Yamuná river). Unable to endure the fervours of her lord, Sanjná gave him Chháyá,<sup>1</sup> as his handmaid, and repaired to the forests, to practise devout exercises.\* The Sun, supposing Chháyá to be his wife

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, her shadow, or image. It also means 'shade.' The Bhágavata, † however, makes both Sanjná and Chháyá daughters of Viśwakarman. According to the Matsya, Vivaswat, the son of Kaśyapa and Aditi, had three wives: Rájñi, the daughter of Raivata, by whom he had Revanta; Prabhá, by whom he had Prabháta; and, by Sanjná, the daughter of Twashṭí, the Manu, and Yama, and Yamuná. The story then proceeds much as in the text.

---

\* "Devout exercises" renders *tapas*.

† VIII., XIII., 8. In the next stanza it adds, that some give the Sun a third wife, Vādavá. The commentator, Śrīdhara, identifies her, nevertheless, with Sanjná, who is said—VI., VI., 38—to have been transformed into a mare—*vādavá*.



Sanjná, begot, by her, three other children, Śanaishchara (Saturn), another Manu (Sávarní\*), and a daughter, Tapatí (the Taptee river). Chháyá, upon one occasion, being offended with Yama,<sup>1</sup> the son of Sanjná, denounced an imprecation upon him, and, thereby, revealed to Yama, and to the Sun, that she was not, in truth, Sanjná, the mother of the former.† Being further informed, by Chháyá, that his wife had gone to the wilderness, the Sun beheld her, by the eye of meditation,‡ engaged in austerities, in the figure of a mare, (in the region of Uttara Kuru§). Metamorphosing himself into a horse, he rejoined his wife, and begot three other children,—the two Aświns|| and Revanta,—and then brought Sanjná back to his own dwelling. To diminish his intensity, Viśwakarma placed the luminary on his lathe, to grind off some of his effulgence, and, in this manner, reduced it an eighth: for more

---

<sup>1</sup> Yama, provoked at her partiality for her own children, abused Chháyá, and lifted up his foot, to kick her. She cursed him to have his leg affected with sores and worms: but his father bestowed upon him a cock, to eat the worms and remove the discharge; and Yama, afterwards propitiating Mahádeva, obtained the rank of Lokapála, and sovereign of Tartarus. ¶

---

\* Not named, here, in the original.

† कायासंज्ञा ददौ शापं यमाय कुपिता यदा ।  
तदान्वेयमसौ बुद्धिरित्वासीद्यमसूर्ययोः ॥

‡ Samádhi.

§ This parenthesis, as usual, is supplied by the Translator.

|| See Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., Introduction, pp. xxxv., xxxvi., and p. 8, note a; also, Vol. II., Introduction, p. viii.

¶ See the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, Chapter LXXVII.

than that was inseparable.<sup>1</sup> The parts of the divine VaishŔava splendour, residing in the sun, that were filed off by Viśwakarman, fell, blazing, down upon the earth; and the artist constructed of them the discus of VishŔu, the trident of Śiva,\* the weapon<sup>2</sup> of the god of wealth,† the lance of Kārttikeya,‡ and the weapons of the other gods: all these Viśwakarman fabricated from the superfluous rays of the sun.<sup>3</sup>

The son of Chháyá, who was called, also, a Manu, was denominated SávārŔi,<sup>4</sup> § from being of the same caste (SavarŔa) as his elder brother, (the Manu Vai-

<sup>1</sup> The Matsya says, he trimmed the Sun everywhere except in the feet, the extent of which he could not discern. Consequently, in pictures, or images, the feet of the Sun must never be delineated, under pain of leprosy, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The term is Śibiká, which properly means 'a litter'. The commentator calls it Astra, 'a weapon'. ||

<sup>3</sup> This legend is told, with some variations of no great importance, in the Matsya, MárkaŔdeya, and Padma PuráŔas (Swarga KhaŔda), in the Bhágavata, and Hari Vamśa, ¶ &c.

<sup>4</sup> The MárkaŔdeya,\*\* whilst it admits SávārŔi to be the son of the Sun, has a legend of his former birth, in the Swárochisha Manwantara, as Suratha Rája, who became a Manu by having then propitiated Deví. It was to him that the Durgá Máhátmya†† or ChaŔdí, the popular narrative of Durgá's triumphs over various demons, was narrated.

\* Substituted, by the Translator, for Rudra.

† This is to translate Dhanada, one of the names of Kubera.

‡ The original has Guha.

§ SávārŔa is a variant.

|| So both the commentators call it.

¶ Chapter IX.

\*\* Chapter LXXXI.

†† Or *Deví-máhátmya*.

vaswata). He presides over the ensuing, or eighth, Manwantara,\* the particulars of which, and the following, I will now relate. In the period in which Sávarñi shall be the Manu, the classes of the gods will be the Sutapas, Amitábhās, and Mukhyas; twenty-one† of each. The seven Rishis will be Díptimat, Gálava, Ráma,‡ Kṛipa,§ Drauñi,|| my son Vyása¶ (will be the sixth); and the seventh will be Rishyaśringa.<sup>1</sup> The Indra will be Bali, the sinless son of Virochana, who, through the favour of Vishnú, is, actually, sovereign

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu has Jámadagnya (or Paraśuráma), of the Kuśika race; Gálava, of that of Bhṛigu; \*\* Dwaipáyana (or Vyása), of the family of Vasishṭha; Kṛipa, the son of Śaradwat; Díptimat, descended from Atri; Rishyaśringa, from Kaśyapa; and Aśwattháman, the son of Droṇa, of the Bháradwāja family. The Matsya and Padma have Satánanda, in place of Díptimat.

---

\* Called Sávarñika or Sávarñaka, in the Sanskrit.

† My MSS. say 'twenty'; since they read:

तेषां गणसु देवानामेकैको विंशकः स्मृतः ।

And both the commentaries observe: विंशकः । विंशतिसंख्याकः । The *Váyu-purāṇa*, too, has twenty; and so the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXX., 5.

‡ Otherwise known as Paraśuráma.

§ Droṇa's brother-in-law.

|| I. e., son of Droṇa; namely, Aśwattháman. See Book IV., Chapter XIX. Three of my MSS. have Droṇi, as has the printed *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXX., 4. This form sins against grammar.

¶ Distinguished as Bádaráyana.

\*\* My MSS. here differ from the text, in reading:

कौशिको गाक्षवक्षिण जामदग्न्यश्च भार्गवः ।

That is to say, Gálava was a Kuśika, and Jámadagnya, a Bhārgava. See pp. 14—16, note 1; and p. 16, note †, *supra*. Also see Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 380; and p. 418, note 1.

of part of Pátála.\* The royal progeny of Sávarñi will be Virajas, Arvarivat,† Nirmoha,‡ and others.§

The ninth Manu will be Daksha-sávarñi.<sup>1</sup>|| The Páras,¶ Maríchigarbhas, and Sudharmans will be the

<sup>1</sup> The four following Sávarñis are described, in the Váyu, as the mind-engendered sons of a daughter of Daksha, named either Suvratá (Váyu) or Priyá (Brahma), by himself and the three gods, Brahmá, Dharma, and Rudra, to whom he presented her on Mount Meru; whence they are called also Meru-sávarñis. They are termed Sávarñis, from their being of one family or caste:

यस्मात्सवर्णास्त्विषां वै ब्रह्मादीनां कुमारकाः ।

सवर्णा मनवस्त्विषां सवर्णत्वं च तेषु तत् ॥

According to the same authority, followed by the Hari Vamśa,\*\* it appears that this Manu is also called Rohita. Most of the details of this and the following Manwantaras are omitted in the Matsya, Brahma, Padma, and Márkaṇḍeya†† Purāṇas. The Bhágavata‡‡ and Kúrma give the same as our text; and the Váyu, which agrees very nearly with it,§§ is followed, in most

\* विष्णुप्रसादादनघः पातासान्तरगोचरः ।

विरोचनसुतस्त्विषां बहिरिद्धो भविष्यति ॥

† The "Arvarivas" of the former edition was an oversight. Variants which I find are Urvarivat, Urvaravat, and Arvariya.

‡ Two of my MSS. have Nirmoka; one, Nirmogha.

§ According to the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 11, 12, the gods will be the Sutapas, Virajas, and Amṛitaprabhas; and among the sons of Sávarñi will be Nirmoka and Virajaska.

|| All my MSS. have Dakshasávarña. The ninth Manu will be son of Varuṇa, according to the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 18.

¶ Three MSS. give Paras.

\*\* *Śl.* 468.

†† This Purāṇa should here be omitted, as it contains a full exhibition of the details referred to. See its chapters XCIV. and C.

‡‡ It will be seen, from my notes, that its agreement with our text is not of the closest.

§§ If my five MSS. are to be trusted, it deviates therefrom very widely. I have recorded only a few specimens of these deviations.

three classes of divinities; each consisting of twelve: their powerful chief will be the Indra Adbhuta. Savana, Dyutimat, Bhavya,\* Vasu, Medhádhrīti,† Jyotishmat, and Satya will be the seven Řishis. Dhřitaketu,‡ Díptiketu,§ Panchahasta, Nirámaya,|| Prīthuśrava,¶ and others, will be the sons of the Manu.\*\*

In the tenth Manwantara, the Manu will be Brahmasávarńi:†† the gods will be the Sudhámans, Viruddhas,‡‡ and Śatasankhyas: the Indra will be the mighty Sánti:§§

respects, by the Hari Vamśa. The Matsya and Padma are peculiar in their series and nomenclature of the Manus themselves: calling the ninth, Rauchya; tenth, Bhautya; eleventh, Meru-sávarńi, son of Brahmá; twelfth, Řitu; thirteenth, Řitadháman; and fourteenth, Viśwaksena. The Bhágavata calls the two last Manus Deva-sávarńi and Indra-sávarńi.

\* Of three MSS. the reading is Havya; and one has Sahya.

† Professor Wilson had "Medhatithi", which I find nowhere. Two of my MSS. have Medhámřiti, a bad lection for what all the rest give, the name in the text.

‡ In a single MS. is Dhřitiketu.

§ The former edition had "Dřiptiketu", for which I find no authority. A plurality of my MSS. read, like the *Váyu-purána*, as above; while five have Diptaketu; and two, Dásaketu.

|| It seems very likely that we here have *nirámaya*, 'free from disease', as an epithet of Panchahasta. In the *Váyu-purána*, it qualifies, in the plural, names preceding it.

¶ The *Váyu-purána* reads Prīthuśravas.

\*\* Of the sons of this Manu the *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., XIII., 18, names only Bhútaketu and Diptaketu.

†† He is called Brahmasávarńa, also, as in the original of the end of this paragraph:

उपाश्लोकस्य पुत्रास्तु रक्षिष्यन्ति वसुंधराम् ।

He will be son of Upaśloka, according to the *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., XIII., 21.

‡‡ One MS. gives Viśuddhas.

§§ Śambhu: *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., XIII., 22.

the Rishis will be Havishmat, Sukṛiti, Satya,\* Apám-múrti, Nábhága, Apratimaujas, and Satyaketu:† and the ten sons of the Manu will be Sukshetra, Uttamaujas, Harisheṇa,‡ and others.

In the eleventh Manwantara, the Manu will be Dharma-sávarṇi:§ the principal classes of gods will be the Vihangamas, Kāmagamas,|| and Nirmāṇaratis,¶ each thirty in number;¹ of whom Vṛisha\*\* will be the Indra: the Rishis will be Nis̥cara, Agnitejas, Vapushmat, Vishṇu,†† Áruṇi,‡‡ Havishmat, and Anagha:§§

¹ Hence the Vāyu identifies||| the first with days; the second, with nights; and the third, with hours.¶¶

\* Four of my MSS. have Sahya; and two others have corruptions of it.

† Saptaketu appears in three MSS.

‡ Four MSS. have Bhūrisheṇa; and this is the reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 21.

§ In the original we have the elongated form, Dharmasāvarṇika.

|| In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Kāmajas (or Vihangamas) and Manojavas.

¶ The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, by twice beginning a line with this word, proves that we are not to read Anirmāṇaratis, 'of measureless enjoyment'; for the original—which, by the by, in none of my MSS. has -निर्माण-—might, otherwise, be taken to combine the names of the second and third classes of gods into a compound, thus:

विहंगमाः कामगमनिर्माणरतयस्तथा ।

Two copies have Nirvāṇaruchis, like the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26.

\*\* Vaidhṛita: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26.

†† One MS. has Vṛishṇi; one, Dhṛiti.

‡‡ Four MSS. exhibit Vāruṇi, the lection of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. The reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26, is Aruṇa.

§§ Anaya, in three of my MSS.

||| I find a different adjustment of these identifications: but my MSS. differ, perhaps, from those used by Professor Wilson.

¶¶ *Muhūrta*.

the kings of the earth, and sons of the Manu, will be Sarvaga,\* Sarvadharmān, Devānīka, and others.

In the twelfth Manwantara, the son of Rudra, Sávarnī,† will be the Manu: Řítadhāman‡ will be the Indra: and the Haritas, Lohitas,§ Sumanasas, and Sukarmans|| will be the classes of gods, each comprising fifteen. Tapaswin, Sutapas, Tapomūrti, Taporati, Tapodhṛiti, Tapodyuti,¶ and Tapodhana will be the Řishis:\*\* and Devavat, Upadeva, Devaśreshṭha, and others, will be the Manu's sons, and mighty monarchs (on the earth).

In the thirteenth Manwantara, the Manu will be Rauchya:†† the classes of gods, thirty-three in each,

---

\* The son of the Prajāpati Ruchi (Váyu, &c.), by the nymph Mānini,‡‡ the daughter of the Apsaras Pramlochā (Mārkaṇḍeya).

---

\* The "Savarga" of the former edition must have been a mere oversight. In two of my thirteen MSS., the name is Sarvatraga; that following being Sudharmātman. The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Sarvavega, followed by Sudharman.

According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 25, the eleventh Manu will engender Satyadharmān and nine other sons.

† Sávarnā, in my copies.

‡ "Řítadhāma", the name in the first edition, was simply a typographic error, I take it, as to its second syllable. One of my MSS. seems to have Kshatadhāman. Similarly as in all my MSS. but one, Řítadhāman is the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 29.

§ A single MS. has, like the *Váyu-purāṇa*, Rohitas.

|| A fourth class of gods is here omitted. Ten of my MSS. call them Tāras; one, Surúpas; one, Surápas; and one, Supáras. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to have Suparvas.

¶ This name is implied, not expressed in full; the original being:

तपोधुतिर्बुतिस्त्वान्वः सप्तमसु तपोधनः ।

\*\* Of the Řishis under the twelfth Manu the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 29, names only Tapomūrti, Tapaswin, and Āgnidhraka.

†† Devasávarnī: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 31.

‡‡ Mālini, in some MSS., as in the Calcutta edition, XCVIII., 5. It may be a Bengal corruption.

will be the Sutrámans, \* Sukarmans, and Sudharmans;† their Indra will be Divaspati: the Rishis will be Nirmoha,‡ Tattwadarśin,§ Nishprakampa, Nirutsuka, Dhṛitimat, Avyaya, and Sutapas: and Chitrasena, Vichitra, and others, will be the kings.

In the fourteenth Manwantara, Bhautya || will be the Manu;¹ Śuchi, the Indra: the five classes of gods will be the Chákshushas, the Pavitras, Kanishthas, Bhrájiras,¶ and Váchávriddhas:\*\* the seven Rishis†† will be Agnibáhu,‡‡ Śuchi, Śukra, Mágadha,§§ Grídhra,|||

¹ Son of Kavi, by the goddess Bhúti, according to the Váyú; but the Márkaṇḍeya.¶¶ makes Bhúti the son of Angiras, whose pupil, Śánti, having suffered the holy fire to go out in his master's absence, prayed to Agni, and so propitiated him, that he not only relighted the flame, but desired Śánti to demand a further

\* For the "Sudhámans" of the former edition I find no warrant. Sutrámans is the name in the *Váyú-purāna*. Two of my MSS. have Suśarmans.

† These are not recognized in the *Bhágavata-purāna*, VIII., XIII., 32.

‡ One of my MSS. shows this name written over Nirmoka, the reading of the *Bhágavata-purāna*, VIII., XIII., 32.

§ Tattwadarśa, the reading of the *Bhágavata-purāna*, VIII., XIII., 32, occurs in a single copy.

|| Indrasávarñi: *Bhágavata-purāna*, VIII., XIII., 34.

¶¶ The *Váyú-purāna* has Bhájiras or Bhájaras.

\*\* This is the reading of the *Váyú-purāna*, likewise. "Vávriddhas" is in the old edition: but it looks like an inadvertence only. Two of my MSS. have Váchávríttas.

†† They are said to be Agnibáhu, Śuchi, Śuddha, Mágadha, and others, in the *Bhágavata-purāna*, VIII., XIII., 35.

‡‡ Agniváyú is in one MS.

§§ In two of my MSS. is what looks like the meaningless name Mámádha.

||| Such is the lection of two of my MSS.; while all the rest have Agnidhra,—as has the *Váyú-purāna*,—or corruptions thereof.

¶¶ Chapter XCIX.



Yukta,\* and Ajita:† and the sons of the Manu will be Uru,‡ Gabhíra,§ Bradhna,|| and others,¶ who will be kings, and will rule over the earth.<sup>1</sup>

At the end of every four ages\*\* there is a disappearance†† of the Vedas; and it is the province of the seven Rishis to come down upon earth, from heaven, to give them currency again.‡‡ In every Kṛita age,

---

boon. Śánti accordingly solicited a son for his Guru; which son was Bhúti, the father of the Manu Bhautya.

<sup>1</sup> Although the Purāṇas which give an account of the Manwantaras agree in some of the principal details, yet, in the minor ones, they offer many varieties, some of which have been noticed. These chiefly regard the first six and the eighth. Except in a few individual peculiarities, the authorities seem to arrange themselves in two classes; one comprehending the Vishnú, Váyu, Kúrma, Bhāgavata, and Márkaṇḍeya; and the other, the Matsya, Padma, Brahma, and Hari Vaṁśa. The Márkaṇḍeya, although it agrees precisely with the Vishnú in its nomenclature, differs from it, and from all, in devoting a considerable number of its pages to legends of the origin of the Manus, all of which are, evidently, of comparatively recent invention, and several of which have been, no doubt, suggested by the etymology of the names of the Manus.

---

\* Two MSS. have Mukta.

† Arjita is the lection of two MSS.

‡ Ūru, in a single copy.

§ Six MSS. give the synonymous Gambhíra.

|| One MS. has Budhna; one, Budhnya; one, Randhra.

¶ These sons, agreeably to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 34, will be Urubuddhi, Gambhírabuddhi, and others. The *Váyu-purāṇa* has, apparently, Ojaswin, Subala, and Bhautya.

\*\* Yuga.

†† *Viplava*.

‡‡ Compare the *Mahābhārata*, *Śánti-párvan*, śl. 7660, quoted and translated in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 90.

the Manu (of the period) is the legislator or author\* of the body of law, the Smṛiti; the deities of the different classes receive the sacrifices during the Manwantaras to which they severally belong; and the sons of the Manu themselves, and their descendants, are the sovereigns of the earth for the whole of the same term. The Manu, the seven Ṛishis, the gods, the sons of the Manu, who are the kings, and Indra,† are the beings who preside over the world during each Manwantara.

An entire Kalpa,‡ O Brahman, is said to comprise a thousand ages,§ or fourteen Manwantaras;<sup>1</sup> and it is succeeded by a night of similar duration; during which he who wears the form of Brahmá, Janárdana, the substance of all things, the lord of all, and creator of all, involved in his own illusions, and having swallowed up the three spheres, sleeps upon the serpent Śesha, amidst the ocean.<sup>2</sup> Being, after that, awake, he, who

<sup>1</sup> A thousand ages of the gods and fourteen Manwantaras are not precisely the same thing, as has been already explained. (See Vol. I., p. 51, note 2.)

<sup>2</sup> The order of the text would imply, that, as Brahmá, he sleeps upon Śesha: but, if this be intended, it is at variance with the usual legend, that it is as Vishnú or Náráyaṇa that the deity sleeps in the intervals of dissolution. The commentator|| accordingly qualifies the phrase Brahma-rúpadhara (ब्रह्मरूपधर) by

\* "Legislator or author" is to translate *pranēti*, 'promulgator'.

† Śakra, in the original.

‡ For the names of twenty-eight Kalpas, as enumerated in the *Váyu-purāṇa*, see Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., pp. 51, 52.

§ To render *yuga*.

|| Rather, both the commentators.

is the universal soul, again creates all things, as they were before, in combination with the property of foulness (or activity): and, in a portion of his essence, associated with the property of goodness, he, as the Manus, the kings, the gods, and their Indras, as well as the seven Rishis, is the preserver of the world. In what manner Vishnú, who is characterized by the attribute of providence\* during the four ages, effected their preservation, I will next, Maitreya, explain.

In the Kṛita age, Vishnú, in the form of Kapila and other (inspired teachers), assiduous for the benefit of all creatures, imparts to them true wisdom. In the Tretá age, he restrains the wicked, in the form of a universal monarch,<sup>1</sup> and protects the three worlds. In the Dwápara age, in the person of Veda-vyása, he divides the one Veda into four, and distributes it into innumerable† branches;‡ and, at the end of the Kali (or fourth age), he appears as Kalki, and reestablishes the iniquitous in the paths (of rectitude). In this man-

---

the term Divá (दिवः): 'Vishnú wears the form of Brahmá by day; by night, he sleeps on Śesha, in the person of Náráyaṇa:' राजी श्रीनारायणरूपेण शेषाद्दी \* शेते । This, however, may be suspected to be an innovation upon an older system; for, in speaking of the alternations of creation and dissolution, they are always considered as consentaneous with the day and night of Brahmá alone.

<sup>1</sup> As a Chakravartin.

---

\* *Sthiti.*

† Literally, 'hundreds of', *śata.*

‡ For a more literal rendering of this paragraph, down to this point, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 20.

ner the universal spirit preserves, creates, and, at last, destroys, all the world.\*

Thus, Brahman, I have described to you the true nature of that great being who is all things, and besides whom there is no other existent thing, nor has there been, nor will there be, either here or elsewhere. I have, also, enumerated to you the Manwantaras, and those who preside over them. What else do you wish to hear?

---

\* एवमेतज्जगत्सर्वं परिपाति करोति च ।  
हन्ति चान्तिऽप्यनन्तात्मा नास्त्वस्माद्व्यतिरेकि यत् ॥

---

### CHAPTER III.

Division of the Veda into four portions, by a Vyása, in every Dwápara age. List of the twenty-eight Vyásas of the present Manwantara. Meaning of the word Brahma.

MAITREYA.—I have learned from you, in due order, how this world is Vishnú, (how it is) in Vishnú, (how it is) from Vishnú: nothing further is to be known. But I should desire to hear how the Vedas were divided, in different ages,\* by that great being, in the form of Veda-vyása; who were the Vyásas of their respective eras; and what were the branches into which the Vedas were distributed.

PARÁŚARA.—The branches of the (great) tree of the Vedas are so numerous,† Maitreya, that it is impossible to describe them at length. I will give you a summary account of them.

In every Dwápara (or third) age, Vishnú, in the person of Vyása, in order to promote the good of mankind, divides the Veda, which is (properly, but) one, into many portions. Observing the limited perseverance, energy, and application of mortals, he makes the Veda fourfold, to adapt it to their capacities; and the bodily form which he assumes, in order to effect that classification, is known by the name of Veda-vyása.‡ Of the different Vyásas in the

---

\* *Yuga*, rendered by "eras", just below.

† Literally, 'by thousands', *sahasraśaḥ*.

‡ वीर्यं तेनो वसं चाख्यं मनुष्याणामवेक्ष्य वै ।  
हिताय सर्वभूतानां वेदभेदां करोति सः ।

present Manwantara,<sup>1</sup> and the branches which they have taught, you shall have an account.

Twenty-eight times have the Vedas been arranged, by the great Rishis, in the Vaivaswata Manwantara in the Dwápara age;\* and, consequently, eight and twenty Vyásas have passed away; by whom, in their respective periods, the Veda has been divided into four. In the first Dwápara age, the distribution was made by Swayám̐bhú (Brahmá) himself; in the second, the arranger of the Veda (Veda-vyása) was Prajapati (or Manu); in the third, Uśanas; in the fourth, Bṛihaspati; in the fifth, Savitrī; in the sixth, Mṛityu (Death, or Yama); in the seventh, Indra; in the eighth, Vasishthā; in the ninth, Śáraswata; in the tenth, Tridhāman; in the eleventh, Trivṛishan;† (in the twelfth), Bharadwāja;‡ in the thirteenth, Antariksha; in the fourteenth, Vapṛivan;§ in the fifteenth, Trayyáruṇa;²||

<sup>1</sup> The text has: 'Hear, from me, an account of the Vyásas of the different Manwantaras':

यस्मिन्वन्तरे ये चे वासासां सान्निबोध मे ।

But this is inconsistent with what follows, in which the enumeration is confined to the Vaivaswata Manwantara.

<sup>2</sup> This name occurs as that of one of the kings of the solar

यथा स कुर्वते तन्वा वेदमेकं पृथक्प्रभुः ।  
वेदवासाभिधाना तु सा मूर्तिर्मधुविद्विषः ।

Vishnú is here called "the enemy of Madhu."

\* A more exact translation of Parásara's reply, breaking off here, will be found in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 20, 21.

† Three MSS. have Trivṛisha; and so has the *Kúrma-purāṇa*.

‡ I find Bháradwāja in six MSS.; and this lection seems best, as the nineteenth Vyása is called Bharadwāja.

§ So read seven of my MSS.; while two give Vamṛivan, and others, Vajṛivan, Vyághṛivan, Vapovan, &c. &c. Professor Wilson's "Vapra", now discarded, I have nowhere met with.

|| Trayyáruṇi, in two MSS. Is the name Traiyáruṇa, or Traijáruṇi?

in the sixteenth, Dhananjaya; in the seventeenth, Kṛit-anjaya; in the eighteenth, Rīñajya;\* (in the nineteenth), Bharadwāja;† (in the twentieth), Gautama;‡ in the twenty-first, Uttama, also called Haryátman; (in the twenty-second), Vena,§ who is likewise named Rājaśravas;|| (in the twenty-third), Saumaśushmāyaña,¶ also Trīñabindu;\*\* (in the twenty-fourth), Rīksha,†† the descendant of Bhṛigu, who is known also by the name Válmīki; (in the twenty-fifth), my father, Śakti,‡‡

---

dynasty, and is included, by Mr. Colebrooke, amongst the per-

---

\* The Translator has "Rīña", for which my MSS. furnish no warrant. Six of them exhibit Rīñajya; two, this, with Rīñadya written over; three, Kṛitin; others, Rīñavya and Rīñin.

† A single MS. has Bhāradwāja. See note ‡ in the last page.

‡ Substituted for Professor Wilson's "Gotama", which none of my MSS. countenances.

§ Exchanged for "Veña", which is in but one of my MSS.

|| Almost as common a reading is Rājaśravas: and one of my MSS. gives Vājaśravas; another, Vājaśrava. Again, three of them, including those accompanied by commentary B, have, instead of राजस्रवास्तु यः, वाजश्रवान्वयः, "of the line of Vājaśrava."

¶ Eight MSS. have Somaśushmāyaña; two, Somaśushmāpaña; others, Somayushmāyana, Somoyushmāpana, and Somaśushmāñaya. The Translator put "Somaśushmāpaña". My conjectural Saumaśushmāyaña would be descendant of Somaśushma, mentioned in the *Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa*, XI., IV., 5, and elsewhere.

That the *Kūrma-purāṇa* was compiled after our *Purāṇa* had become corrupted, as to the name in question, might be inferred from my MSS., which read:

राजश्रवाश्चैकविंशस्तस्माद्दृष्टापणः परः ।

\*\* According to the *Kūrma-purāṇa*, Trīñabindu was the twenty-third Vyāsa, Ushmāpaña being the twenty-second. See note § in the next page.

†† In one MS., Rīkshya; in another, Daksha.

‡‡ Three MSS. have Śakti. In Vol. I., p. 8, the Translator, after speaking, in a note, of "Śakti, the son of Vasishṭha," and father of Parāśara, calls him "Śakti or Śakti;" touching the first of which, Śakti, I there hastily observe: "This is hardly the name of a male. The right

was the Vyása; I (was the Vyása of the twenty-sixth Dwápara), and was succeeded by Játúkarña;\* the Vyása (of the twenty-eighth), who followed him, was Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana. These are the twenty-eight elder Vyásas, by whom, in the preceding Dwápara ages, the Veda has been divided into four. In the next Dwápara, Drauṇi (the son of Droṇa) will be the Vyása, when my son, the Muni Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana, who is the actual Vyása, shall cease to be (in that character).<sup>1</sup>

---

sons of royal descent who are mentioned as authors of hymns in the *R̥ig-veda*. † Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 383.‡

<sup>1</sup> A similar list of Vyásas is given in the *Kúrmaś* and *Vá-*

---

word seems to be Śakti." On this observation Dr. Kern, in his meritorious edition of the *Bṛihat-saṃhitā*, Preface, p. 31, comments in these words: "F. E. Hall remarks that Śakti is 'hardly the name of a male.' As if a male were intended! Śakti is the heavenly power of Indra-Agni." Assuredly, a male is intended; and Śaktiputra, as Parásara is called in the *Mahābhārata*, is not to be rendered, as by Dr. Kern, "the son of strength",—but "son of Śakti,"—unless we consent to regard the attribute of strength as offspring of Vasishṭha. For Parásara, as son of Śakti, and grandson of Vasishṭha, see the *Anukramanikā* to the *R̥igveda*, on I., LXV., &c. &c. And the *R̥igveda* itself—VII., XVIII., 21—makes mention of Parásara, no less than of Vasishṭha, as if he were anything but a myth. Further, Śakti, as "the heavenly power of Indra-Agni," is, so far as I am at present informed, altogether a novelty.

\* This is the reading of eleven of my MSS.; and the other two have Játúkarṇya, which seems to be the lection of the *Váyu-purāṇa*. Hence I have displaced Professor Wilson's "Jaratkárū."

† See the *Anukramanikā* to the *R̥igveda*, on V., XXVII., and IX., CX. The Vaidik form of the name is Tryarūṇa.

‡ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 23.

§ The list stands there as follows:

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. Swáyambhuva. | 4. Bṛihaspati. |
| 2. Prajāpati.   | 5. Savitrī.    |
| 3. Uśanas.      | 6. Mfityu.     |



The syllable Om is defined to be the eternal monosyllabic Brahma.<sup>1</sup> The word Brahma is derived from

yu\* Purāṇas. Many of the individuals appear as authors of different hymns and prayers in the Vedas; and it is very possible that the greater portion, if not all of them, had a real existence; being the framers, or teachers, of the religion of the Hindus, before a complete ritual was compiled.

<sup>1</sup> We have already had occasion to explain the sanctity of this monosyllable (see Vol. I., p. 1, note 1), which ordinarily commences different portions of the Vedas, and which, as the text describes it, is identified with the supreme, undefinable deity, or Brahma. So, in the Bhagavad-gītā:†

ओमित्येकाक्षरं ब्रह्म व्याहरन्मामनुस्मरेत् । ‡

‘Repeating Om, the monosyllable, which is Brahma, and calling me to mind;’ which is not exactly the same idea that is conveyed by Schlegel’s version, § ‘Monosyllabum mysticum OM pronuntiando numen adorans, mei memor;’ where ‘numen ado-

- |                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 7. Indra.                    | 18. Ātanjaya.          |
| 8. Vasishṭha.                | 19. Bharadvāja.        |
| 9. Śārasvata.                | 20. Gautama.           |
| 10. Tridhāman.               | 21. Rājāsṛavas.        |
| 11. Trivṛsha.                | 22. Ūshmāpaṇa.         |
| 12. Śātatejas.               | 23. Tīrṇabindu.        |
| 13. Dharma.                  | 24. Vālmiki.           |
| 14. Taraksha.                | 25. Śakti.             |
| 15. Triyāruṇi. (Traiyāruṇi?) | 26. Parāśara.          |
| 16. Dhananjaya.              | 27. Jātukarṇa.         |
| 17. Kṛitanjaya.              | 28. Kṛishṇadwaipāyana. |

None of these sages, it is observable, has more than one appellation. Noteworthy variants, in my MSS., are: Āruṇi, for Triyāruṇi; Ūshmānaya, for Ūshmāpaṇa. It is probable, that we should substitute, for Taraksha, Suraksha, which appears to be the reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

\* See Dr. Aufrecht’s *Catalogus Cod. Manuscript.*, &c., pp. 52, 53.

† VIII., 13.

‡ This passage is referred to in the commentary.

§ P. 156 of the first edition; p. 68 of the second.

the root *Bṛih* (to increase); because it is infinite (spirit), and because it is the cause by which the Vedas (and all things) are developed.\* Glory to Brahma, who is addressed by that mystic word, associated eternally with the triple universe,<sup>1</sup> and who is one with the four Vedas! Glory to Brahma, who, alike in the destruction and renovation of the world, is called the great and mysterious cause of the intellectual principle (*Mahat*); who is without limit in time or space, and exempt from diminution or decay; in whom (as connected with the property of darkness) originates

rans', although it may be defended as necessary to the sense, is not expressed by the words of the text, nor compatible with Hindu notions. In one of the MSS. employed, the transcriber has, evidently, been afraid of desecrating this sacred monosyllable, and has, therefore, altered the text, writing it

ध्रुवमेकाक्षरं ब्रह्म द्वापराद्वै व्यवस्थितम् ।

instead of

ध्रुवमेकाक्षरं ब्रह्म ओमित्येवं व्यवस्थितम् ।

<sup>1</sup> The daily prayers of the Brahman commence with the formula, *Om bhūr bhuvaḥ swar*: 'Om, earth, sky, heaven.' These are the three mystical terms called *Vyāhritis*, and are scarcely of less sanctity than the *Praṇava* itself. Their efficacy, and the order of their repetition, preceding the *Gāyatrī*, are fully detailed in *Manu*, II., 76—81. In the *Mitāksharā*† they are directed to be twice repeated mentally, with *Om* prefixed to each; *Om bhūh*, *Om bhuvaḥ*, *Om swar*; the breath being suppressed by closing the lips and nostrils: ओं भूः ओं भुवः ओं स्वरिति त्रीनाराम्युख-नासिकासंचारिणं वायुनिबन्धननसा जपेत् ।

\* बृहत्त्वाद्बृहत्त्वाच्च तद्वत्त्वमभिधीयते ।

*Brahmā* and *Brahma* are similarly etymologized in the *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Linga-purāṇa*, respectively. See Vol. I., p. 30, note \*.

† Commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 23.

worldly illusion; and in whom resides the end of soul (fruition or liberation), through the properties of light and of activity (or goodness and foulness)! He is the refuge of those who are versed in the Sāṅkhya philosophy; of those who have acquired control over their thoughts and passions. He is the invisible, imperishable Brahma; varying in form, invariable in substance; the chief principle, self-engendered; who is said to illuminate the caverns of the heart; who is indivisible, radiant, undecaying, multiform. To that supreme Brahma be, for ever, adoration.

That form of Vāsudeva, who is the same with supreme spirit, which is Brahma, and which, although diversified as threefold, is identical, is the lord who is conceived, by those that contemplate variety in creation, to be distinct in all creatures. He, composed of the Rīg-, Sāma-, and Yajur-Vedas, is, at the same time, their essence, as he is the soul of all embodied spirits. He, distinguished as consisting of the Vedas, creates the Vedas, and divides them, by many subdivisions, into branches: he is the author\* of those branches: he is those aggregated branches: for he, the eternal lord, is the essence of true knowledge.<sup>1†</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The form or sensible type of Vāsudeva is here considered to be the monosyllable Om, and which is one with the three mystical words, Bhūh, Bhuvah, Swar, and with the Vedas. Consequently, the Vyāhritis and the Vedas are, also, forms of Vāsudeva; diversified as to their typical character, but, essentially, one and the same.

---

\* *Pranēti*, 'promulgator.'

† For another rendering of the Sanskrit of the latter half of this paragraph, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 11, 12.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

Division of the Veda, in the last Dwápara age, by the Vyása Krishná Dwaipáyana. Paila made reader of the Řich; Vaiśam-páyana, of the Yajus; Jaimini, of the Sáman; and Sumantu, of the Atharvan. Síta appointed to teach the historical poems. Origin of the four parts of the Veda. Saṁhitás of the Řig-veda.

PARÁŚARA.—The original Veda, in four parts,\* consisted of one hundred thousand (stanzas); and from it sacrifice of ten kinds,<sup>1</sup> the accomplisher of all desires (proceeded). In the twenty-eighth Dwápara†

<sup>1</sup> According to the Gṛihya portion of the Sáma-veda, there are five great sacrificial ceremonies: 1. Agnihotra, burnt-offerings, or libations of clarified butter on sacred fire; 2. Darśapaurñamása, sacrifices at new and full moon; 3. Cháturmásya, sacrifices every four months; 4. Paśuyajna or Aśwamedha, sacrifice of a horse or animal; and, 5. Soma-yajna, offerings and libations of the juice of the acid asclepias. These, again, are either Prákṛita, 'simple', or Vaikṛita, 'modified',‡ and, being thus doubled, constitute ten. §

\* *Chatushpáda*.

† In the original, *antara*, i. e., *Manwantara*.

‡ Rather, 'normal' and 'supplemental'.

§ The commentary says: यज्ञः \* \* अग्निहोचदशपीर्णमासचातुर्मा-  
स्यपशुसोमा इति पञ्चविधः । स एव प्रकृतिविकृतिभेदेन दशविध इति ।  
यद्वा गृह्योक्तिः पञ्चयज्ञैः सह दसविधत्वम् । Five sacrifices—but not said  
to belong to the *Sāmaveda* ceremonial—are, thus, named, but not defined.  
The *paśu* of this nomenclature is, more usually, called *paśubandha* or  
*nirūdhapaśubandha*. It is not to be confounded with the *aśwamedha*.  
To the five sacrifices in question, remarks the commentator, if we add  
the five mentioned in the *Gṛihya*, the ten of the text are completed.  
These five others—the *maháyajnas* of the *Sāmaveda* ritual—are said, in  
Āśáditya's *Karmapradīpabhāṣya*, to be the *bhūtayajna*, *manuṣhyayajna*,  
*pitṛiyajna*, *devayajna*, and *brahmayajna*. They are referred to in Chapter  
IX. of this Book. For the sacrifices generally, see Chapter XI., where I  
revert to this note.

age, my son Vyása separated the four portions of the Veda into four (Vedas). In the same manner as the Vedas were arranged by him, as Veda-vyása, so were they divided, (in former periods), by all the (preceding) Vyásas, and by myself; and the branches into which they were subdivided by him were the same into which they had been distributed in every aggregate of the four ages.\* Know, Maitreya, the Vyása called Kṛishná Dwaipáyana to be the deity† Náráyana: for who else on this earth could have composed the Mahábhárata?<sup>1</sup> Into what portions the Vedas were arranged by my magnanimous son, in the Dwápara age, you shall hear.

When Vyása was enjoined, by Brahmá, to arrange the Vedas in different books, he took four persons, well read in those works, as his disciples. He appointed Paila reader of the Ríg-;<sup>2</sup> Vaisampáyana, of

<sup>1</sup> The composition of the Mahábhárata is always ascribed to the Vyása named Kṛishná Dwaipáyana, the contemporary of the events there described. The allusion in the text establishes the priority of the poem to the Vishnú Purána.

<sup>2</sup> Or, rather, 'he took Paila as teacher.' The expression is: Rígvedaśrávakaṁ Pailaṁ jagráha sa mahámuniḥ:

ऋग्वेदश्रावकं पैलं जग्राह स महामुनिः ।

Śrávaka means, properly, 'he who causes to hear,' 'a lecturer,' 'a preacher;' although, as in the case of its applicability to the laity of the Buddhists and Jains, it denotes a disciple. The commentator, however, observes, that the text is sometimes read ऋग्वेदपारगं,† 'one who had gone through the Ríg-veda.'

\* Yuga.

† Prabhu.

‡ But the more ordinary reading is the one found in the *Váyu-purána*, from which work our text seems to be taken, largely, hereabouts.

the Yajur-; and 'Jaimini, of the Sāma-veda: and Sumantu, who was conversant with the Atharva-veda,\* was also the disciple of the learned Vyása. He also took Sūta, who was named Lomaharshaña,† as his pupil in historical and legendary traditions.<sup>1</sup>

---

So, in the preceding verse, it is said: 'He took four persons, well read in the Vedas, as his disciples:'

अथ शिष्यान्स जयाह चतुरो वेदपारगान् ।

And again it is said: 'Sumantu, conversant with the Atharva-veda, was his disciple:'

\* \* \* \* \* तथैवाथर्ववेदवित् ।

सुसन्तुसस्त्र शिष्योऽभूदेद्व्यासस्त्र धीमतः ॥

It is clear, therefore, that the Vedas were known, as distinct works, before Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana; and it is difficult to understand how he earned his title of arranger, or Vyása. At any rate, in undertaking to give order to the prayers and hymns of which the Vedas consist, Paila and the others were rather his coadjutors than disciples; and it seems probable, that the tradition records the first establishment of a school, of which the Vyása was the head, and the other persons named were the teachers.

<sup>1</sup> The Itihása and Purāṇas; understanding, by the former, legendary and traditional narratives. It is usually supposed, that, by the Itihása, the Mahābhārata is especially meant. But, although this poem is ascribed to Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana, the recitation of it is not attributed to his pupil, Romaharshaña or Lomaharshaña:

---

\* The *Saṁhitās* thus disposed of are said, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 52, 53, to be called, respectively, the Bahvrīchā, the Nigada, the Chhandoga, and the Atharvāṅgirasi.

This statement occurs in the passage referred to in Vol. I., Preface, p. XLIV.

† All my MSS. have Romaharshaña. Also see p. 64, 65, *infra*.

‡ This chapter, thus far, will be found retranslated in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 21, 22.

There was but one Yajur-veda; but, dividing this into four parts, Vyása instituted the sacrificial rite that is administered by four kinds of priests: in which it was the duty of the Adhwaryu to recite the prayers (Yajusas,—or direct the ceremony); of the Hotri, to repeat the hymns (Ríchas); of the Udgátri, to chant other hymns (Sámans); and, of the Brahman, to pronounce the formulæ called Atharvans. Then the Muni, having collected together the hymns called Ríchas, compiled the Ríg-veda; with the prayers and directions termed Yajusas he formed the Yajur-veda; with those called Sámans, the Sáma-veda; and with the Atharvans he composed the rules of all the ceremonies suited to kings, and the function of the Brahman agreeably to practice.<sup>1\*</sup>

---

it was first narrated by Vaiśampáyana, and, after him, by Sauti, the son of Lomaharshaña.

<sup>1</sup> From this account, which is repeated in the Váyu Purána, it appears, that the original Veda was the Yajus, or, in other words, was a miscellaneous body of precepts, formulæ, prayers, and hymns, for sacrificial ceremonies; Yajus being derived, by the grammarians, from Yaj (यज्), 'to worship.' The derivation of the Váyu Purána, however, is from Yuj, 'to join,' 'to employ;' the formulæ being those especially applied to sacrificial rite, or set apart, for that purpose, from the general collection:

यच्छिष्टं च यजुर्वेदे तेन यज्ञमथायुजत् ।  
युज्जानः स यजुर्वेद इति शास्त्रविनिश्चयः ॥

Again:

प्रयुज्यते ह्ययमेधस्तेन वा युज्यते तु सः ।

The commentator on the text, however, citing the former of these

---

\* *Yathá-sthiti*, 'according to a fixed rule.'

This vast original tree of the Vedas, having been divided, by him, into four principal stems, soon branched out into an extensive forest. In the first place, Paila divided the Ṛig-veda, and gave the two Samhitas (or collections of hymns) to Indrapramati\* and to Bāshkali.† Bāshkali‡ subdivided his Samhitā into four, which he gave to his disciples,§ Baudhya,

passages from the Vāyu, reads it:

याजनाशि यजुर्वेद इति शास्त्रस्य निश्चयः ।

confining the derivation to Yaj, 'to worship.' The concluding passage, relating to the Atharvan, refers, in regard to regal ceremonies, to those of expiation, Śanti, &c. The function of the Brahman (ब्रह्मत्वं • यथास्थिति) is not explained; but, from the preceding specification of the four orders of priests who repeat, at sacrifices, portions of the several Vedas, it relates to the office of the one that is termed, specifically, the Brahman. So the Vāyu has

ब्रह्मत्वमकारोद्यन्ते वेदेनाथर्वणेन तु ।

'He constituted the function of the Brahman at sacrifices, with the Atharva-veda.

<sup>1</sup> Both in our text, and in that of the Vāyu, this name occurs both Bāshkala and Bāshkali. Mr. Colebrooke writes it Bāhkala and Bāhkali. || Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 374. ¶

\* Two of my MSS. have, here and below, Indrapramiti, a reading of no value.

† My MSS. all here give Bāshkala. But see p. 49, note §, *infra*.

‡ Two MSS. here have Bāshkala.

§ They are called, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Bodhya, Agnināvara—in three MSS., by corruption, perhaps, of the Agnimāthara of two others,—Pārāśara, and Yājñavalkya. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI, 55, has Bodhya, Yājñavalkya, Pārāśara, and Agnimitra.

|| Strictly, Bāhkala and Bāhkali, as translettering the ungrammatical mislections बाःकल and बाःकलि.

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 14.



Agnimáthara, \* Yájnavalkya, † and Parásara; and they taught these secondary shoots from the primitive branch. Indrapramati imparted his Samhítá to his son Mándúkeya; ‡ and it thence descended through successive generations, as well as disciples.<sup>1</sup> § Vedamitra, (called also) Śákalya, || studied the same Samhítá; but he divided it into five Samhítás, which he distributed amongst as many disciples, named, severally, Mudgala,

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyú supplies the detail. Mañdukeya, or, as one copy writes, Márkañdeya, ¶ taught the Samhítá to his son Satyasra-vas; he, to his son Satyahita; and he, to his son Satyaśrí. The latter had three pupils: Śákalya, also called Devamitra\*\* (sic in MS.); Rathántara; †† and another Báshkali, called also Bháradwája. The Váyú has a legend of Śákalya's death, in consequence of his being defeated, by Yájnavalkya, in a disputation at a sacrifice celebrated by Janaka.

---

\* Agnimáchara, the lection of two MSS., and Agnimátúra, that of one, scarcely deserve noting.

† Professor Wilson had "Yajnavalka".

‡ The Translator put "Mañdukeya", as the name is written in five of my thirteen MSS. See III., 8, of the *Prátisákhyá* of the *Rigveda*, edited by M. Regnier.

§ तस्य शिष्यप्रशिष्येभ्यः पुत्रशिष्यात्क्रमावयी ।

|| According to the *Bhágavata-purána*, XII., VI., 57, as explained by Śrídharma, Śákalya was son of Mándúkeya.

¶ This is the reading of all the copies of the *Váyú-purána* known to me.

\*\* And so reads the *Bhágavata-purána*, XII., VI., 56.

As the *Vishnu-purána* gives वेदमित्रसु शाकल्यः, so the *Váyú-purána* gives देवमित्रसु शाकल्यः; and we here have, probably, only an epithet of Śákalya, or, at most, his secondary appellation.

†† See note †† in the next page.

Gokhalu,\* Vātsya,† Śāliya, and Śīsira.<sup>1</sup> Śākapūrñi‡ made a different§ division of the original Samhitā into three portions, and added a glossary (Nirukta), constituting a fourth.<sup>2</sup> The three Samhitās

<sup>1</sup> These names, in the Vāyu, are Mudgala, Golaka, Khāliya,|| Mātsya, ¶ Śāisireya.

<sup>2</sup> The commentator, who is here followed by Mr. Colebrooke, states, that he was a pupil of Indrapramati; but, from the Vāyu, it appears, that Śākapūrñi was another name of Rathāntara, the pupil of Satyaśrī, the author of three Samhitās and a Nirukta (or glossary); whence Mr. Colebrooke supposes him the same with Yāska. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 375.\*\* It is highly probable, that the text of the Vāyu may be made to correct that of the Vishnu, in this place, which is inaccurate, notwithstanding the copies agree. They read:

संहिताचितयं चक्रे शाकपूषिरथेतरम् †† ।  
निष्कलमकरोत्तद्वचुर्धं मुनिसत्तम ॥

\* Probably it was from being misled by a smudged ख, that Professor Wilson deciphered "Goswalu", which I have corrected. Five of my MSS. have the word in the text; two corrupt it into Gokkala; one, into Yokhalu; and four give Gomukha; one, Gālava. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 57, has Gokhalya. See, further, Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 135, note 2, and p. 368, note 6.

† A single MS. has Śankha.

‡ Thus in four of my MSS., while the other nine have Śākapūñi.

Professor Max Müller—*Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 153, note—asserts, that "there can be no doubt that Śākapūrñi is the same name as Śākapūñi." The former has much the air of being a corruption of the latter, due to popular etymology. The MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* almost everywhere have Śākapūñi; and so has Yāska.

§ See note †† in this page.

|| Two MSS. have Khāliya; others, Khālāya, Khalāya, and Swāloya.

¶ All my MSS. give Matsya.

\*\* Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

Professor Roth—*Nirukta*, p. 222—points out, that Śākapūñi is quoted by Yāska. The former cannot, therefore, be identical with the latter.

†† The bulk of MSS. at my disposal read शाकपूषिरथेतरः; and the

were given to his three pupils, Krauncha, Vaitálaki,\*

Here, Śākapúrñir atha-itaram is the necessary construction; but quere, if it should not be Śākapúrñi Rathántarah. The parallel passage in the Vāyu is:

प्रोवाच संहितास्त्रिः शाकपूषिरथान्तरः†।

निश्चतं च पुनश्चक्रे चतुर्थं दिवसत्तमाः॥

Now, in describing the pupils of Satyaśrī, Rathántara was named clearly enough:

शाकः प्रथमस्तेषां तस्मादन्यो रथान्तरः‡।

बाष्कस्त्रिः भारद्वाज इति शाखाप्रवर्तकाः॥§

In another passage it would seem to be implied, that this Bāshkali was the author of the Samhitās; and Rathántara, of the Nirukta only:

बाष्कस्त्रिः भारद्वाजस्त्रिः प्रोवाच संहिताः।

रथान्तरो॥ निश्चतं च पुनश्चक्रे चतुर्थकम्॥

resulting sense is: "Now, another, Śākapūni, made a triad of *Samhitās*, and made, likewise, a glossary, for a fourth *work*." The fact that the forementioned lection, with its awkwardly introduced 'now, another,' is the more ordinary one, lends considerable support to Professor Wilson's suggestion, that the text is here depraved.

\* Bad readings are: Vaitálaki, Vaitálīki, Táluki, and Paitálaki; each in one manuscript.

† All my MSS. here give रथीतरः. One of Professor Wilson's has शाकपूषिरथान्तरः (*sic*).

‡ Such is, here, the prevailing lection: but रथीतरः occurs, also.

§ In the original, this passage precedes that quoted just above.

॥ रथीतरः is the reading here, in all my five MSS., and so in every one of Professor Wilson's.

Rathántara is, without question, corrupted from Rathitara. As शाकपूषिरथीतरः, the reading of every one of my MSS.,—see note †, above—is an all but impossible compound name, and as the person intended is called, elsewhere in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Rathitara simply, we must read शाकपूषी रथीतरः, 'Śākapūni, that is to say, Rathitara.' Śākapūni thus comes out a patronymic of Śākapūna,—a fact hitherto unnoticed, I believe. See Pāṇini, IV., I., 95. In two of the three passages adduced, above,

and Balāka;\* and a fourth, (thence named) Nirukta-

---

However this may be, his being the author of the Nirukta identifies him with Śākapūrṇi, and makes it likely, that the two names should come in juxtaposition, in our text, as well as in the Vāyu. It must be admitted, however, that there are some rather inexplicable repetitions in the part of the Vāyu where this account occurs, although two copies agree in the reading. That a portion of the Vedas goes by the name of Rathantara† we have seen (Vol. I., p. 84); but, as far as is yet known, the name is confined to different prayers or hymns of the Ūhya Gāna of the Sāma-veda. The text of the Vishṇu also admits of a different explanation regarding the work of Śākapūrṇi; and, instead of a threefold division of the original, the passage may mean, that he composed a third Saṁhitā.‡ So Mr. Colebrooke says: "the *Vishṇu purāna* omits them [the Śākhās of Āśwalāyana

---

from the *Vāyu-purāna*, we find, similarly, mention of 'Bāshkali, Bhāradwāja', i. e., sprung from Bharadwāja.

We are, then, to understand, that one and the same person is referred to in the *Bṛihaddevatā*, where it speaks of Śākapūrṇi and of Rathantara. See *Indische Studien*, Vol. I., p. 105.

Of the exceedingly rare work just named there is a MS. in the Bodleian Library, wittingly misrepresented, in Dr. Aufrecht's Catalogue, as the gift of Mr. William Walker.

\* Instead of this, the *Bhāgavata-purāna*, XII., VI., 58, says, that Jātūkarīya, disciple of Śākalya, digested a *Saṁhitā* and a *Nirukta*, and gave them to his disciples, Balāka, Paija, Vaitāla, and Viraja. The commentator explains that he divided his *Saṁhitā* into three.

One Jātūkarīya succeeded, as a teacher, Yaska. *Bṛihad-āranyaka Upanishad*, II., VI., 3; IV., VI., 3.

† For the passage so called, see Vol. II., p. 343; supplementary note on p. 295, l. 9, *ibid*.

‡ संहितात्रितयं, the reading of all my MSS., and also, apparently, of all seen by the Translator, can mean, in good Sanskrit, only 'three *Saṁhitās*',—not 'third *Saṁhitā*'. It would be interesting to know whether Colebrooke was acquainted with a different lection; as he very rarely trips in a matter of grammar. See Pāṇini, V., II., 43.

kṛit, had the glossary.<sup>1\*</sup> In this way branch sprang from branch.† Another‡ Bāshkali<sup>2</sup>§ composed three

and Śāṅkhāyana], and intimates, that Śākapūrṇi, a pupil of Indrapramati, gave the third varied edition from this teacher.”|| The Vāyu, however, is clear in ascribing three Saṁhitās, or Śākhās, to Śākapūrṇi.

<sup>1</sup> In the Vāyu, the four pupils of Śākapūrṇi are called Kena, ¶ Dālaki, \*\* Śatabalāka, and Naigama.

<sup>2</sup> This Bāshkali may either be, according to the commentator, †† the pupil of Paila,—who, in addition to the four Saṁhi-

\* श्रीधरो वेतालकिल्लद्वलाकश्च महामतिः ।

निबृत्तछत्रचतुर्थोऽभूदेवेदाङ्गपारगः ।

As the commentary observes, some MSS. begin the second line of this stanza with चतुर्थो निबृत्तछत्रम् ।

† इत्येताः प्रतिशाखाभ्योऽप्यनुशाखा द्विजोत्तम ।

‡ The original, unsupplemented by the commentary, does not discriminate this Bāshkali from the one before mentioned:

वाष्कलिश्चापराक्षिप्तः संहिताः छतवान्द्विज ।

See note †† in this page.

§ We read, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 59:

वाष्कलिः प्रतिशाखाभ्यो वालखिल्याख्यसंहिताम् ।

चक्रे वालायनिर्मेज्यः काशारक्षिव तां दधुः ॥

Bāshkala had before been mentioned; and the Bāshkali here spoken of is said, by Śrīdhara, to have been his son: वाष्कलिः । पूर्वोक्तस्य वाष्कलस्य पुत्रः । It is stated, in this stanza, that Bāshkali compiled a *Saṁhitā*, called Vāḥkilyā, from all the aforesaid Śākhās; and that Bālayani (*sic*), Bhajya, and Kāsāra accepted it,—or read it, according to the commentator's gloss on दधुः, namely, तामादधुः । अधीतवन्तः ।

|| *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

¶ Two MSS. have Kaijava.

\*\* One MS. has Dvālāki; and two, Vāmana. Two, again, seem to intend Uddālaki. Uddālaka, son of Aruṇa, is a well-known Vaidik personage.

†† The commentary remarks: वाष्कलिः पेशशिष्यः । चतस्रः संहिताश्चक्रे इत्युक्तम् । स एवापराक्षिप्तः संहिताः छतवान् । अपर एव

other *Saṁhitās*, which he taught to his disciples, Kā-lāyani, Gārgya,\* and Kathājava.<sup>1†</sup> These are they by whom the principal divisions of the *Řich* have been promulgated.<sup>2‡</sup>

tās previously noticed, compiled three others; or he may be another Bāshkali, a fellow-pupil of Śākapūrñi. The Vāyu makes him a disciple of Satyaśri, the fellow-pupil of Śākalya and Ra-thāntara, and adds the name or title Bhāradwāja. §

<sup>1</sup> In the Vāyu, they are called Nandāyaniya, Pannagāri, || and Ārjava.

<sup>2</sup> Both the Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas omit two other principal divisions of the *Řich*, those of Āśwalāyana and Śāṅkhāyana (or the Kaushitaki). Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 375. ¶ There is no specification of the aggregate number of *Saṁhitās* of the *Řich*, in our text, or in the Vāyu; but they describe eighteen, including the Nirukta; or, as Mr. Colebrooke states,

शाकल्यसतीर्थो बाष्कलिः । तच्छिष्याः कालायनिप्रमुखास्त्रयः । In other words, Bāshkali, disciple of Paila, first redacted four *Saṁhitās*, and then three others. But there was a different Bāshkali, Śākalya's fellow-student; and his disciples were Kā-lāyani and the rest.

We are left to ascertain on what authority seven *Saṁhitās* are imposed on a single Bāshkali.

\* Son of Balāka, mentioned a little before. See the *Kaushitaki-brāhmaṇa Upanishad*, IV., 1.

† One of my MSS. exhibits Ājava, which looks like a mere misscript of the *Vāyu-purāṇa's* Ārjava.

‡ इत्येते बहुधाः प्रोक्ताः संहिता येः प्रवर्तिताः ।

"These, by whom the *Saṁhitās* have been promulgated, were denominated Bahwrichas."

Bahwricha is a general name for a teacher of the *Rigveda*.

§ See the second and third extracts from the *Vāyu-purāṇa* at p. 46, note 2, *supra*.

|| In two MSS., Pannagāni.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

sixteen (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VIII., p. 374\*); that is, omitting the two portions of the original as divided by Paila. The *Kúrma Purána* states the number at twenty-one;† but treatises on the study of the Vedas reduce the *Śakhás* of the *Řich* to five.‡

---

\* Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 14.

† But it does not name them.

‡ The *Śákalas*, *Báshkalas*, *Áśwaláyanas*, *Śánkháyanas*, and *Mándúkáyanas*. So says the *Charańa-vyúha*.

---

## CHAPTER V.

Divisions of the Yajur-veda. Story of Yájnavalkya: forced to give up what he has learned: picked up by others, forming the Taittiriya-yajus. Yájnavalkya worships the sun, who communicates to him the Vájasaneyi-yajus.

PARÁŚARA.—Of the tree of the Yajur-veda there are twenty-seven branches, which Vaiśampáyana, the pupil of Vyása, compiled, and taught to (as many) disciples.<sup>1</sup> Amongst these, Yájnavalkya, the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu divides these into three classes, containing, each, nine, and discriminated as northern, middle and eastern:

उदीच्या मध्यदेशाच्च प्राच्याश्च पृचम्विधाः ।

Of these the chiefs were, severally, Śyámáyani, Áruṇi, and Ánalavi (or Álambi\*). With some inconsistency, however, the same authority states, that Vaiśampáyana composed, and gave to his disciples, eighty-six Samhitás.†

---

\* My MSS. have this reading.

† The *Váyu-purāṇa* declares:

वैशम्पायनगोत्रोऽसौ यजुर्वेदं व्यकल्पयत् ।  
षडशीतिषु येनोक्ता संहिता यजुषां शुभाः ॥  
शिष्येभ्यः प्रददौ ताञ्च जगृहसे विधानतः ।  
एकस्यच परित्यक्तो याज्ञवल्क्यो महातपाः ॥  
षडशीतिञ्च तस्यापि संहितानां विकल्पकाः ।  
सर्वेषामेव तेषां वै विधा भेदाः प्रकीर्तिताः ।  
विधा भेदास्तु ते प्रोक्ता भेदेऽस्मिन्नवमे शुभे ॥

Then follows the line quoted above, and the names of the disciples, Śyámáyani, &c.

These verses are thus edited, from Professor Wilson's MSS., in Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., p. 55; and my five copies of the *Váyu-purāṇa* are of no help towards mending them into something probable. The passage, as it stands, is, in part, ungrammatical and unintelligible; and it would be venturesome to guess at its full meaning, in its unamended state.



son of Brahmaráta,\* was distinguished for piety and obedience to his preceptor.

It had been formerly agreed, by the Munis, that any one of them who, at a certain time, did not join an assembly held on mount Meru should incur the guilt of killing a Brahman within a period of seven nights.<sup>1</sup> Vaisampáyana alone failed to keep the appointment, and, consequently, killed, by an accidental kick with his foot, the child of his sister. He then addressed his scholars, and desired them to perform the penance expiatory of Brahmanicide, on his behalf. Without any hesitation,† Yájnavalkya refused, and said: "How shall I engage in penance with these miserable and inefficient Brahmins?"‡ On which, his Guru, being incensed, commanded him to relinquish all that he had learned from him. "You speak contemptuously," he observed, "of these young Brahmins: but of what use is a disciple who disobeys my commands?" "I spoke," replied Yájnavalkya, "in perfect faith:§ but,

<sup>1</sup> The parallel passage in the Váyu rather implies, that the agreement was to meet within seven nights:

ततस्ते सगणाः सर्वे वैशम्पायनवर्जिताः ।

प्रययुः सप्तरात्रेण यत्र संधिः कृतोऽभवत् ॥

\* One MS. has Devaráta; and so reads the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 64. Devaráta would be a violent synonym of Brahmaráta. Moreover, Daivaráti—patronymic of Devaráta—is a name of Janaka, Yájnavalkya's patron.

† These words should end the preceding sentence. The original runs:

चरध्वं मत्कृते सर्वे न विचार्यमिदं तथा ।

‡ He says: 'I will perform this sacred office': चरिष्येऽहमिदं व्रतम् ।

§ *Bhaktau*, "out of devotion to thee."

as to what I have read from you, I have had enough: it is no more than this—" (acting as if he would eject it from his stomach); when he brought up the texts of the Yajus, in substance stained with blood. He then departed. The other scholars of Vaiśampāyana, transforming themselves to partridges (Tittiri), picked up the texts which he had disgorged, and which, from that circumstance, were called Taittirīya;<sup>1</sup> and the disciples were called the Charaka professors\* of the Ya-

<sup>1</sup> Also called the Black Yajus. No notice of this legend, as Mr. Colebrooke observes (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VIII., p. 376†), occurs in the Veda itself; and the term Taittirīya is more rationally accounted for in the *Anukramaṇi*, or Index, of the Black Yajus. It is there said, that Vaiśampāyana taught it to Yāska, who taught it to Tittiri, who, also, became a teacher; whence the term Taittirīya: for a grammatical rule explains it to mean, 'The Taittirīyas are those who read what was said or repeated by Tittiri.' तित्तिरीया प्रोक्तमधीयते । तैत्तिरीयाः । Pāṇini, IV., III., 102. The legend, then, appears to be nothing more than a Paurāṇik invention, suggested by the equivocal sense of Tittiri, a proper name, or a partridge.‡ Much of the mythos of the Hindus, and, obviously, of that of the Greeks and Romans, originates in this source. It was not confined, at least amongst the former, to the case that Creuzer specifies,—“Telle ou telle expression cessa d'être comprise, et l'on inventa des mythes pour éclaircir ces malentendus,”—but was wilfully perpetrated, even where the word was understood, when it afforded a favourable opportunity for a fable. It may be suspected, in the present instance, that the legend is posterior, not only to the Veda, but to the grammatical rule; or it would have furnished Pāṇini with a different etymology.

\* *Charakādhvaryu*.

† Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 16.

‡ Compare Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 174, note.

jus, from Charaṇa, ('going through' or 'performing' the expiatory rites enjoined by their master).<sup>1\*</sup>

Yājñavalkya, who was perfect in ascetic practices, † addressed himself strenuously to the sun, being anxious to recover possession of the texts of the Yajus. "Glory to the Sun," he exclaimed, "the gate of liberation, the fountain of bright radiance, the triple source of splendour, as the Rīg-, the Yajur-, and the Sāma-vedas! Glory to him, who, as fire and the moon, is one with the cause of the universe: to the sun, that is charged with radiant heat, and with the Sushumṇa: ray, (by which the moon is fed with light): to him who is one with the notion of time, and all its divisions of hours, minutes, and seconds:§ to him who is to be

<sup>1</sup> This is another specimen of the sort of Paronomasia explained in the preceding note. The Charakas are the students of a Śākhā so denominated from its teacher Charaka. (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 377 ||). So, again, Pāṇini, IV., III., 107: 'The readers of that which is said by Charaka are Charakas:' चरकेन प्रोक्तं चरकाः। Charaka has no necessary connexion with Char, 'to go.' The Vāyu states, they were also called Chaṭakas, from Chaṭ (चट्), 'to divide;' because they shared amongst them their master's guilt. 'Those pupils of Vaiśampāyana were called Chaṭakas by whom the crime of Brahmanicide was shared; and Charakas, from its departure.'

\* See the Translator's third note on Book IV., Chapter XXI.

† *Prāyāyama*. It is correctly rendered "suppression of breath", in Vol. II., p. 89.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 297, note \*.

§ कक्षावाहानिषादिवाहनात्मने नमः।

See Vol. I., p. 47.

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 17.

meditated upon as the (visible) form of Vishnú, as the impersonation of the mystic Om:\* to him who nourishes the troops of the gods, having filled the moon with his rays: who feeds the Pitris with nectar and ambrosia,† and who nourishes mankind with rain; who pours down, or absorbs, the waters, in the time of the rains, of cold, and of heat!‡ Glory be to Brahmá,§ the sun, in the form of the three seasons:|| him who alone is the dispeller of the darkness of this earth, of which he is the sovereign lord! To the god who is clad in the raiment of purity be adoration! Glory to the sun, until whose rising, man is incapable of devout acts, and water does not purify; and, touched by whose rays, the world is fitted for religious rites: to him who is the centre and source of purification!¶ Glory to Savitrī, to Súrya, to Bháskara, to Vivaswat, to Áditya, to the first-born of gods or demons.\*\* I adore the eye

---

वैशम्पायनशिष्यास्तौ चरकाः समुदाहृताः ।  
ब्रह्महत्वा तु वैद्वीर्णा चरणाच्चरकाः स्मृताः ॥††

---

\* In the original, *paramákshara*, "the supreme syllable."

† *Sudhāmṛita*. See Vol. II., p. 300, note \*.

‡ हिमाम्बुधर्मवृष्टीनां कर्ता हर्ता च यः प्रभुः ।

§ Vedhas, in the original.

|| *Kāla*.

¶ सत्कर्मयोग्यो न जनो नैवापः शौचकारणम् ।

यस्मिन्ननुदिते तस्मै नमो देवाय भासते ॥

सुष्टो यदंशुभिर्लोकः क्रियायोग्योऽभिजायते ।

पविचताकारणाय तस्मै शुद्धात्मने नमः ॥

\*\* "Or demons" represents *ādi*, 'etc.'

†† The halves of this stanza are here transposed, if my MSS. are correct.

of the universe, borne in a golden car, whose banners scatter ambrosia.”\*

Thus eulogized by Yájnavalkya, the sun, in the form of a horse, (appeared to him, and) said: “Demand what you desire.” To which the sage, having prostrated himself before the lord of day, replied: “Give me a knowledge of those texts of the Yajus with which (even) my preceptor is unacquainted.” Accordingly, the sun imparted to him the texts of the Yajus called Ayátayáma (unstudied), which were unknown to Vaiśampáyana: and, because these were revealed by the sun, in the form of a horse, the Brahmans who study this portion of the Yajus are called Vájins (horses).† Fifteen branches of this school sprang from Kañwa and other pupils of Yájnavalkya.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu names the fifteen teachers of these schools, Kañwa, Vaidheya, Śálin, Madhyandina, Śápeyin,‡ Vidagdha, Uddálin,§ Tāmraýañi,|| Vátaya, Gálava,¶ Śaishiri,\*\* Átavya,†† Paría, Viraña,‡‡ and Saṃparáyaña,§§ who were the founders of no fewer than 101 branches of the Vájasaneyi, or White Yajus. Mr. Colebrooke specifies several of these, as the Jábálas, Baudháyanas, Tápaníyas, &c. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 376. |||

---

\* Yájnavalkya's hymn will be found in the *Bhágavata-purána*, XII., VI., 67–72.

† See, for a translation of nearly the whole of this chapter, Yájnavalkya's hymn excepted, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 32, 33.

‡ Two of my MSS. have Śápemin, a reading of no value.

§ This, as I judge from all my MSS., is an error for Uddala.

|| Similarly, this seems an oversight for Tāmraýaña.

¶ Golava is a variant.

\*\* All my MSS. have Śaishiri.

†† Átevin is the most common reading; but Átavín and Átavin, also, are found.

‡‡ Virañin is in all my MSS.

§§ The lection of four MSS. is सपरायणः, ‘and Paráyaña.’

||| Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 17.

## CHAPTER VI.

Divisions of the Sáma-veda: of the Atharva-veda. Four Pauránik Samhitás. Names of the eighteen Puráñas. Branches of knowledge. Classes of Řishis.

YOU shall now hear, Maitreya, how Jaimini, the pupil of Vyása, divided the branches of the Sáma-veda. The son of Jaimini was Sumantu; and his son was Sukarman; who, both, studied the same Samhitá under Jaimini<sup>1</sup>. The latter\* composed the Sáhasra Samhitá (or compilation of a thousand hymns, &c.), which he taught to two disciples, Hirańyanábha,—also named Kauśalya† (or, of Kośala),—and Paushyinji<sup>2</sup>.: Fifteen disciples (of the latter) were the authors of as many Samhitás: they were called the northern chanters of

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu makes Sukarman the grandson of Sumantu; his son being called Sunwat. §

<sup>2</sup> Some copies read Paushpinji. The Váyu agrees with our text, but alludes to a legend of Sukarman having first taught a thousand disciples; but they were, all, killed by Indra, for reading on an unlawful day, or one when sacred study is prohibited.

---

\* Sukarman, namely.

† One of my MSS. has Kaiśilya. The *Váyu-purána* reads Kauśilya, which looks less likely than Kauśalya to be correct.

‡ All my MSS. have Paushpinji. Paushyinji, a reading of no account, occurs in some copies of the *Váyu-purána*. The *Bhágavata-purána*—see p. 59, note \*, *infra*,—has Paushpanji, a patronymic of Pushpanja. The meaning of Paushpinji is not evident; but it is, probably, the original name.

§ See p. 60, note ||, *infra*.

the Sáman.\* As many more, also, the disciples of

\* साहसं संहिताभेदं सुकर्मा तत्सुतस्ततः ।  
चकार तं च तच्छिष्यी जगृहाते महामती ॥  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यः पौष्पिजिश्च द्विजोत्तम ।  
उदीच्यसामगाः शिष्यास्तैश्च पञ्चदश स्मृताः ॥  
हिरण्यनाभास्तावत्तः संहिता येद्विजोत्तमैः ।  
गृहीतास्तैऽपि चोच्यन्ते पण्डितैः प्राच्यसामगाः ॥

The corresponding passage of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—XII., VI., 76–78,—runs thus:

सुकर्मा चापि तच्छिष्यः सामवेदतरोर्महान् ।  
साहसं संहिताभेदं चक्रे साक्षां ततो द्विजः ॥  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यः पौष्पिजिश्च सुकर्मणः ।  
शिष्यौ जगृहुस्तान्य आवन्तो ब्रह्मवित्तमः ॥  
उदीच्याः सामगाः शिष्या आसम्पद्य शतानि वै ।  
पौष्पज्यावन्त्ययोश्चापि कांश्चित्प्राच्यान्प्रचक्षते ॥

Śrīdhara explains this to mean, that Hiraṇyanābha, Paushtpanji, and Āvantya had, between them, five hundred disciples, first called northern, and, some of them, in time, eastern.

It seems possible that the name Āvantya grew out of a misreading of *tāvatyah*,—which some of my MSS. corrupt into *tāvantiyah*,—and the suggestion of Kauśalya; both which words stand only two lines apart, in the verses quoted from the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*. Āvantya does not appear in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, an older work than either the *Vishṇu* or the *Bhāgavata*:

तस्य शिष्योऽभवन्नीमान्पौष्पिजिर्द्विजसत्तमाः ।  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यो द्वितीयोऽभून्नराधिपः ॥  
अध्यापयन्तु पौष्पिजिः शहस्रार्धं तु संहिताः ।  
ते नास्तीदीच्यसामान्याः शिष्याः पौष्पिजिनः शुभाः ॥  
शतानि पञ्च कौशिल्यः संहितानां च वीर्यवान् ।  
शिष्या हिरण्यनाभस्य स्मृतास्तैः प्राच्यसामगाः ॥

Here, distinctly, Paushtpinji is said to have taught half a thousand *Saṁhitās*; and his disciples were called northerners: Hiraṇyanābha had five hundred *Saṁhitās*; and his disciples were known as easterlings.

Śrīdhara tries to harmonize with the text he is editing that of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*; quoting from it, in place of the fourth verse adduced above:

उदीच्याः सामगाः शिष्यास्तस्य पञ्च शत स्मृताः ।

The reading तस्य is seen, at once, to be incomparably better than

Hirañyanábha, were termed the eastern chanters of the Sáman, founding an equal number of schools. Lokákshi,\* Kuthumi,† Kushidin,‡ and Lángali were the pupils of Paushyinji; and by them and their disciples many other branches were formed: whilst another scholar of Hirañyanábha, named Kṛiti,§ taught twenty-four Saṁhitás to (as many) pupils; and by them, again, was the Sáma-veda divided into numerous branches.<sup>1</sup>||

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu specifies many more names than the Vishnú; but the list is rather confused. Amongst the descendants of those named in the text, Ráyánaniya (or Ránáyaniya), the son of Lokákshi, is the author of a Saṁhitá still extant; Saumitri, his son, was the author of three Saṁhitás: Párásara, the son of Kuthumi, compiled and taught six Saṁhitás: and Śáligotra, a son

---

तेभ्यः; and 'five hundred', as the *Váyu-purāṇa* shows, has to displace "fifteen". By the ordinary text, only thirty *Samhitás* are disposed of, out of the thousand. Both these better lections are in a single one of my thirteen copies of the *Vishnu-purāṇa*; but the commentary adopts, uninquiringly, and without demur, what are now made out to be corruptions.

\* Three MSS. have Langákshi; one has Laukákshi. The former of these readings seems to be the best of all.

† Scarcely worthy of mention are the variants Kuthami and Kuśumi.

‡ This is the prevailing lection; while three MSS. have Kusidin; two, Kuśidi; two, Kuchidi; one, Kuśādi. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to give Kuśiti, in some MSS.; in others, Kuśin.

§ Two MSS. exhibit Kṛita; and this, according to the copies of it known to me, is the name, in the *Váyu-purāṇa*.

|| The history of the transmission of the *Sāmaveda* is briefly told as follows, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 75—80. Jaimini had a son, Sumantu, whose son was Sunwat; and to each of them he gave a *Samhitá*. Sukarman, another disciple of Jaimini, divided the *Sāmaveda* into a thousand parts. His disciples were Hirañyanábha, Pauspanji, and Ávantya; and their disciples were, in all, five hundred.



I will now give you an account of the *Saṁhitās* of the Atharva-veda. The illustrious Muni Sumantu taught this Veda to his pupil Kabandha, who made it twofold, and communicated the two portions to Devadarśa\* and to Pathya. The disciples of Devadarśa were Maudga,† Brahmabali, Śaulkáyani,‡ and Pippalá-

---

of Lángali, established, also, six schools. § Kṛiti was of royal descent:

ततो हिरण्यनाभश्च कृतिः शिष्यौ नृपात्मजः ।

He and Paushyinjī were the two most eminent teachers of the *Sāma-veda*.

---

Paushpanji's disciples, to-wit, Laugākshi, Mángali, Kulya, Kuśida, and Kukshi, received, each, a hundred *Saṁhitās*; Hirañyanābha's disciple, Kṛiti, twenty-four; and Ávantya's disciples, the rest.

We are not told who, or how many, these last were. They must have taken four hundred and seventy-six *Saṁhitās*, to make up the thousand into which the *Sāmaveda* was partitioned by Sukarman.

\* The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Vedasparśa. Śrīdhara, commenting on the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 1, quotes a portion of our text, and reads Vedadarśa.

† One MS. has Maunda. The name, in the *Váyu-purāṇa*, is Moda.

‡ One MS. has Śaulkyáyani.

§ I do not find that Rāñáyaniya is called son of Lokākshi: he seems to have been only his disciple. Nor is Saumitri represented as son of Rāñáyaniya; and no writings are credited to him. Rāñáyaniyi—son of Rāñáyaniya—and he are merely stated to have been conversant with the *Sāmaveda*. The Sanskrit runs:

रायायनीयिः सौमिचिः सामवेदविशारदौ ॥

Again, instead of "Párasāra, the son of Kuthumi," I meet with Párasārya Kauthuma and with Kauthuma Párasārya, which perhaps intend Párasārya, son of Kuthumi. Once more, the kinship of Lángali and Śálihotra,—a better reading than Śáligotra—is left unspecified; and each of them, we are told, published six *Saṁhitās*:

साङ्गलिः शालिहोत्रश्च षड्विंशोवाच संहिताः ।

As to this line, at least, my MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa* must differ from those which were consulted by Professor Wilson.

da.\* Pathya had three pupils, Jājali, Kumudādi,† and Śaunaka; and by all these were separate branches instituted. Śaunaka, having divided his Saṁhitā into two, gave one to Babhru, and the other to Saindhavāyana; and from them sprang two schools, the Saindhavas and the Munjakeśas.‡ The principal subjects of difference§ in the Saṁhitās of the Atharva-veda

---

\* According to the commentator, Munjakeśa is another name for Babhru; but the Vāyu seems to consider him as the pupil of Saindhava: but the text is corrupt:

सैन्धवो मुञ्जकेशाय भिन्नां चास्य द्विधा पुनः ॥

---

\* Pishpalāda, though occurring in five of my MSS., and in some copies of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, can be nothing but a clerical error.

† Kumudāhi is the reading of two MSS.; Kumudāri, of one.

‡ The account of the *Atharvaveda* given in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 1—3, is, in substance, this. Sumantu had two disciples, Pathya and Vedadarśa. The disciples of the latter were Śaulkāyani, Brahmbali, Modosha, and Paippalāyani; and those of the former were Kumuda, Śunaka, and Jājali. Śunaka had two disciples, Babhru—son of Angiras,—and Saindhavāyana; and these were succeeded by the Śāvarīyas and others.

I have availed myself of Śankara's supplementations, here and in note || in p. 60, *supra*.

One MS. has, for Modosha, Modāsha; another, Mediya. All my MSS., and likewise the printed editions, have the ungrammatical Pippalāyani, which I have corrected to Paippalāyani. The *Bhāgavata-kathā-saṅgraha* gives, in my incorrect copies of it, Śaunakāyani, Brahmbali, Maudgalādi, and Pippalāyani, as the disciples of Vedadarśa.

§ "Subjects of difference" is the rendering of *vikalpakāḥ*, 'divisions.'

|| Just before this line we read, almost in the words of the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa*, as follows:

श्रीनकसु द्विधा ह्यस्या ददावेकं तु बभूवे ।

द्वितीयां संहितां धीमासैन्धवायनसंज्ञिते ॥

It is now patent why the Translator pronounced the text corrupt. Saindhavāyana and Saindhava cannot denominate the same teacher. The former must have been a descendant of the latter.

are the five Kalpas (or ceremonials): the Nakshatra Kalpa, (or rules for worshipping the planets); the Vaitāna (Kalpa), (or rules for oblations, according to the Vedas generally); the Sāmhitā (Kalpa), (or rules for sacrifices, according to different schools); the Āngirasa (Kalpa), (incantations and prayers for the destruction of foes and the like); and the Śānti Kalpa, (or prayers for averting evil).<sup>1\*</sup>

Accomplished in the purport of the Purāṇas, Vyāsa compiled a Paurāṇik Sāmhitā, consisting of historical and legendary traditions, prayers and hymns, and sacred chronology.<sup>2†</sup> He had a distinguished disciple,

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu has an enumeration of the verses contained in the different Vedas; but it is very indistinctly given, in many respects, especially as regards the Yajus. The R̥ich is said to comprise 8,600 R̥ichas: the Yajus, as originally compiled by Vyāsa, 12,000; of which the Vājasaneyi contains 1,900 R̥ichas and 7,600 Brāhmaṇas; the Charaka portion contains 6,026 stanzas; and, consequently, the whole exceeds 12,000 verses. The stanzas of the Sāman are said to be 8,014; and those of the Atharvan, 5,980. Mr. Colebrooke‡ states the verses of the whole Yajus to be 1,987; of the Śatapatha§ Brāhmaṇa of the same Veda, 7,624; and, of the Atharvan, 6,015.

<sup>2</sup> Or, of stories (Ākhyānas) and minor stories or tales (Upā-

\* नक्षत्रकल्पो वेदानां संहितानां तथैव च ।  
चतुर्थः स्थादाङ्गिरसः शान्तिकल्पश्च पञ्चमः ।  
त्रेष्टास्त्वर्चव्यहमिते संहितानां विकल्पकाः ॥

The Translator consulted, for his intercalative explanations, those of the commentary; and this understands, by the second and third kalpas, the Brāhmaṇas of the Atharvaveda, and its mantras.

† आख्यायिकापुपाख्यानिर्गथाभिः कल्पशुद्धिभिः ।  
पुराणसंहितां चक्रे पुराणार्थविशारदः ॥

‡ *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 54, 60, 89.

§ "Salapalka" was, of course, an error of the press, in the first edition.

Súta, also termed Romaharshaña; and to him the great Muni communicated the Purāṇas. Súta had six scholars, Sumati, Agnivarchas, Mitrāyu \* Śāmsapáyana, † Akṛitabrahña, ‡ (who is also called Káśyapa §), and Sávarñi. || The three last composed three fundamental

khyānas); of portions dedicated to some particular divinity, as the

\* One MS. has, here and below, Mitrāyu, a reading which is seen in some copies of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as well.

† In one MS. is Śāmsapáyani.

‡ One MS. has Kṛitābraña: but the reading is, perhaps, to be rejected. Akṛitabrahña, however, renders the line which it begins hypermetrical:

सुततत्रणो ऽथ सावर्णिः षड्विंशत्यस्य चाभवत् ।

What is conclusive,—if the MSS. are not corrupt,—the *Vāyu-purāṇa* has the line

सावेयः सुमतिर्धर्मात्मकाश्रयो ह्यसुततत्रणः ।

It is proved hereby, moreover, that Akṛitabrahña sprang from Káśyapa. Sumati is here called descendant of Atri, too.

For the reading Kṛitavrata, see note || in this page.

§ In the Sanskrit, Káśyapa is not named here, but in the following sentence, which the translation abridges.

|| “Six persons received the Purāṇas from Vyāsa, and were his pupils. Their names are Súta, Lomaharsha, Sumati, Maitreya, Śiṃsapáyana, and Suvarñi.” The Translator thus renders a passage from the *Agni-purāṇa*, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, Vol. I., p. 84. Compare Professor Wilson's *Essays, Analytical, Critical, &c.*, Vol. I., p. 88.

Burnouf—in his edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXXIX., XL.—quotes the original of the passage thus rendered, and translates and annotates it, as follows:

प्राप्य व्यासात्पुराणादि सूतो वै लोमहर्षयः ।

सुमतिश्चाभिवर्चाश्च मित्रयुः शशपायनः ॥

सुततत्रतो ऽथ सावर्णिः षड्विंशत्यस्य चाभवत् ।

शशपायनादयश्चक्रुः पुराणानां तु संहिताः ॥

ब्राह्मादीनि पुराणानि हरिविद्या दशाष्ट च ।

महापुराणे चाग्नेये विद्यारूपो हरिः स्थितः ॥

“Lômaharchaṇa le Súta, après avoir reçu de Vyāsa les Purāṇas et le reste, eut six disciples, savoir: Sumati, Agnivartchas, Mitrāyu,

*Sāmhitas*; and Romaharshaña himself compiled a

*Siva-gītā*, *Bhagavad-gītā*, &c.; and accounts of the periods

*Çāṁcapāyana*, *Kṛitavrata* et *Sāvarṇi*. *Çāṁcapāyana* et les autres firent des collections des *Purāṇas*. Les *Purāṇas*, dont le *Brāhma* est le premier, sont au nombre de dix-huit; c'est la science même qui n'est autre que *Hari*. En effet, dans le grand *Purāṇa* nommé l'*Āgnēya*, *Hari* existe sous la forme de la science.'

"M. Wilson \* \* \* a cité ce texte qu'il regarde comme remarquable en ce qui touche à la question de l'origine des *Purāṇas*. Mais soit qu'il ait eu sous les yeux un texte différent du nôtre, soit que quelque faute d'impression se soit glissée dans son travail, il fait deux personnages de *Sūta* et de *Lômaharchaṇa*, et il ne nomme pas *Kṛitavrata*. Au lieu de *Çāṁcapāyana*, que donne également le *Vāichṇava*, M. Wilson lit *Sinsapāyana*, comme le *Bhāgavata*, et *Māitrēya* au lieu du *Mitrāyu* ou *Mitrāyu* du *Vāichṇava*. Ces différences viennent probablement de l'inattention des copistes qui ont compilé les index dont s'est servi M. Wilson pour ses analyses; quelle qu'en soit d'ailleurs la cause, je crois plus sûr de m'en tenir au texte que j'ai sous les yeux, que de faire deux personnages de *Sūta* et de *Lômaharchaṇa*. Mais je dois en même temps remarquer le peu d'accord qui se trouve entre les trois autorités originales dont je rapporte le témoignage, le *Bhāgavata*, le *Vāichṇava* et l'*Āgnēya*. Les noms de *Trayyārūṇi* et de *Hārīta*, donnés par le *Bhāgavata*, ne reparaissent plus dans le *Vāichṇava* ni dans l'*Āgnēya*; d'autre part, le *Sumati*, l'*Agnivartichas* et le *Mitrāyu* de ces deux derniers ouvrages ne se trouvent pas dans le *Bhāgavata*. La liste de ce dernier *Purāṇa* contient d'ailleurs un vice radical, qui consiste à faire deux personnages de *Kācyapa* (qu'il faut lire, comme je vais le dire plus bas, *Kācyapa*), et d'*Akṛitavraṇa*. Quand on pourra comparer un plus grand nombre de textes indiens, et surtout de commentaires, peut-être résoudra-t-on ces difficultés, comme on peut le faire en ce qui touche *Akṛitavraṇa*, qu'un commentateur nous apprend avoir été surnommé *Kācyapa*, à cause sans doute de la famille à laquelle il appartenait; ainsi, le nom de *Trayyārūṇi*, qui est patronymique, cache probablement le nom propre de *Sumati* ou d'*Agnivartichas*. *Trayyārūṇi* rappelle le *Trayyarūṇa* qui figure, selon Colebrooke, parmi les rois auteurs de quelques hymnes du *Rigvêda* (*Miscell. Essays*, t. I., p. 23); et *Hārīta* est le nom d'un sage, auteur d'un *Dharmaśāstra* qui est quelquefois cité par Kullūka Bhaṭṭa, dans son Commentaire sur *Manu*", etc.

For *Tryarūṇa*, the real Vaidik name, see p. 36, note †, *supra*; for *Ātreya*, the patronymic of *Sumati*, p. 64, note ‡, *supra*. According to

fourth, called Romaharshaṇikā;\* the substance of which four Saṁhitās is collected into this (Vishṇu Purāṇa). †

The first of all the Purāṇas is entitled the Brāhma. Those who are acquainted with the Purāṇas enumerate eighteen, or, the Brāhma, Pādma, Vaishṇava, ‡ Śaiva,

called Kalpas, as the Brāhma Kalpa, Vārāha Kalpa, &c. §

the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Bhāradwāja is Agnivarchas's patronymic; Vāsishṭha, Mitrāyu's; and Saumadatti, Śāvarṇi's.

The originators of the Purāṇas are thus enumerated in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 5:

व्याख्यिः काश्यपस्य सावर्णिरङ्गतत्रयः ।

वैशम्पायनहारीती षड्वि पौराणिका इमे ॥

So read, all but consentaneously, five MSS. which I have examined. One of them has Akṣitavrata, for Akṣitabrāṇa; and one has—like the *Bhāgavata-kathā-saṅgraha*—Śiṁśapāyana, for Vaisāmpāyana. Śāmsapāyani is the name, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

\* काश्यपः संहिताकर्ता सावर्णिः शांशपायनः ।

रोमहर्षणिका चान्वा तिसृणां मूलसंहिता ॥

“Kāśyapa was compiler of a *Saṁhitā*; and so was Śāvarṇi, and so Śāmsapāyana: and the *Romaharshaṇikā* was another *Saṁhitā*, the root of the three just specified.”

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* says the same, in effect.

† The original of this paragraph, the scholia on it, and a translation of both, will be found in Burnouf's edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXXVII.—XXXIX.

‡ From the commentary: विष्णुपुराणं च क्वचिद्दशसाहसं क्वचिदष्टसाहसमित्यादिविकल्पोऽप्यत्र षड्साहसमेव व्याख्यायते । We learn, from this, that the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* has been variously reputed as consisting of ten thousand stanzas, of eight thousand, and of six thousand. The scholiast accepts the most moderate estimate. It is a great reduction from twenty-three thousand. See Vol. I., Preface, p. XXXIV., note 2, extract from the *Matsya-purāṇa*.

§ Most of this note is taken from the commentary, which remarks as follows: व्याख्यानादिभिः सह पुराणसंहितां चक्रे । व्यास इति शेषः । तत्र हृष्टोपसम्बन्धकथनं प्राञ्जराख्यानकं बुधाः । श्रुतस्यार्थस्य कथनमुपाख्यानं प्रचक्षते । गाथा पितृपुत्रादिनीताः । कल्पशुद्धिर्वाराहादिकल्पनिर्णयः ।

Bhágavata, Náradíya, Márkañdeya, Agneya, Bhavishyat, Brahma Vaivarta, Lainga, Váráha, Skánda, Vámana, Kaurma, Mátsya, Gáruḍa, Brahmáñḍa. The creation of the world, and its successive reproductions, the genealogies (of the patriarchs and kings), the periods of the Manus, and the transactions of the (royal) dynasties, are narrated in all these Puráñas.\* This Purána which I have repeated to you, Maitreya, is called the Vaishnáva, and is next, in the series, to the Pádma; and in every part of it, in its narratives of primary and subsidiary creation, of families, and of periods, the mighty Vishnú is declared, in this Purána<sup>1</sup>.

The four Vedas, the (six) Angas (or subsidiary portions of the Vedas), (viz., Śikshá, rules of reciting the prayers, the accents and tones to be observed; Kalpa, ritual; Vyákaraṇa, grammar; Nirukta, glossarial comment; Chhandas, metre; and Jyotisha, astronomy), with Mímámsá (theology), Nyáya (logic), Dharma (the institutes of law), and the Puráñas, constitute the fourteen (principal) branches of knowledge: or (they are considered as) eighteen, (with the addition of these four), the Áyur-veda, (medical science, as taught by Dhanwantari), Dhanur-veda, (the science of archery or arms, taught by Bhṛigu), Gándharva-(veda), (or the drama, and the arts of music, dancing, &c., of

---

<sup>1</sup> For remarks upon this enumeration, see Introduction.†

---

\* See Vol. I., Preface, p. VII., note 1; and the supplementary annotation thereon, in p. 199, *ibid.* See, further, the note at the end of the present chapter.

† Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXIII. *et seq.*

which the Muni Bharata was the author), and the Artha Śāstra, (or science of government, as laid down first by Bṛihaspati).\*

There are three kinds of Ṛishis (or inspired sages): royal Ṛishis, (or princes who have adopted a life of devotion, as Viśwāmītra), divine Ṛishis, (or sages who are demigods also, as Nārada), and Brahman Ṛishis, (or sages who are the sons of Brahmá, or Brahmans, as Vasishṭha and others).<sup>1</sup>†

---

<sup>1</sup> A similar enumeration is given in the Váyu, with some additions. Ṛishi is derived from Ṛish, 'to go to', or 'approach.' The Brahmarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs who were the founders of races or Gotras of Brahmans; or, Kaśyapa, Vasishṭha, Bhṛigu, Angiras, and Atri. The Devarshis are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharma;‡ the Válikhilyas,§ who sprang from Kratu;|| Kardama, the son of Pulaha; Kubera, the son of Pulastya¶; Achala, the son of Pratyúsha; \*\* Parvata and Nārada, the sons of Kaśyapa. Rájars his are Ikshwáku and other

---

\* The definitions and other particulars enclosed within parentheses, in this and the following paragraph, are borrowed from the commentary.

† On these, and other descriptions of Ṛishis, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 109, note 11.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 111, note 1.

§ Such is the more ordinary spelling, in MSS. known to me. For the Válikhilyas, see the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, Chapters XXX., XXXI. I am not aware that these pigmies had anything to do with the portion of Veda called Válikhilya. See p. 49, note §, *supra*.

|| See Vol. I., p. 155.

¶ The original, as will be seen in the next page, has Paulastya; and this does not necessarily signify "son of Pulastya": but it does so, there. Kubera was Pulastya's grandson, and son of Viśravas, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IV., I., 36, 37. See Vol. I., p. 154, note 2.

\*\* See Vol. II., p. 23.



I have, thus, described to you the branches of the Vedas, and their subdivisions; the persons by whom they were made; and the reason why they were made (or, the limited capacities of mankind). The same branches are instituted in the different Manwantaras.\* The (primitive) Veda,† that of the progenitor of all things,‡ is eternal: these (branches) are but its modifications (or Vikalpas).§

---

princes. The Brahmashis dwell in the sphere of Brahmá; the Devarshis, in the region of the gods; and the Rájarshis, in the heaven of Indra. ||

---

\* सर्वमन्वकारेणैवं शाखाभेदाः समाः कृताः ।

† *Śruti*, in the Sanskrit.

‡ *Prájápatya*, 'derived from Prajapati'.

§ See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 11.

|| The passage of the *Váyu-puráṇa* is as follows:

ज्ञेया ब्रह्मर्षयः पूर्वं तेभ्यो देवर्षयः पुनः ।  
 रावर्षयः पुनस्तेभ्य ऋषिप्रकृतयस्त्रयः ॥  
 तेभ्य ऋषिप्रकृतयो मुनिभिः शंसितव्रतैः ।  
 कश्चपेषु वसिष्ठेषु तथा भृगुश्चिरोचिषु ॥  
 पक्षस्तेषु जायन्ते गोत्रेषु ब्रह्मवादिनः ।  
 यस्मादृषन्ति ब्रह्मायं तेन ब्रह्मर्षयः कृताः ॥  
 धर्मस्त्राय पुत्रस्त्वस्त्र क्रतोश्च पुत्रहस्त्र च ।  
 प्रब्रूषस्त्र प्रभासस्त्र कश्चपस्त्र तथा पुनः ॥  
 देवर्षयः सुतास्तेषां नामतस्त्रान्नियोधत ।  
 देवर्षी धर्मपुत्री तु नरनारायणापुत्री ॥  
 वाल्मिलिस्त्राः क्रतोः पुत्राः कर्दमः पुत्रहस्त्र तु ।  
 कुबेरश्चैव पीलस्त्रः प्रब्रूषस्त्राचलः कृतः ॥  
 पर्वतो नारदश्चैव कश्चपस्त्रात्मजापुत्री ।  
 ऋषन्ति देवान्ब्रह्मन्ति तस्माद्देवर्षयः कृताः ॥  
 मानवे वैनवे (??) वंशि ऐह्ये वंशि च ये नृपाः ।  
 ऐह्या ऐह्याका नाभागा ज्ञेया रावर्षयस्तु ते ॥

I have, thus, related to you, Maitreya, the circumstances, relating to the Vedas, which you desired to hear. Of what else do you wish to be informed?<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> No notice is taken, here, of a curious legend which is given in the Mahābhārata, in the Gadā Parvan.\* It is there said, that, during a great drought, the Brahmans, engrossed by the care of subsistence, neglected the study of the sacred books, and the Vedas were lost. The Rishi Sāraswata, alone, being fed with fish by his mother Saraswatī, the personified river so named, kept up his studies, and preserved the Hindu scriptures. At the end of the famine, the Brahmans repaired to him, to be taught; and sixty thousand disciples again acquired a knowledge of the Vedas from Sāraswata. This legend appears to indicate the revival, or, more probably, the introduction, of the Hindu ritual by the race of Brahmans, or the *people*, called Sāraswata: for, according to the Hindu geographers, it was the name of a nation, as it still is the appellation of a class of Brahmans who chiefly inhabit the Punjab. (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 219;† Vol. VIII., pp. 338, 341.) The Sāraswata Brahmans are met with in many parts of India, and are, usually, fair-complexioned, tall, and handsome men. They are classed, in the Jāti mālās, or popular lists of castes, amongst the five Gauda Brahmans, and are divi-

क्षयन्ति रज्जनायस्मात्प्रजा राजर्षयस्ततः ।  
 ब्रह्मलोकप्रतिष्ठासु सुता ब्रह्मर्षयोऽमलाः ॥  
 देवलोकप्रतिष्ठासु ज्ञेया देवर्षयः शुभाः ।  
 इन्द्रलोकप्रतिष्ठासु सर्वे राजर्षयो मताः ॥

The Translator omitted mention of the sons of Prabhāsa, here classed among the Devarshis, but not named. Prabhāsa was father of Viśwakarman. See Vol. II., p. 24.

Further, the Rájarshtis are said to be Aidas, Aikshwákas, and Nábhāgas,—kings sprung from Manu, Vena (??), and Ida.

\* Or *Gadāyuddha-parvan*. It concludes the *Śakya-parvan*, beginning with its thirty-third chapter.

† Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. II., p. 22.

ded into ten tribes. They are said, also, to be, especially, the Purohitas or family-priests of the Kshattriya or military castes‡;—(see the *Jāti málá*, printed in Price's *Hindee and Hindoostanee Selections*, Vol. I., p, 280)—circumstances in harmony with the purport of the legend, and confirmatory of the *Sáraswatas* of the Punjab having been prominent agents in the establishment of the Hindu religion in India. The holy land of the Hindus, or the primary seat, perhaps, of Brahmanism, has, for one of its boundaries, the *Saraswatí* river. See Vol. II., p. 142, note 4.

Note referred to at p. 67, *supra*.

Burnouf, in his edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XLIV.—LI., dwells at length on the definition of the term *Purāṇa*. After citing, from the *Sābdakalpadruma*, a passage of the *Brahmavai-varta-purāṇa*, where the topics of a *Purāṇa* are said to be ten, he translates an extract from the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—XII., VII., 8–19,—in which these topics are enumerated almost in the same manner. Subjoined is his translation, with the original prefixed.

पुराणस्य चर्णं ब्रह्मन्महद्विभिर्निर्गुणितम् ।  
 शृणुष्व बुद्धिमाश्रित्य वेदशास्त्रानुसारतः ॥  
 सर्गोऽस्त्राय विसर्गश्च वृत्ती रचान्तराणि च ।  
 वंशो वंशानुचरितं संज्ञा हेतुरपाश्रयः ॥  
 दशभिर्लक्षैर्युक्तं पुराणं तद्विदो विदुः ।  
 केचित्पञ्चविधं ब्रह्मन्महदल्पव्यवस्थया ॥  
 अष्टाकृतगुण्यसौभान्महतस्त्रिवृतोऽहम् ।  
 भूतसूक्ष्मेन्द्रियार्थानां संभवः सर्ग उच्यते ॥  
 पुरुषानुगृहीतानामेतेषां वासनामयः ।  
 विसर्गोऽयं समाहारी बीजाद्वीजं चराचरम् ॥  
 वृत्तिभूतानि भूतानां चराणामचराणि च ।  
 कृता स्वेन गुणां तच्च कामाच्चीदमयापि वा ॥  
 रचान्मुतावतरिहा विश्वस्यानुयुगे युगे ।  
 तिर्यक्ष्णैर्विदेवेषु हन्वन्ते येस्त्रयी द्विषः ॥  
 मन्वन्तारं मनुर्देवा मनुपुत्राः सुरेश्वराः ।  
 ऋषयोऽशावतारश्च हरैः षड्विधमुच्यते ॥  
 राज्ञां ब्रह्मप्रसूतानां वंशस्त्रीकालिकोऽन्वयः ।  
 वंशानुचरितं तेषां वृत्तं वंशधराश्रयः ॥

नैमित्तिकः प्राकृतिको नित्य आत्मनिको सत्यः ।

संख्येति कविभिः प्रोक्ता चतुर्धास्य स्वभावतः ॥

हेतुर्जीवोऽस्य सर्गादेरविद्याकर्मकारकः ।

यं चानुशयिनं प्राकृतत्वाकृतमुतापरे ॥

व्यतिरेकान्वयो यस्य वाच्यत्वमनुमुत्तिष्ठु ।

मायामयेषु तद्ब्रह्मजीववृत्तिष्वपाश्रयः ॥

“Écoute, ô Brâhmane (dit Sâta à Çâunaka), en y appliquant ton intelligence, la définition d'un Purâna, telle que l'ont donnée les Brahmarshis, d'accord avec les diverses écoles des Vêdas. La création de cet univers et la création distincte, l'existence, la conservation, les intervalles [de chaque Manu], la généalogie, l'histoire des familles postérieures, la destruction, la cause, la délivrance: voilà ce que les savants reconnaissent pour un Purâna, ouvrage qui a dix caractères particuliers. D'autres, distinguant les Purânas en grands et en petits, disent qu'un [petit] Purâna a cinq caractères. On entend par *Sarga*, création, l'origine du principe dit de l'Intelligence, qui vient du mouvement des qualités qui appartiennent à la Nature, celle du principe de la Personnalité qui est triple et qui sort de l'Intelligence, celle des molécules subtiles, celle des sens et des éléments grossiers. On entend par *Visarga*, création distincte, l'association de tous ces principes fécondés par Purucha association qui leur rappelle leur ancienne activité; il en résulte tout ce qui se meut comme ce qui ne se meut pas, de même qu'un germe sort d'un autre germe. Par *Vṛitti*, existence, on entend que les êtres servent à l'existence les uns des autres, ceux qui ne se meuvent pas, à celle de ceux qui se meuvent; mais les moyens qu'a l'homme de soutenir son existence sont, par une suite de sa nature propre, volontaires ou nécessaires. La *Rakchâ* ou conservation de l'univers, c'est l'action d'Atchyuta (Vichnû) qui descend, à chaque Yuga, dans des formes d'animaux, d'hommes, de Rîchis, de Dêvas, pour anéantir les ennemis du triple Vêda. Par *Manvantara*, intervalle de chaque Manu, on entend une époque où se trouvent les six espèces d'êtres suivantes: un Manu, des Dêvas, des fils de Manu, des chefs de Suras, des Rîchis, des incarnations partielles de Hari (Vichnû). Par *Vamsha*, généalogie, on entend la succession des rois, nés de Brahmâ, pendant les trois parties de la durée; et par *Vamshânutcharita*, histoire des familles postérieures, on entend la conduite de ceux qui ont perpétué les familles de ces rois. Les chantres inspirés nomment *Samssthâ*, destruction, la dissolution de cet univers qui est de quatre sortes, savoir; Nâimittika, Prâkritika, Nitya et Atyantika, et qui résulte de sa nature propre. Par *Hêtu*, cause de la création et des autres états de l'univers, on entend l'âme individualisée qui accomplit des actes sous l'influence de l'Avidyâ (l'Ignorance). Cette cause, quelques-uns l'appellent le principe [intelligent] qui s'endort [au temps de la destruction de l'univers

au sein de l'Être suprême]; d'autres, le principe [matériel] non développé. On entend par *Apâçraya*, délivrance, Brahma auquel il appartient d'être présent et absent tout à la fois, pendant que s'accomplissent les fonctions de la vie, de la veille, du sommeil et du sommeil profond, fonctions qui sont l'œuvre de Mâyâ."

This passage, and that from the *Brahmavaivarta-purāṇa*, before adverted to, are of interest, as evincing the comparatively recent date of those compositions; only five constitutive and characteristic topics of a Purāṇa being recognized by so late writers as the commentators on the *Amara-kośa*. See Vol. I., Preface, p. VII., where the commentators on Amarasimha are inadvertently identified, in respect of their views touching the subject-matters of a Purāṇa, with the vocabularist himself.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

By what means men are exempted from the authority of Yama, as narrated, by Bhishma, to Nakula. Dialogue between Yama and one of his attendants. Worshippers of Vishnu not subject to Yama. How they are to be known.

MAITREYA.—You have, indeed, related to me, most excellent Brahman, all that I asked of you. But I am desirous to hear one thing which you have not touched on. This universe, composed of seven zones, with its seven subterrestrial regions, and seven spheres,—this whole egg of Brahmá,—is everywhere swarming with living creatures, large or small, with smaller and smallest, and larger and largest; so that there is not the eighth part of an inch in which they do not abound. Now, all these are captives in the chains of acts, and, at the end of their existence, become slaves to the power of Yama, by whom they are sentenced to painful punishments. Released from these inflictions, they are again born in the condition of gods, men, or the like; and, thus, living beings, as the Śástras apprise us, perpetually revolve. Now, the question I have to ask, and which you are so well able to answer, is, by what acts men may free themselves from subjection to Yama.

PARÁŚARA. — This question, excellent Muni, was once asked, by Nakula,<sup>1</sup> of his grandfather Bhishma;

---

<sup>1</sup> Nakula is one of the Pándava princes, and, consequently, grand-nephew, not grandson, of Bhishma: he is great grandson of Parásara; and it is rather an anomaly for the latter to cite a conversation in which Nakula *formerly* bore a part.

and I will repeat to you the reply made by the latter.

Bhishma said to the prince: "There formerly came, on a visit to me, a friend of mine, a Brahman, from the Kalinga country, who told me that he had once proposed this question to a holy Muni who retained the recollection of his former births, and by whom what was and what will be was accurately told. Being importuned by me, who placed implicit faith in his words, to repeat what that pious personage had imparted to him, he, at last, communicated it to me; and what he related I have never met with elsewhere.

"Having, then, on one occasion, put to him the same question which you have asked, the Kalinga Brahman recalled the story that had been told him by the Muni, —the great mystery that had been revealed to him by the pious sage who remembered his former existence, —a dialogue that occurred between Yama and one of his ministers.

"Yama, beholding one of his servants with his noose in his hand, whispered to him, and said: 'Keep clear of the worshippers of Madhusúdana. I am the lord of all men, the Vaishnavas excepted. I was appointed, by Brahmá,\* who is revered by all the immortals, to restrain mankind, and regulate the consequences of good and evil in the universe. But he who obeys Hari, as his spiritual guide, is here independent of me; for Vishnú is of power to govern and control me. As gold is one sub-

---

\* Dhátrí, in the Sanskrit.

stance, still, however diversified as bracelets, tiaras,\* or ear-rings, so Hari is one and the same, although modified in the forms of gods, animals, and man. As the drops of water, raised, by wind, from the earth, sink into the earth again, when the wind subsides, so the varieties of gods, men, and animals, which have been detached by the agitation† of the qualities, are reunited, when that disturbance ceases, with the eternal. He who, through holy knowledge, diligently adores the lotos-foot of that Hari, who is revered by the gods, is released from all the bonds of sin; and you must avoid him, as you would avoid fire fed with oil.'

"Having heard these injunctions of Yama, the messenger addressed the lord of righteousness, and said: 'Tell me, master, how am I to distinguish the worshipper of Hari, who is the protector of all beings?' Yama replied: 'You are to consider the worshipper of Vishnú him who never deviates from the duties prescribed to his caste; who looks with equal indifference upon friend or enemy; who takes nothing (that is not his own), nor injures any being. Know that person of unblemished mind to be a worshipper of Vishnú. Know him to be a devout worshipper of Hari, who has placed Janárdana in his pure mind, which has been freed from fascination, and whose soul is undefiled by the soil of the Kali age. Know that excellent man to be a worshipper of Vishnú, who, looking upon gold in secret, holds that which is another's wealth

\* *Mukuta*.

† *Kalusha*, 'feculence'.



but as grass, and devotes all his thoughts to the lord. Pure is he as a mountain of clear crystal: for how can Vishnú abide in the hearts of men with malice, and envy, and other evil passions? The glowing heat of fire abides not in a cluster of the cooling rays of the moon. He who lives pure in thought, free from malice, contented, leading a holy life, feeling tenderness for all creatures, speaking wisely and kindly, humble and sincere, has Vásudeva ever present in his heart. As the young Śála-tree, by its beauty, declares the excellence of the juices which it has imbibed from the earth, so, when the eternal has taken up his abode in the bosom of any one, that man is lovely amidst the beings of this world. Depart, my servant, quickly from those men whose sins have been dispersed by moral and religious merit,<sup>1</sup> whose minds are daily dedicated to the imperceptible deity,\* and who are exempt from pride, uncharitableness, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Yama and Niyama. The duties intended by these terms are variously enumerated. The commentator on the text specifies, under the first head, absence of violence or cruelty to other beings (Ahimsá), truth (Satya), honesty (Asteya), chastity (Brahmacharya), and disinterestedness, or non-acceptance of gifts (Aparigraha). Under Niyama are comprehended purity (Śauca), contentment (Santosha), devotion† (Tapas), study of the Vedas (Swádhyáya), and adoration of the supreme (Íswara-praṇidhána).

---

\* "Imperceptible deity" here renders *achyuta*, on which term see Vol. I., p. 15, note 3.

† Rather, 'mortification'.

malice. In the heart in which the divine Hari, who is without beginning or end, abides, armed with a sword, a shell, and a mace, sin cannot remain; for it cannot coexist with that which destroys it: as darkness cannot continue in the world, when the sun is shining. The eternal makes not his abode in the heart of that man who covets another's wealth, who injures living creatures, who speaks harshness and untruth, who is proud of his iniquity, and whose mind is evil. Janár-dana occupies not his thoughts who envies another's prosperity, who calumniates the virtuous, who never sacrifices, nor bestows gifts upon the pious, who is blinded by the property of darkness. That vile wretch is no worshipper of Vishnú, who, through avarice, is unkind to his nearest friends and relations, to his wife, children, parents, and dependants. The brute-like man whose thoughts are evil, who is addicted to unrighteous acts, who ever seeks the society of the wicked, and suffers no day to pass without the perpetration of crime, is no worshipper of Vásudeva. Do you proceed afar off from those in whose hearts Ananta is enshrined; from him whose sanctified understanding conceives the supreme male and ruler, Vásudeva, as one with his votary and with all this world. Avoid those holy persons who are constantly invoking the lotos-eyed Vásudeva, Vishnú, the supporter of the earth, the immortal wielder of the discus and the shell, the asylum of the world. Come not into the sight of him in whose heart the imperishable\* soul resides; for he is defended from my power by the

---

\* *Ayaya*. See Vol. I., p. 17., note \*.

discus of his deity: he is designed for another world, (for the heaven of Vishnú).’

“‘Such,’ said the Kalinga Brahman, ‘were the instructions communicated by the deity of justice, the son of the Sun, to his servants, as they were repeated, to me, by that holy personage, and as I have related them to you, chief of the house of Kuru’ (Bhíshma). So, also, Nakula, I have faithfully communicated to you all I heard from my pious friend, when he came, from his country of Kalinga, to visit me. I have, thus, explained to you, as was fitting, that there is no protection, in the ocean of the world, except Vishnú; and that the servants and ministers of Yama, the king of the dead himself, and his tortures, are, all, unavailing against one who places his reliance on that divinity.”\*

I have, thus, resumed Parásara, related to you what you wished to hear, and what was said by the son of Vivaswat.<sup>1</sup> What else do you wish to hear?

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Vaivaswata. This section is called the Yama gítá.

---

\* Kéśava, in the original.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

How Vishnú is to be worshipped, as related, by Aurva, to Sagara.

Duties of the four castes, severally and in common: also in time of distress.

MAITREYA.—Inform me, venerable teacher, how the supreme deity, the lord of the universe, Vishnú, is worshipped by those who are desirous of overcoming the world; and what advantages are reaped, by men assiduous in his adoration, from the propitiated Govinda.

PARÁŚARA.—The question you have asked was formerly put, by Sagara, to Aurva.<sup>1</sup> I will repeat to you his reply.

<sup>1</sup> Sagara, as we shall see,\* was a king of the solar race. Aurva was a sage, the grandson of Bhṛigu.† When the sons

\* Book IV., Chapter III.

† "In the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, verse 2610, . . . we have the parentage of Aurva thus specified: 'Árushi, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of this sage [Chyavana, son of Bhṛigu]: the illustrious Aurva was born of her, having separated his mother's thigh.' In the *Harivamśa*, verse 1456, he seems to be identified with Ríchika, father of Jamadagni; Ríchika being *Aurva*, or the son of Úrva," &c. *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 172, 173.

Subjoined are the originals of the passages here referred to:

आरुषी तु मनीः कन्या तस्मै पत्नी मनीषिणः ।

और्वस्यैवमृचीकस्य सत्ववत्सां महायज्ञाः ॥

*Mahābhārata.*

और्वस्त्रैवमृचीकस्य सत्ववत्सां महायज्ञाः ।

जमदग्निस्त्वपोवीर्याज्जज्ञे ब्रह्मविदां वरः ॥

*Harivamśa.*

The name of the father of Jamadagni should, then, be read Úrva,—not Kuru, nor Úru, nor Kuśa, as at p. 16, note †, &c., *supra*.

Sagara, having bowed down before Aurva, the

of king Kṛitavīrya persecuted and slew the children of Bhṛigu, to recover the wealth which their father had lavished upon them, they destroyed even the children in the womb. One of the women of the race of Bhṛigu, in order to preserve her embryo, secreted it in her thigh (Ūru), whence the child, on his birth, was named Aurva. From his wrath proceeded a flame, that threatened to destroy the world; but, at the persuasion of his ancestors, he cast it into the ocean, where it abode, with the face of a horse. Aurva was, afterwards, religious preceptor to Sagara, and bestowed upon him the Āgneyāstra,\* or fiery weapon, with

---

\* The Translator—in Professor Johnson's *Selections from the Mahābhārata*, pp. 1, 2,—thus annotates on *sl.* 5107 of the *Ādi-parvan*: “Āgneyāstra, ‘the weapon of fire’,—a kind of fire-arms. Fiery arms or rockets were, possibly, employed by the Hindus in remote antiquity, as well as in recent times; whence came the notion of certain mysterious weapons framed of the elements, and to be wielded only by deities and demigods. These make a great figure in the battle-scenes of the Mahābhārata and Rāmāyaṇa, and, to readers who are not Hindus, spoil descriptions which would, else, be not without spirit. For a further account of these weapons, see Translation of the *Uttara Rāma Charitra*.”

The further account here spoken of is found in Professor Wilson's *Specimens of the Hindu Theatre*, Vol. I., p. 297, second edition. “These weapons are of a very unintelligible character. Some of them are, occasionally, wielded as missiles; but, in general, they appear to be mystical powers exercised by the individual,—such as those of paralysing an enemy, or locking his senses fast in sleep, or bringing down storm and rain and fire from heaven. In the usual strain of the Hindu mythology, they are supposed to assume celestial shapes, endowed with human faculties, and, in this capacity, are alluded to in the text. The list of them, one hundred, is given in the first book of the *Rāmāyaṇa*; and there, also, they are described as embodied, and address Rāma, saying: ‘Command us, O Rāghava, of mighty arm. Here we are, O chief of men: command us. What shall we do for thee?’ The son of Raghu replied: ‘Depart, all of you, and, in time of necessity, when called to mind, render me assistance. They then circumambulated Rāma, and, having said *so be it*, received permission to depart, and went whence they came.’ The Rāmāyaṇa calls them, also, the sons of Kṛiśāśwa, and the

descendant of Bhṛigu, asked him what were the best

which he conquered the tribes of barbarians who had in-

sons of Jayā and Vijayā, the daughters of Prajāpati. (*Rāmāyaṇa*, Book I., Sections 20, 26, and 42.)"

For the armiform progeny of Kṛiśāśwa, see the present work, Vol. II., p. 29, text and note 2.

Mention is made of a similar mysterious weapon, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, I., VII., 18—32. The text and Burnouf's translation here follow:

तमापतन्तं स विशोकं दूरा-  
 त्कुमारहोद्विपमना रथेन ।  
 पराद्रवत्प्राणपरीप्सुर्व्यां  
 चावन्नमं दद्रभयाच्चार्कः ॥  
 यदाशरणमात्मानमैषत आत्मवाजिनम् ।  
 अस्त्रं ब्रह्मशिरो मेन आत्मचार्यं द्विजात्मजः ॥  
 अधोपस्युस्तं सखिलं संदधे तत्समाहितः ।  
 अजानन्नपि संहारं प्राणकृच्छ्र उपस्थिते ॥  
 ततः प्रादुष्कृतं तेजः प्रचष्टुं सर्वतोदिशम् ।  
 प्राणापदमभिप्रेक्ष्य विष्णुं जिष्णुश्च वाच ह ॥  
 कृष्ण कृष्ण महाबाहो भक्तानामभयंकर ।  
 त्वमेको दह्यमानानामपवर्गोऽसि संसृतेः ॥  
 त्वमाद्यः पुरुषः साक्षादीश्वरः प्रकृतेः परः ।  
 मायां बुद्धयश्चिच्छ्रित्या कैवल्ये स्थित आत्मनि ॥  
 स एव जीवलोकस्तु मायामोहितचेतसः ।  
 विधत्ते स्वेन वीर्येण त्रयो धर्मादिष्वक्षयम् ॥  
 तथायं चावतारस्ते भुवो भारविहीर्यया ।  
 स्वानां चानन्यभावानामनुध्यानाय चासकृत् ॥  
 किमिदं स्तित्कृतो वेति देवदेव न वेदयद्दम ।  
 सर्वतोमुखमाधाति तेजः परमदायकम् ॥  
 श्रीभगवानुवाच ।  
 वेत्सेदं द्रोणपुत्रस्तु ब्राह्ममस्त्रं प्रदर्शितम् ।  
 शैवासी वेद संसारं प्राणवाध उपस्थिते ॥  
 न ह्यस्यान्यतमं किञ्चिदस्त्रं प्रत्यवकर्त्तनम् ।  
 जह्यस्त्रतेज उन्नद्धमस्त्रं चोऽस्त्रस्त्रतेजसा ॥  
 सूत उवाच ।  
 श्रुत्वा भगवता प्रोक्तं काव्युनः परवीरहा ।  
 स्युद्वापस्तं परिक्रम्य ब्राह्मं ब्राह्मण्य संदधे ॥

means of pleasing Vishnú, and what would be the

vaded his patrimonial possessions. Mahábhárata, Ádi Par-

संहत्वान्बोन्मभयोखेजसी शरसंवृते ।  
 आपुत्र रोदसी खं च ववृधातेऽकवह्नित् ॥  
 इहास्त्रतेजसु तयोस्त्रीक्षीकान्प्रदहन्महत ।  
 दह्यमानाः प्रजाः सर्वाः सांवर्तकममंसत ॥  
 प्रजोपस्रवमाजस्य खोकव्यतिकरं च तम् ।  
 मतं च वासुदेवस्य संवहारार्जुनो द्वयम् ॥

"Mais l'assassin des enfants de Dráupadî, qui avait mis pied à terre, troublé à la vue d'Ardjuna qui accourait de loin sur son char, s'enfuit pour sauver sa vie, de toute la rapidité de sa course, comme le soleil reculant de crainte devant Rudra (Çiva).

"Voyant que ses chevaux fatigués le laissaient sans ressource, le fils du Brâhmane songea, pour sauver sa vie, au javelot nommé Brahmaçiras (Tête de Brahmâ).

"Alors, dirigeant sa pensée sur cet objet, et s'étant plongé dans l'eau, il lança le javelot, quoiqu'il ignorât le moyen de le retenir, s'il venait à mettre en danger les êtres vivants.

"Il en sortit un feu indomptable qui enveloppait tout le ciel; alors prévoyant le danger qui menaçait les créatures, Ardjuna dit à Vichnú:

"Krichná! Krichná au bras puissant! toi qui donnes la sécurité à ceux qui te sont dévoués! tu es le seul qui puisses délivrer du monde les créatures qui y sont consumées.

"Oui, tu es le Seigneur suprême, Purucha, ce premier être, supérieur à la Nature, qui se dégageant de Mâyâ par l'énergie de sa pensée, subsiste absolu en lui-même.

"C'est toi-même qui, par ta puissance, établis sous la forme de la loi et des autres avantages ce qui donne le salut au monde des créatures, dont l'intelligence est troublée par Mâyâ.

"De même, cette incarnation [sous laquelle tu te manifestes à mes yeux], tu l'as revêtue pour te charger du fardeau de la terre, et pour offrir un perpétuel sujet de méditations à ceux qui te connaissent et dont la pensée n'a pas d'autre objet que toi.

"Dieu des Dévas! j'ignore quelle est cette merveille et quelle en est la cause; de tous côtés s'avance à ma rencontre un feu dont l'ardeur est intolérable.

"Bhagavat dit: Tu le connais; c'est le javelot de Brahmâ que le fils de Dróna veut t'opposer; mais lui-même ignore le moyen de le retenir, au moment où il va détruire les êtres.

"Certes, aucun autre javelot quel qu'il soit n'est capable de le domp-

consequence of obtaining his favour. Aurva replied: "He who pleases Vishnú obtains all terrestrial enjoyments; heaven, and a place in heaven; and what is best of all, final liberation:\* whatever he wishes, and to whatever extent, whether much or little, he receives it, when Achyuta is content with him. In what manner his favour is to be secured, that, also, I will, O king, impart to you, agreeably to your desire. The supreme Vishnú is propitiated by a man who observes

---

van,† Dána Dharma Parvan; Hari Vamśa.‡

---

ter; mais puisque tu en connais le secret, anéantis, avec un feu semblable, le feu de ce javelot déchainé.

"Sûta dit:

"À ces mots, Phâlguna (Ardjuna), redoutable aux guerriers ennemis, portant de l'eau à ses lèvres et tournant autour de Kfichña, opposa le javelot de Brahmâ au javelot de Brahmâ.

"Les feux de ces deux javelots, avec les flèches dont ils étaient entourés, s'étant confondus l'un dans l'autre, comme le soleil et le feu [au temps de la destruction des mondes], augmentèrent de violence, enveloppant la terre, le ciel et l'atmosphère.

"En voyant l'immense éclat de ces javelots des deux guerriers, qui portaient l'incendie dans les trois mondes, toutes les créatures, consumées par le feu, crurent que le jour de l'embrasement de l'univers était arrivé.

"Ardjuna remarquant la détresse des créatures, le danger des trois mondes et l'intention du fils de Vasudéva, retint les deux javelots."

In stanzas 10—16 of the chapter following that just quoted from, the *brahmaśiras* is again introduced, with other fire-tipped darts.

It has been thought worth while to give the preceding passage at length, since it shows, quite as clearly as any other that I have met with, the sort of fiery weapon known to the Hindus of old times.

An interesting and learned disquisition on ancient and oriental fire-arms will be found in Sir Henry M. Elliot's *Bibliographical Index to the Historians of Muhammedan India*, Vol. I., Note H,—pp. 340—375.

\* This expression here translates *nirvāṇa*.

† In *śl.* 6340, the *brahmāstra* is named.

‡ The *brahmaśiras* is spoken of in *śl.* 1344.



the institutions of caste, order, and purificatory practices: no other path is the way to please him. He who offers sacrifices sacrifices to him; he who murmurs prayer prays to him; he who injures living creatures injures him: for Hari is all beings. Janárdana, therefore, is propitiated by him who is attentive to established observances, and follows the duties prescribed for his caste. The Brahman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Śúdra, who attends to the rules enjoined his caste,\* best worships Vishnú. Keśava is most pleased with him who does good to others; who never utters abuse, calumny, or untruth;† who never covets another's wife or another's wealth, and who bears ill-will towards none; who neither beats nor slays any animate or inanimate thing; who is ever diligent in the service of the gods, of the Brahmans, and of his spiritual preceptor; who is always desirous of the welfare of all creatures, of his children, and of his own soul; in whose pure heart no pleasure is derived from the imperfections of love and hatred. The man, O monarch, who conforms to the duties enjoined, by scriptural authority, for every caste and condition of life is he who best worships Vishnú: there is no other mode."

Aurva having thus spoken, Sagara said to him: "Tell me, then, venerable Brahman, what are the duties of caste and condition:‡ I am desirous of know-

---

<sup>1</sup> Most of the Purāṇas—especially the Kúrma, Padma, Vámana, Agni, and Garúda,—contain chapters, or sections, more or

---

\* *Dharma*, in the original.

† परापवादपिशुन्यमनृतं च न भाषते ।

अन्योद्देशकरं चापि तोषते तेन केशवः ॥

ing them." To which Aurva answered and said: "Attentively listen to the duties which I shall describe, as those, severally, of the Brahman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya,\* and the Súdra. The Brahman should make gifts, should worship the gods with sacrifices, should be assiduous in studying the Vedas, should perform ablutions and libations with water, and should preserve the sacred flame. For the sake of subsistence, he may offer sacrifices on behalf of others, and may instruct them in the Śástras; and he may accept presents, of a liberal description, in a becoming manner (or, from respectable persons, and at an appropriate season). He must ever seek to promote the good of others, and do evil unto none; for the best riches of a Brahman are universal benevolence. He should look upon the jewels of another person as if they were pebbles, and should, at proper periods, procreate offspring by his wife. These are the duties of a Brahman.

"The man of the warrior-tribe should cheerfully

---

less in detail, upon the moral and ceremonial duties of the Hindus; and a considerable portion of the Mahábhárata, especially in the Moksha Dharma Parvan, is devoted to the same subject. No other Pauránik work, however, contains a series of chapters exactly analogous to those which follow, and which contain a compendious and systematic description of the Ácháras, or personal and social obligations of the Hindus. The tenour of the whole is conformable to the Institutes of Manu; and many passages are the same.

---

\* The Sanskrit has the shorter form, Viś.

give presents to Brahmins, perform various sacrifices, and study the scriptures. His especial sources of maintenance are arms and the protection of the earth. The guardianship of the earth is, indeed, his especial province. By the discharge of this duty a king attains his objects, and realizes a share of the merit of all sacrificial rites. By intimidating the bad, and cherishing the good, the monarch who maintains the discipline of the different castes secures whatever region he desires.

"Brahmá, the great parent of creation,\* gave to the Vaiśya the occupations of commerce and agriculture, and the feeding of flocks and herds,† for his means of livelihood: and sacred study, sacrifice, and donation are, also, his duties, as is the observance of fixed and occasional rites.

"Attendance upon the three regenerate castes is the province of the Śúdra; and by that he is to subsist, or by the profits of trade, or the earnings of mechanical labour. He is, also, to make gifts; and he may offer the sacrifices in which food is presented, as well as obsequial offerings.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Pákayajna,‡ or sacrifice in which food is offered, implies either the worship of the Viśwadevas, the rites of hospitality, or occasional oblations, on building a house, the birth of a child, or any occasion of rejoicing. It is to be understood, however, that this injunction intends his performing these ceremonies through the agency of a Brahman; as a Śúdra cannot repeat the

---

\* *Loka-pitāmaha.*

† *Pákupdyā.*

‡ *Vide infra*, p. 110, note §; and p. 112, note §.

“Besides these, their respective obligations, there are duties equally incumbent upon all the four castes.\* These are: the acquisition of property, for the support of their families; cohabitation with their wives, for the sake of progeny; tenderness towards all creatures, patience, humility, truth, purity, contentment, decency of deco-

---

Mantras, or prayers, that accompany them: and it might be a question how far he might be present; for he ought not even to hear such prayers repeated. The performance of funeral rites involves some personal share; and the Śúdra must present the cakes: but it must be done without Mantras; as the Mitákshará:† ‘This rite (the presentation of cakes) must be performed by the Śúdras, without formulæ, on the twelfth day:’ शुद्राणामप्येतत्कर्तव्यमन्यत्र द्वादशे हि । The Vāyu Purāṇa directs the performance of the five great sacrifices by Śúdras, only omitting the Mantras:

शुदेणापि प्रकर्तव्याः पश्यते मन्त्रवर्जिताः ।

It may be suspected, that the Purāṇas relaxed, in some degree, from the original rigour; for it may be inferred, that the great ceremonies were altogether withheld from Śúdras in the time of Manu, who declares, that none have any right or part (Adhikára) in his code, except those who perform rites with Mantras,—or the three regenerate castes (II., 16‡),—and denounces, as heinous sins, teaching the Vedas to Śúdras, performing sacrifices for them, or

---

\* आश्रमाणां च सर्वेषामेते सामान्यवचनाः ।

This comes, in the original, immediately after the stanza quoted in note \*, p. 90.

† On the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 255.

‡ निषेकादिस्मशानाक्तो मन्त्रैर्यस्योदितो विधिः ।

तस्य शास्त्रेऽधिकारोऽस्मिन्नेयो नान्यस्य कश्चित् ॥

“For him whose rites, from fecundation to the cemetery, are enjoined to be performed with mantras, a title to read this śāstra is to be recognized,—not for any one besides,”

ration, gentleness of speech, friendliness; and freedom from envy and repining, from avarice, and from de-

taking gifts from them: X., 109, 110, 111.\* Yājñavalkya,† however, allows them to perform five great rites with the Namas-kāra, or the simple salutation:

नमस्कारेण मन्त्रेण पञ्च यज्ञान्न हापयेत् ।

which Gotama confirms.‡ Some restrict the sense of Mantra, also, to the prayers of the Vedas, and allow the Śūdras to use those of the Purāṇas; as Śūlapāṇi: न वेदेष्वधिकारो शूद्रस्य विद्यते पुराणेष्वधिकारः । And the Tithi Tattwa is cited, in the Śūdra Kamalākara, § as allowing them any Mantras except those of the Vedas: वैदिकेतरमन्त्रपाठे शूद्रस्याधिकारः ।

\* प्रतिग्रहायाजनाद्वा तथैवाध्यापनादपि ।

प्रतिग्रहः प्रत्यवरः प्रेत्य विप्रस्य गर्हितः ॥

याजनाध्यापने नित्यं क्रियते संस्कृतात्मनाम् ।

प्रतिग्रहस्य क्रियते शूद्रस्याप्यन्यात्मनः ॥

अपहोमेरप्येतेनो याजनाध्यापनैः कृतम् ।

प्रतिग्रहनिमित्तं तु त्यागेन तपसेव च ॥

"Among these three acts, done against rule, namely, accepting gifts, assisting to sacrifice, and teaching the Veda, the accepting of gifts is especially base in this world, and, in the world to come, is, to a Brāhman, matter of condemnation:

"For that the acts of assisting to sacrifice and teaching the Veda always have reference to the initiated; whereas the act of accepting gifts has reference even to the Śūdra, most low of birth.

"The sin committed in *wrongfully* assisting to sacrifice or in *wrongfully* teaching the Veda is expiated by oblations in the form of silent prayer; but that consequent on *illegally* accepting gifts, by relinquishment of what is given and by mortification."

Medhātithi, at variance with Kullūka, but more concinnously, reads the second stanza as above. On the beginning of the third he says: अपेन होमेन च पापमपैति विनश्यति । In this interpretation of *japa-homa* I have not followed him.

† I., 121.

‡ अनुमतोऽस्य नमस्कारो मन्त्रः । Gotama is thus cited by Śūlapāṇi.

§ This is the popular title of the *Śūdra-dharma-tattwa*, by Kama-

traction. These, also, are the duties of every condition of life.\*

"In times of distress, the peculiar functions of the castes may be modified, as you shall hear.† A Brahman may follow the occupations of a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya; the Kshattriya‡ may adopt those of the Vaiśya; and the Vaiśya, those of the Kshattriya.§ But these two last should never descend to the functions of the Śūdra, if it be possible to avoid them¹; and, if

---

¹ This last clause reconciles what would, else, appear to be an incompatibility with Manu, who permits the Vaiśya, in time

---

lākara Bhaṭṭa. The passages which the Translator refers to Śūlapāṇi and to the *Tīthi-tatthva* occur there in these words, according to two manuscripts, with which agrees the Bombay edition of *Śaka* 1783, fol. 7 b: **अथ केचिद्विप्रो मन्त्रेण गृह्यते इत्यथ वैदिको मन्त्रो विप्रस्य । पौराण्यसु शूद्रेः पठनीयः ।**

**न वेदेष्वधिकारो हि कश्चिच्छूद्रस्य विद्यते ।**

**पुराणेष्वधिकारो मे दर्शितो ब्राह्मणैरिह ॥**

**इति शूद्रपाशौ पाप्मोक्तेः । श्रीदत्तोऽप्येवम् । तिथितत्त्वे स्मार्तसु वैदिकेतरमन्त्रपाठे शूद्रस्याप्यधिकारः ।**

Śūlapāṇi's own words, in his *Dīpakalikā*, a commentary on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, are: **नमस्कारेण मन्त्रेण न वैदिकेन पौराणिकेन ।** Kamalākara considers them as based on the enunciation of the *Padma-purāṇa* which he adduces. It is a broken fragment of the Paurāṇik stanza which the Translator gives as the words of Śūlapāṇi.

**\* मन्त्रस्युहा तथा तद्वदकार्ष्णं नरेन्द्रे ।**

**अनसूया च सामान्या वर्णानां कथिता गुणाः ॥**

**† गुणास्तथापद्धर्माश्च विप्रादीनामिमाञ्छुः ।**

‡ *Rājanya*, in the original.

§ My MSS. contain nothing corresponding to the words "and the Vaiśya, those of the Kshattriya." Witness the original:

**आचं कर्म द्विजस्योक्तं वैश्वकर्म तथापदि ।**

**राजन्वस्य च वैश्वोक्तं शूद्रकर्म न चैतयोः ॥**

that be not possible, they must, at least, shun the functions of the mixed castes. I will now, Rájá, relate to you the duties of the several Áśramas, or conditions of life."

---

of distress, to descend to the servile acts of a Śúdra. X., 98.\*

---

\* वैश्योऽजीवन्स्वधर्मेण शुद्रवृत्त्यापि वर्तयेत् ।  
अनाचरन्नकार्याणि निवर्तेत च शक्तिमान् ॥

"A Vaiśya who does not derive subsistence from his proper duties may occupy himself with the functions even of a Śúdra; he not engaging in what ought not to be done: and, *when* possessed of a competency, let him desist."

---

## CHAPTER IX.

Duties of the religious student, householder, hermit, and mendicant.

AURVA continued.—“When the youth has been invested with the thread (of his caste), let him diligently prosecute the study of the Vedas, in the house of his preceptor, with an attentive spirit, and leading a life of continence. He is to wait upon his Guru, assiduously observant of purificatory practices; and the Veda is to be acquired by him, whilst he is regular in the performance of religious rites. In the morning Sandhyá, he is first to salute the sun; in the evening, fire;\* and, then, to address his preceptor with respect. He must stand, when his master is standing; move, when he is walking; and sit beneath him, when he is seated: he must never sit, nor walk, nor stand, when his teacher does the reverse. When desired by him, let him read the Veda attentively, placed before his preceptor; and let him eat the food he has collected as alms, when permitted by his teacher.<sup>1</sup> Let him bathe in water which has first been used for his preceptor's ablutions; and, every morning, bring fuel, and water, and whatsoever else may be required.

“When the scriptural studies appropriate to the

---

<sup>1</sup> These directions are the same as those prescribed by Manu, though not precisely in the same words: II., 175, et seq.

---

\* उभे संध्ये रविं भूप तथैवाग्निं समाहितः ।

This seems to imply, that, alike morning and evening, he is to address the sun and fire. The commentary is here silent.



student have been completed, and he has received dismissal from his Guru, let the regenerate man enter into the order of the householder, and, taking unto himself, with lawful ceremonies, house, wife, and wealth, discharge, to the best of his ability, the duties of his station;<sup>1</sup> satisfying the manes with funeral cakes;\* the gods, with oblations; guests, with hospitality; the sages, with holy study; the progenitors of mankind,† with progeny; the spirits, with the residue of oblations;‡ and all the world, with words of truth.<sup>2</sup> A householder secures heaven by the faithful discharge of these obligations.§ There are those who subsist upon alms, and lead an erratic life of self-denial, at the end of the term during which they have kept house. They wander over the world, to see the earth,

---

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, III., 4, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The great obligations, or, as Sir William Jones terms them, sacraments,—the Maháyajnas, or great sacrifices,—are, according to Manu, but five: Brahmayajna, sacred study; Pitriyajna, libations to the manes; Devayajna, burnt-offerings to the gods; Baliyajna, offerings to all creatures; and Nriyajna, hospitality: III., 70, 71. || The Prajapatiyajna, or propagation of offspring, and Satyayajna, observance of truth, are, apparently, later additions.

---

\* *Nivāpa*.

† My MSS. have Prajapati, namely, Brahmā.

‡ *Bali-karman*, 'an offering of food'.

§ प्राप्नोति लोकान्पुत्रयो निजकर्मसमर्जितान् ।

|| अध्यापनं ब्रह्मयज्ञः पितृयज्ञस्तु तर्पणम् ।

होमो देवो बलिर्भोतो नृयज्ञोऽतिथिपूजनम् ॥

पश्चिन्ताया महायज्ञात् हापयति शक्तिः ।

स गृहेऽपि वसन्निवस्य सुनादोषिर्न क्षिप्यते ॥

See p. 40, note §, *supra*; and p. 112, note §, *infra*.

and perform their ablutions, with rites enjoined by the Vedas, at sacred shrines,—houseless, and without food, and resting, for the night, at the dwelling at which they arrive in the evening. The householder is, to them, a constant refuge and parent:\* it is his duty to give them a welcome, and to address them with kindness, and to provide them, whenever they come to his house, with a bed, a seat, and food. A guest disappointed by a householder, who turns away from his door, transfers to the latter all his own misdeeds, and bears away his religious merit.<sup>1</sup>† In the house of a good man, contumely, arrogance, hypocrisy, repining,‡ contradiction,§ and violence are annihilated: and the householder who fully performs this, his chief duty of hospitality, is released from every kind of bondage, and obtains the highest of stations, (after death).

“When the householder, after performing the acts incumbent on his condition, arrives at the decline of life, let him consign his wife to the care of his sons, and go, himself, to the forests.’ Let him there subsist

---

<sup>1</sup> This is, also, the doctrine of Manu: III., 100. ||

<sup>2</sup> Manu, VI., 3, &c.

---

\* To translate *yoni*.

† अतिथिर्यस्य भग्नो गृहात्प्रतिनिवर्तते ।

स तस्य दुष्कृतं दत्त्वा पुण्यमादाय गच्छति ॥

This stanza is quoted in the *Hitopadeśa*: Book I., śl. 64. See Professor Johnson’s second edition (1864), pp. 12, 13.

‡ *Paritāpa*.

§ *Upaghāta*.

॥ शिष्याण्युच्छतो नित्यं पञ्चासीनपि मुह्यतः ।

सर्वं सुकृतमादत्ते ब्राह्मणोऽनर्चितो नमन् ॥

upon leaves, roots, and fruit; and suffer his hair and beard to grow, and braid the former upon his brows; and sleep upon the ground.\* His dress\* must be made of skin, or of Kása or Kuśa grasses; and he must bathe thrice a day; and he must offer oblations to the gods and to fire, and treat all that come to him with hospitality. He must beg alms, and present food to all creatures; he must anoint himself with such unguents as the woods afford; and, in his devotional exercises,† he must be endurant of heat and cold. The sage who diligently follows these rules, and leads the life of the hermit (or Vánaprastha), consumes, like fire, all imperfections, and conquers, for himself, the mansions of eternity.

“The fourth order of men is called that of the mendicant; the circumstances‡ of which it is fit, O king, that you should hear from me. Let the unimpassioned§ man, relinquishing all affection for wife, children, and possessions, enter the fourth order.<sup>1</sup> Let him forego the three objects of human existence (pleasure, wealth, and virtue), whether secular or religious, and, indifferent to friends, be the friend of all living beings. Let him, occupied with devotion, abstain from wrong—in act, word, or thought,—to all creatures, human or brute; and equally avoid attachment

<sup>1</sup> Manu, VI., 33, &c.

\* The original specifies his lower garment and his upper, *paridhāna* and *uttariyaka*.

† This expression is to render *tapas*.

‡ *Svarūpa*.

§ *Nirbhūtamatsara*.

to any. Let him reside but for one night in a village, and not more than five nights, at a time, in a city; and let him so abide, that good-will, and not animosity, may be engendered.\* Let him, for the support of existence, apply, for alms, at the houses of the three first† castes, at the time when the fires have been extinguished, and people have eaten. Let the wandering mendicant‡ call nothing his own, and suppress desire, anger, covetousness, pride, and folly. The sage who gives no cause for alarm to living beings need never apprehend any danger from them. Having deposited the sacrificial fire in his own person, the Brahman feeds the vital flame, with the butter that is collected as alms, through the altar of his mouth; and, by means of his spiritual fire, he proceeds to his own proper abode. But the twice-born man<sup>1</sup> who seeks

---

<sup>1</sup> The text uses the term Dwijāti, which designates a man of the three first castes. The commentator cites various authorities, to prove that its sense should be Brahman only, who, alone, is permitted to enter the fourth order.—

मतिस्तुर्याश्रमे नास्ति वाङ्मोक्षययोः क्वचित् ।

तुर्याश्रमे मतिः प्रोक्ता मुखवानां स्वयंभुवः ॥

इति दत्तात्रेयोक्तेः । ब्राह्मणः प्रव्रजेद्ब्रह्मादिति यमसंवर्तबोधायनवचनाच्च । “Entrance into the fourth order is never for the Kshatriya and Vaiśya. Entrance into the fourth order is for Brahmans, according to Swayambhū:” so says Dattātreya. ‘Let the Brahman proceed from his dwelling’ is, also, the expression of Yama, Samvarta, and Baudhāyana.” But this is not the general understand-

---

\* तथा तिष्ठेद्यथा प्रीतिर्देवो वास्य न जायते ।

† Explanatory of the original, *prastāsa*.

‡ *Parivraj*.

for liberation, and is pure of heart, and whose mind is perfected by self-investigation, secures the sphere of Brahmá, which is tranquil, and is as a bright flame that emits not smoke.”\*

---

ing of the law; nor was it, originally, so restricted, apparently. Manu does not so limit it.

---

\* मोक्षायनं यत्सरते यद्योक्तं  
शुचिः स्वसंवल्लितबुद्धियुक्तः ।  
अग्निन्धनं ज्योतिरिव प्रज्ञानं  
स ब्रह्मलोकं जयति दिवातिः ॥

---

## CHAPTER X.

Ceremonies to be observed at the birth and naming of a child.

Of marrying, or leading a religious life. Choice of a wife.

Different modes of marrying.

SAGARA then (addressed Aurva, and) said: "You have described to me, venerable Brahman, the duties of the four orders and of the four castes. I am now desirous to hear from you the religious institutes which men should individually observe, whether they be invariable, occasional, or voluntary. Describe these to me; for all things are known, chief of Bhṛigu's race, unto you." To this Aurva replied: "I will communicate to you, O king, that which you have asked,—the invariable and occasional rites which men should perform. Do you attend.

"When a son is born, let his father perform, for him, the ceremonies proper on the birth of a child, and all other initiatory rites, as well as a Śrāddha, which is a source of prosperity.\* Let him feed a couple of Brahmans, seated with their faces to the east; and, according to his means, offer sacrifices to the gods and progenitors. Let him present to the manes<sup>1</sup> balls

---

<sup>1</sup> To the Nāndīmukhas. The Pitṛis, or progenitors,† are so termed, here, from words occurring in the prayer used on the occasion of a festive Śrāddha. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 270.‡

---

\* *Abhyudayātma*ka.

† The Nāndīmukhas are a special class of manes.

‡ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187.

of meat mixed with curds, barley, and jujubes, with the part of his hand sacred to the gods, or with that sacred to Prajapati.<sup>1</sup> Let a Brahman perform such a Śrāddha, with all its offerings and circumambulations, on every occasion of good fortune.<sup>2</sup>

“Next, upon the tenth day (after birth), let the father give a name to his child,—the first term of which shall be the appellation of a god; the second, of a man; as Śarman or Varman: the former being the appropriate designation of a Brahman; the latter, of a warrior; whilst Gupta and Dāsa are best fitted for the

<sup>1</sup> With the Daiva tīrtha, the tips of the fingers; or with the Prājāpatya tīrtha, the part of the hand at the root of the little finger. Manu, II., 58, 59.\* The second is called, by Manu, the Kāya tīrtha, from Ka, a synonym of Prajapati.

<sup>2</sup> The Śrāddha is, commonly, an obsequial or funeral sacrifice; but it implies offerings to the progenitors of an individual and of mankind, and always forms part of a religious ceremony, on an occasion of rejoicing, or an accession of prosperity; this being termed the Abhyudaya or Vṛiddhi Śrāddha. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 270.†

\* ब्राह्मेण विप्रस्तीर्षेण नित्यकालमुपसृशेत् ।  
 कायवेदशिकाभ्यां वा न पित्र्येण कदाचन ॥  
 अकुष्ठमूलस्य तस्मै ब्राह्मं तीर्थं प्रचक्षते ।  
 कायमकुष्ठिमूलेऽथे देवं पित्र्यं तथोरधः ॥

And we read, in the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 18, 19:

अन्तर्जानुः शुचीं देशं उपविष्ट उदसुखः ।  
 प्रात्वा ब्राह्मेण तीर्थेण द्विजो नित्यमुपसृशेत् ॥  
 कनिष्ठादेशिन्यकुष्ठमूलान्वयं करस्य च ।  
 प्रजापतिधितुम्रह्मदेवतीर्थान्वमुक्त्वात् ॥

† Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187.

names of Vaiśyas and Śūdras.<sup>1</sup> A name should not be void of meaning; it should not be indecent, nor absurd, nor ill-omened, nor fearful; it should consist of an even number of syllables; it should not be too long, nor too short, nor too full of long vowels, but contain a due proportion of short vowels, and be easily articulated.\* After this and the succeeding initiatory rites,<sup>2</sup> the purified youth is to acquire religious knowledge, in the mode that has been described, in the dwelling of his spiritual guide.

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, II., 30, 31, 32. † The examples given, in the comment, are Somaśarman, Indravarman, Chandragupta, and Śivadāsa,—respectively, appropriate appellations of men of the four castes.

<sup>2</sup> Or Saṁskāras; initiatory ceremonies, purificatory of the individual at various stages.

\* नार्घहीनं न चाशस्त्रं नापशब्दयुतं तथा ।  
 नामङ्गलं कुमुदं वा नाम कुर्यात्समाश्रमम् ॥  
 नातिदीर्घं न ह्रस्वं वा नातिगुर्वचरान्वितम् ।  
 सुखोच्चार्यं तु तन्नाम कुर्याद्यत्प्रवणाश्रमम् ॥  
 † नामधेयं दशम्यां तु द्वादश्यां वाच्यं कारयेत् ।  
 पुंस्त्र्योतिथौ मुहूर्ते वा नचत्रे वा गुणान्विते ॥  
 मङ्गलं ब्राह्मणस्य स्थातृचत्त्रियस्य बलान्वितम् ।  
 वैश्यस्य धनसंयुतं शूद्रस्य तु कुमुदितम् ॥  
 शर्मवद्ब्राह्मणस्य स्वाद्राज्ञो रचासमन्वितम् ।  
 वैश्यस्य पुष्टिसंयुतं शूद्रस्य प्रियसंयुतम् ॥

Kullūka gives, as typical designations of persons of the four castes, Subhāsarman, Balavarman, Vasubhūti, and Dinadāsa. The endings *śarman* and *deva* for names of Brāhmins, *varman* and *trāṭhi* for those of Kshattriyas, *bhūti* and *datta* for those of Vaiśyas, and *dāsa* for those of Śūdras, are expressly sanctioned by the stanza which he cites from the lawgiver Yama:

शर्मा देवस्य विप्रस्य वर्मा चाता च भूमजः ।  
 भूतिर्दत्तस्य वैश्यस्य दासः शूद्रस्य कारयेत् ॥



“When he has finished his studies, and given the parting donation to his preceptor, the man who wishes to lead the life of a householder must take a wife. If he does not propose to enter into the married state, he may remain, as a student, with his teacher,—first making a vow to that effect,—and employ himself in the service of his preceptor and of that preceptor’s descendants; or he may, at once, become a hermit,\* or adopt the order of the religious mendicant, according to his original determination.<sup>1</sup>

“If he marry, he must select a maiden who is of a third of his age;<sup>2</sup> one who has not too much hair, but

<sup>1</sup> Or the vow or pledge he has taken, that he will follow, for life, the observances of the student, or ascetic; both of which are enumerated, in the *Nirñaya Sindhu*, as acts prohibited in the *Kali* age. A man is not to continue a student or *Brahmachārin*, i. e., a cænobite, for life; nor is he to become a mendicant, without previously passing through the order of householder. In practice, however, the prohibition is, not unfrequently, disregarded.

<sup>2</sup> By this is to be understood, according to the commentator, merely a young girl, but, at the same time, one not immature; for, otherwise, he observes, a man of thirty—by which age he completes his sacred studies,—would espouse a girl of but ten years of age.† According to *Manu*,‡ however, the period of religious study does not terminate until thirty-six; and, in the East, a girl of twelve would be marriageable. The text of *Yājñaval-*

\* *Vaikhānasa*. This term is synonymous with *vānaprastha*. *Vide* p. 95, *supra*.

† On the contrary, the commentator disallows, absolutely, even where the bridegroom is eight and forty, the marriage of a girl above ten years of age; on the ground that, after that period, she has her catamenia, &c. &c.

‡ III., 1.

is not without any; one who is not very black, or  
 kya\* has merely the word Yavíyasí, 'a very young woman.' It

\* I., 52:

अविमुतप्रसूययो लक्ष्म्यां स्त्रियमुदहेत् ।  
 अनन्यपूर्विकां कान्तामसपिच्छां यवीयसीम् ॥

Vijnāneśwara, Aparāditya, and Śūlapāñi, commentators on Yājñavalkya, leave his term *yavíyasí* unexplained.

The following dicta on the time when a female should marry are cited, by Jīmūtavāhana, in the *Dāyabhāga*; pp. 272, 273, Calcutta edition of 1829. The first extract is from the *Vasishtha-smṛiti*, Chapter XVII.:

यावत्तु कन्यामृतवः स्युश्नन्ति  
 तुल्यैः सकामामपि याचमानाम् ।  
 तावन्ति भूतानि हतानि ताभ्यां  
 मातापितृभ्यामिति धर्मवादः ॥

"So many seasons of menstruation as overtake a maiden feeling the passion of love and sought in marriage by persons of suitable rank, even so many are the beings destroyed by both her father and her mother: this is a maxim of the law."

Paithinasi is alleged as declaring: यावत्सोऽन्निवेते स्तनी तावदेव देया । अथ चतुर्मासी भवति तदा दाता प्रतियहीता च नरकमाप्नोति पितृपितामहप्रपितामहाश्च विष्ठायां जायन्ते । तस्मान्नयिका दातव्या ।

"A damsel should be given in marriage, before her breasts swell. But, if she have menstruated [before marriage], both the giver and the taker fall to the abyss of hell; and her father, grandfather, and great-grandfather are born [insects] in ordure. Therefore she should be given in marriage while she is yet a girl."

The preceding translations are taken from the *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, by Colebrooke, p. 186. His earlier renderings of the passages will be found in his *Digest of Hindu Law*, &c., London edition, Vol. II., p. 387.

In the *Panchatantra*,—III., *śl.* 213; p. 189, ed. Kosegarten,—we find the ensuing stanza:

असंभ्रातृरवा गौरी प्राप्ते रजसि रोहिणी ।  
 अश्वजना भवेत्कन्या कुचहीना च नयिका ॥

*Nagnikā* is here vaguely said to signify a girl without breasts. This word, which Colebrooke renders by "yet a girl", is understood, by Vallabhagañi, to intend a maiden of eight years. If he be right, it is a synonym of *gauri*. No ordinary lexicographical authority seems to make the *nagnikā* more than ten: see Colebrooke's *Amarakośa*, *sub voce*. But,

yellow-complexioned, and who is not, from birth, a

is worthy of remark, here, that neither that text, nor the text of Manu, nor the interpretation of our text, authorizes the pre-

to judge from my next extract, the term appears to be, in some instances, as comprehensive as *kanyā*, 'virgin.'

In the *Nirīyāsindhu* of Kamalākara,—Bombay edition of 1857, III. A, fol. 31 v and 32 r,—occurs the following extract, credited to the *Mahābhārata*:

विंशद्वर्षः षोडशवर्षा भार्या विन्देत् नषिकाम् ।  
दशवर्षोऽष्टवर्षा वा धर्मे सीदति सत्वरः ।  
अतो प्रवृत्ते रक्सि कन्या दद्यात्पिता सकृत् ॥

Whence came these lines? The first two look like a mixing up, from misrecollection, of the stanza cited in p. 104, note †, *infra*, with the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, XLIV., 14, (Bombay edition), which runs thus:

विंशद्वर्षो दशवर्षा भार्या विन्देत् नषिकाम् ।  
एकविंशतिवर्षो वा सप्तवर्षामवाप्नुयात् ॥

"Let a man of thirty years marry, for wife, a damsel of ten years; or let a man of twenty-one years secure a damsel of seven years."

The next quotation, also, is referred to the *Mahābhārata*:

सप्तसंवत्सराद्धर्मे विवाहः सार्ववर्षिकः ।  
कन्यायाः शस्ते राजसन्वया धर्मेगर्हितः ॥

"The marriage, for all the castes, of a girl after *her* seventh year is commended, O king. *Her* marriage otherwise is reprobated by the law."

Of the ~~first~~ of the last three passages the first line is quoted,—immetrically, incorrectly, and, probably, from memory,—and without mention of its source, in Jagannātha Tarkapānchānana's *Vivādhābhāṅgārāva*. See Colebrooke's *Digest of Hindu Law*, &c., London edition, Vol. III., p. 328.

Mādhava says, in his commentary on the *Parāśara-smṛiti*:

अथतो गर्भाधानाद्वा पञ्चमाब्दात्परं शुभम् ।  
कुमारीवरणं दानं मेखलावन्धनं तथा ॥

This approves the selection of a girl, for matrimony, at an interval of five years from the time she was born or conceived.

An extract from the *Jyotiṛ-nibandha* may be added, for its superstitious oddity:

षडब्दमध्ये नोदाह्या कन्या वर्षद्वयं यतः ।  
सोमो भुङ्क्ते ततस्तद्वन्धर्वस्य तथागताः ॥

"A maiden should not be married within *her* sixth year: because Soma

cripple or deformed.\* He must not marry a girl who is vicious, or unhealthy, of low origin, or labouring

sent practice of the nuptials of children.† The obligation imposed upon a man, of a life of perfect continence, until he is more than thirty, is singularly Malthusian.

[the Moon?] enjoys *her* for two years; then, in like manner, a *gandharva* and, similarly, Fire."

She has, thus, three unhuman husbands, before she is wived by a man. In the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 71, we read:

सोमः शीघ्रं ददौ स्त्रीणां गन्धर्वस्य शुभां गिरम् ।

पावकः सर्वमेध्यत्वं मेध्या वै योषितो ह्यतः ॥

"On women Soma bestowed brilliancy; a *gandharva*, a pleasant voice; Fire, universal purity. Therefore are women truly pure."

The author of the *Mitāksharā*, in commenting on this stanza, expresses himself much to the effect of the *Jyotir-nibandha*. His words are: परिणयनात्पूर्वं सोमगन्धर्ववद्भ्यः स्त्रियो भुक्ता यथाक्रमं तासां शीघ्रमधुरवचनसर्वमेध्यत्वानि दत्तवन्तः ।

For similar ideas, see the *Panchatantra*, ed. Kosegarten, pp. 188, 189. An anonymous stanza is there given, authorizing the nuptials of a damsel of eight years of age.

\* The original has *adhikāṅgi*, "possessing superfluous limbs."

† Professor Wilson must have overlooked "Manu", IX., 94:

त्रिंशद्वर्षो वहेत्कन्यां दद्यात् द्वादशवार्षिकीम् ।

अष्टवर्षोऽष्टवर्षा वा धर्मे सीदति सत्वरः ॥

"Let a man of thirty years wed a lovely maid of twelve; or a man of twenty-four, a maid of eight. If his virtue is being impaired, let him be expeditious."

The meaning seems to be, according to Kullūka, that, in case a young man is disposed to usurp on the rights of the married state, he should lose no time in taking a wife; provided, always, that his proficiency in scriptural knowledge is satisfactory.

In the *Nirṇayasindhu's* citation of the preceding stanza, द्वादशवर्षः, 'of sixteen years', is read for अष्टवर्षः, 'of twenty-four years.' But Medhātithi and Kullūka know nothing of this lection.

It has just been evinced, that, as to the marriage of an immature girl, venerable warrant is adducible for it, beyond the pages of the *Vishnū-purāṇa*. The point, whether this work does not constructively furnish justification of such a practice, is discussed in a note near the end of Chapter XVI. of the present Book.

under disease;\* one who has been ill brought up; one who talks improperly; one who inherits some malady from father or mother; one who has a beard, or who is of a masculine appearance; one who speaks thick, or thin, or croaks like a raven; one who keeps her eyes shut, or has the eyes very prominent; one who has hairy legs, or thick ankles; or one who has dimples in her cheeks, when she laughs.<sup>1</sup> Let not a wise and prudent man marry a girl of such a description: nor let a considerate man wed a girl of a harsh skin; or one with white nails; or one with red eyes, or with very fat hands and feet; or one who is a dwarf, or who is very tall; or one whose eyebrows meet, or whose teeth are far apart and resemble tusks. Let a householder marry a maiden† who is, in kin, at least five degrees remote from his mother, and seven from his father, with the ceremonies enjoined by law.<sup>2</sup>

“The forms of marriage are eight,—the Bráhma, Daiva, Ársha, Prájápatya, Ásura, Gándharva, Rákshasa, and Paisácha; which last is the worst:<sup>3</sup> but

<sup>1</sup> For the credit of Hindu taste, it is to be noticed, that the commentator observes, the hemistich in which this last clause occurs is not found in all copies of the text.

<sup>2</sup> See Manu, III., 5, &c.

<sup>3</sup> These different modes of marriage are described by Manu, III., 27, &c.

\* If only as doing away with something like tautology, the reading *atiroshinim*, ‘very irascible,’ is to be preferred to *atiroginim*. Just before we have *arogám*, rendered “unhealthy”.

† The term used hereabouts is *kanyá*.

the caste to which either form has been enjoined, as lawful, by inspired sages, should avoid any other mode of taking a wife. The householder who espouses a female connected with him by similarity of religious and civil obligations, and along with her discharges the duties of his condition, derives, from such a wife, great benefits."

---

## CHAPTER XI.

Of the Sadácháras or perpetual obligations of a householder. Daily purifications, ablutions, libations, and oblations: hospitality: obsequial rites: ceremonies to be observed at meals, at morning and evening worship, and on going to rest.

SAGARA (again) said (to Aurva): "Relate to me, Muni, the fixed observances\* of the householder, by attending to which he will never be rejected from this world or the next."

Aurva replied to him thus: "Listen, prince, to an account of those perpetual observances by adhering to which both worlds are subdued. Those who are called Sádhus (saints) are they who are free from (all) defects; and the term Sat means the same, or Sádhu. Those practices or observances (Ácháras†) which they follow are, therefore, called Sadácháras, 'the institutions or observances of the pious.'<sup>1</sup> The seven Rishis,

---

<sup>1</sup> Sir William Jones renders Áchára (आचार), 'the immemorial customs of good men' ‡ (Manu, II., 6); following the explanation of Kullúka Bhaṭṭa, which is much the same as that of our text: आचारः कर्मसवत्कलाआचरवरूपः। साधूनां धार्मिकानाम्। 'Áchára means the use of blankets, or bark, &c., (for dress). Sádhus are pious (or just) men.' Ácháras are, in fact, all ceremonial and

---

\* *Sadáchára.*

† My MSS. have *ácharaṇa*.

‡ It is आचारः • • साधूनां that Sir William Jones thus renders. Colebrooke expresses *áchára* by "law", "conduct", "received usage", "established usage", "immemorial good customs", &c. &c. Medhātithi explains it by *vyavahára*, 'practice'.

the Manus, the patriarchs, are they who have enjoined and who have practised these observances. Let the wise man awake in the Muhūrta of Brahmā (or, in the third Muhūrta,—about two hours before sunrise\*), and, with a composed mind, meditate on two of the objects of life (virtue and wealth), and on topics not incompatible with them. Let him, also, think upon desire, as not conflicting with the other two, and, thus, contemplate, with equal indifference, the three ends of life, for the purpose of counteracting the unseen consequences of good or evil acts. Let him avoid wealth and desire, if they give uneasiness to virtue; and abstain from virtuous or religious acts, if they involve misery, or are censured by the world.<sup>1</sup>† Having risen,

purificatory observances, or practices, not expiatory, which are enjoined either by the Vedas or the codes of law.

<sup>1</sup> That is, he may omit prescribed rites, if they are attended with difficulty or danger: he may forego ablutions, if they dis-

---

\* Part of this is the commentator's explanation: ब्राह्मे मुहूर्ते । सूर्यो-  
दयात्पूर्वं तृतीये मुहूर्ते । Pitāmaha is cited, in the *Śabdakalpadruma*,  
as ruling:

रात्रे च पश्चिमे यामे मुहूर्तो ब्राह्म उच्यते ।

† परित्यजेदर्थकामौ धर्मपीडाकरो नृप ।

धर्ममप्यसुखोदकौ लोकविकृष्टमेव च ॥

We read, to the same effect, and almost in the same words, in the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 176:

परित्यजेदर्थकामौ यौ स्यातां धर्मवर्जितौ ।

धर्मं चाप्यसुखोदकौ लोकविकृष्टमेव च ॥

This stanza Sir William Jones thus translates: "Wealth and pleasures, repugnant to law, let him shun, and even lawful acts which may cause future pain or be offensive to mankind."

Kullūka instances, as illustrative of the "lawful acts," etc., the giving away, in charity, of his entire possessions by a man on whom a large



he must offer adoration to the sun,\* and then, in the south-west† quarter, at the distance of a bow-shot or more, or any where remote from the village,‡ void the impurities of nature. The water that remains after washing his feet he must not§ throw away into the court-yard of the house. A wise man will never void

agree with his health; and he may omit pilgrimage to holy shrines, if the way to them is infested by robbers.¶ Again, it is enjoined, in certain ceremonies, to eat meat, or drink wine:¶ but these practices are generally reprehended by pious persons; and a man may, therefore, disregard the injunction.

family depends for subsistence, and the immolation of a cow on the *madhyamāshtakā* and other holydays. The *madhyamāshtakā*—sometimes called *mānsāshtakā*—falls, according to one authority, on the eighth day after the full moon in Māgha.

One occasion on which it seems that a cow was formerly slain, and that for purposes of hospitality, was a marriage. See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 203, 208.

\* "Rising at break of day, let him go to stool", says the Sanskrit:

ततः कञ्चं समुत्थाय कुप्यन्निचं नरेन्द्र ।

The Translator mistook, for *mitra*, 'the sun', *maitra*, n., 'alvine ex-  
operation', which is said to come from *maitra*, m., 'the anus', of which the Sun is the guardian deity. Ratnagarbha etymologizes *maitra*. Also see the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 152, and Kullūka's gloss thereon.

† I have corrected "south-east"; the original being *nairṛityām*. This is a compromise between the directions to be observed by day and by night, or north and south, respectively. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 50, and our text, just below.

‡ Thus, or by *grāma*, the commentator explains *bhū*, the word here used. The Sanskrit adds *दूरादावसथात्*, which means, according to the commentary, "or, if that be impracticable, at least away from the house."

§ I have inserted this word, translating *na*. Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 151.

¶ Or by tigers. The commentary has: व्याघ्रचोरादिसमाक्रान्ततीर्थ-  
ममनादि ।

¶ Drinking spirits at the *sautrāmanī*, &c., says the commentator.

urine on his own shadow, nor on the shadow of a tree, nor on a cow, nor against the sun, nor on fire, nor against the wind,\* nor on his Guru, nor on men of the three first castes;† nor will he pass either excrement in a ploughed field, or pasturage, or in the company of men, or on a high road, or in rivers and the like which are holy,‡ or on the bank of a stream, or in a place where bodies are burnt, or anywhere quickly.§ By day, let him void them with his face to the north, and, by night, with his face to the south, when he is not in trouble. Let him perform these actions in silence, and without delay; covering his head with a cloth, and the ground with grass. Let him not take, for the purposes of cleanliness, earth from an ant-hill, or a rat-hole,|| or from water, or from the residue of what has been so used, nor soil that has been employed to plaster a cottage, nor such as has been thrown up by insects,¶ or turned over by the plough. All such kinds of earth let him avoid as means of purification. One handful is sufficient, after voiding urine; three, after passing ordure: then, ten handfuls are to be rubbed over the left hand, and seven over both hands.\*\* Let him, then, rinse his mouth with water

\* See p. 140, *infra*, text and note \*\*.

† *Dvijaḍī*.

‡ "Places of pilgrimage", *tirtha*. Insert "or in water", *nāpsu*.

§ My MSS. give nothing corresponding to "or anywhere quickly." Probably the Translator read *nāṭu* for *nāpsu*. See the last note.

|| Literally, "dug up by a rat", *mīṣhakotkhḍa*.

¶ *अन्तःप्राचीनवपसः*. *Antāḥprācīn* signifies *kīṭa*, "a worm", alleges the commentator. But he mentions a variant yielding *anūprācīn*, "a minute animal."

\*\* एका लिङ्गे मुदे तिस्रो दश वामकरे तथा ।

इत्यद्वये च सप्तान्वा मुदः शीघ्रोपपादिकाः ॥

Compare, herabouts, the *Vasishṭha-smṛiti*, Chapter VI.

that is pure, neither fetid, nor frothy, nor full of bubbles, and again use earth to cleanse his feet, washing them well with water. He is to drink water, then, three times, and twice wash his face with it; and, next, touch, with it, his head, the cavities of the eyes, ears, and nostrils,\* the forehead,† the navel, and the‡ heart.<sup>1</sup>§

<sup>1</sup> Many of these directions are given by Manu, IV.,

\* Instead of "his head, the cavities of the eyes, ears and nostrils," read "the orifices of the head." The original,—see note §, below,—*śirṣhaṅyāni khāni*, is thus glossed by the commentator: शीर्षस्थानि ।

शिरःस्थानि । खानि । इन्द्रियच्छिद्राणि ।

† Read "head" *mūrdhan*; and insert "arms", *bāhū*.

‡ I should render *hrīdaya* by "breast".

§ चिः पिबेत्सखिषं तेन तथा द्विः परिमार्जयेत् ।

शीर्षस्थानि ततः खानि मूर्धानं च समासमेत् ।

बाहू नाभिं च तोयेन हृदयं चापि संस्पृशेत् ॥

Of all the ancient Hindu legislators, Dakṣa is most minutiose on the subject of daily ablution. His injunctions, as incorrectly cited by Ratnagarbha, I have rectified by reference to two manuscripts and the Calcutta edition of the *Dakṣa-smṛiti*; and I have compared them as quoted in various ceremonial treatises, more particularly in an ancient copy of Āśāditya's *Karmapradīpabhāṣya*. The passage, as I would read it, is as follows:

प्रचाक्ष हस्तौ पादौ च चिः पिबेदसु वीक्षितम् ।

संवृत्वाङ्गुष्ठमूलेन द्विः प्रमुञ्चान्ततो मुखम् ॥

संहृत्वा तिसृभिः पूर्वमास्त्रमेवमुपस्पृशेत् ।

ततः पादौ समस्तौ च अङ्गानि समुपस्पृशेत् ॥

अङ्गुष्ठेन प्रदेशित्वा घ्रायं पञ्चादनन्तरम् ।

अङ्गुष्ठानामिकाभ्यां च चतुःश्रोत्रं पुनः पुनः ॥

कनिष्ठाङ्गुष्ठयोर्नाभिं हृदयं तु तलेन वै ।

सर्वाभिसु शिरः पञ्चाङ्गाह चोयेण संस्पृशेत् ॥

"After bathing his hands and feet, let him thrice sip water in sight, i. e., any at hand. Then let him compress his mouth, and rub it twice with the root of his thumb. Let him, likewise, touch his face with three fingers joined, and, next, wet his feet again, and touch his limbs. Im-

Having, finally, washed his mouth, a man is to clean and dress his hair, and to decorate his person, before a glass, with unguents, garlands, and perfumes.\* He is, then, according to the custom† of his caste, to acquire wealth, for the sake of subsistence, and, with a lively faith, worship the gods.‡ Sacrifices with the acid juice, those with clarified butter, and those with offerings of food,§ are comprehended in wealth: wherefore, let men exert themselves to acquire wealth for these purposes.<sup>1</sup>

45, &c.||

<sup>1</sup> That is, wealth is essential to the performance of religious rites; and it is, also, the consequence of performing them. A

mediately afterwards, *let him touch* his nose with his thumb and fore-finger; and his eyes and ears, again and again, with his thumb and ring-finger; and his navel and breast, with the root of his little finger and thumb. Let him, afterwards, touch the crown of his head with all *his fingers*, and, finally, his arms."

The genuineness of the fourth line is open to suspicion. It is wanting in several places where these stanzas are adduced.

\* आचान्त्य ततः कुर्यात्पुमान्मन्त्रप्रसाधनम् ।

आदर्शजनमङ्गलदूर्वावासधनानि च ॥

Professor Wilson must have thought that he saw -माङ्गल\*, instead of -मङ्गल\*, in the original. For "garlands, and perfumes," read "sandal, *dūrvā*, &c." *Dūrvā* ordinarily means a certain sweet-scented grass. The oil expressed from it seems to be here denoted.

† *Dharma*, "duty".

‡ The original is simply *japet*, "let him pray inaudibly."

§ These sacrifices are called, in the original, *somasamsthā*, *haviṣsamsthā*, and *pākāsamsthā*. On the meaning of *pāka*, — 'little', or 'good' — in *pākāsamsthā*, see Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 203; or Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśwalāyana's *Gṛhyasūtra*, Part II., p. 2, § 2, 2.

|| On the topic of ablution, see, particularly, *ibid.*, II., 60, 61; also, the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 20, etc.

"As preparatory to all established rites of devotion, the householder should bathe in the water of a river, a pond, a natural channel,\* or a mountain torrent; or he may bathe upon dry ground, with water drawn from

householder should, therefore, diligently celebrate them, that he may acquire property, and, thus, be enabled to continue to sacrifice. According to Gautama,† there are seven kinds of each of the three sorts of sacrificial rites particularized in the text,—or those in which the Soma juice, oiled butter, or food, are presented. Of the latter, according to Manu, there are four varieties,—the offering of food to the Viśwadevas, to spirits, to deceased

\* *Devakhātajala.*

† He is quoted, by the commentator, for his enumeration of sacrifices. These, as I find, on reference to the *Gautama-smṛiti*, are named as follows:

<i>Pākasamsthās.</i>	<i>Haviṣamsthās.</i>	<i>Somasamsthās.</i>
1. <i>Aṣṭakā.</i>	<i>Agnyādheya.</i>	<i>Agnishtoma.</i>
2. <i>Pārvaṇa.</i>	<i>Agnihotra.</i>	<i>Atyagnishtoma.</i>
3. <i>Śrāddha.</i>	<i>Darśapūrṇamāsa.</i>	<i>Ukthya.</i>
4. <i>Śrāvāṇi.</i>	<i>Chāturmāsya.</i>	<i>Shodāśi.</i>
5. <i>Āgrahāyaṇi.</i>	<i>Āgrayāṇeshti.</i>	<i>Vājapeya.</i>
6. <i>Chaitri.</i>	<i>Nirūdhapaśubandha.</i>	<i>Atirātra.</i>
7. <i>Āvayajji.</i>	<i>Sautrāmaṇi.</i>	<i>Aptoryāma.</i>

They have almost identical names, throughout, but are somewhat otherwise arranged, in Nārāyaṇa's commentary on Śāṅkhāyana's *Gṛihya-sūtra*, as adduced by Dr. Stenzler, in the *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, Vol. VII., p. 527, note 2. See, further, *ibid.*, Vol. IX., p. LXXIV. According to Āpastamba—see the *Taittirīya-saṁhitā and Commentary*, in the *Bibliotheca Indica*, Vol. I., p. 957,—several of the sacrifices of the first class bear appellations widely different from those given above. Baudhāyana, quoted in the same place, gives them all still different names.

In note § to p. 40, *supra*, a passage is cited from Ratnagarbha, comparable to which, as concerns its groupment of sacrifices,—an understanding of which demands further inquiry,—I here quote another from Śaṅkara's Commentary on the *Bṛihad-āranyaka Upaniṣad*, I., III., 1: न चाग्निहोत्रदर्शपूर्णमासचातुर्मास्यपशुबन्धसोमनां कर्मणां स्वतः काम्यनिवृत्त्यविवेकोऽस्ति ।

a well, or taken from a river, or other source, where there is any objection to bathing on the spot.<sup>1\*</sup> When bathed, and clad in clean clothes,† let him devoutly

---

ancestors, and to guests. II., 86.‡ The seven of Gautama§ are: offerings to progenitors on certain eighth days of the fortnight, at the full and change of the moon, at Śrāddhas generally, and to the manes on the full moon of four different months, or Śrāvaṇa, Agrahāyaṇa, Chaitra, and Āświna.

<sup>1</sup> A person may perform his ablutions in his own house, if the weather, or occupation, prevents his going to the water. If he be sick, he may use warm water; and, if bathing be altogether injurious, he may perform the Mantra snāna, or repeat the prayers used at ablution, without the actual bath.

---

\* कूपेषु द्रुततोयेन स्नानं कुर्वीत वा भुवि ।  
स्नायीतो द्रुततोयेन अथवा भुव्संभवे ॥

The commentator adds,—somewhat as in note 1 in this page,—that he is permitted to take water to his house, for bathing, if he must; that he may substitute warm water, when necessary, for cold; and that, in exigency, it is lawful for him to make shift with a *mantra-snāna*,—in other words, to commute ablution for a prayer. Compare Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 124, 136.

† The commentator observes, that the bathing and worship here described belong to noon-day.

‡ Four *pākayajnas* are there spoken of; but their names are not specified in the text. Kullūka says they are the *vaiśvadevahoma*, *balikarman*, *nityāśrāddha*, and *atithibhojana*. These are four out of five *pākayajnas* which belong to a classification different from, and later than, that which Gautama recognizes. See p. 40, note §; and p. 93, notes 2 and 3, *supra*: also, Kullūka on the *Laws of the Mānavas*, III., 67; Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśwalāyana's *Gṛihyasūtra*, Part II., p. 6, § 1; and Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 93.

§ The third and fourth *pākayajnas* or *pākasaṁsthās*, in Āpastamba, correspond with the first and second of Gautama. The remaining five are called *aupāsana-homa*, *vaiśvadeva*, *māsi śrāddham*, *sarpabali*, and *ist-nabali*.

offer libations to the gods, \* and progenitors, with the parts of the hand severally sacred to each. He must scatter water thrice, to gratify the gods; as many times, to please the *Āishis*; and once, to propitiate *Prajāpati*: he must, also, make three libations, to satisfy the progenitors. He must then present, with the part of the hand sacred to the manes, water to his paternal grandfather and great-grandfather, to his maternal grandfather, great-grandfather, and his father; and, at pleasure, to his own mother, and his mother's mother† and grandmother, to the wife of his preceptor, to his preceptor, his maternal uncle, and other relations,<sup>1</sup> to a dear friend, and to the king. Let him, also, after libations have been made to the gods and the rest, present others, at pleasure, for the benefit of all beings, reciting inaudibly this prayer: 'May the

---

<sup>1</sup> The whole series is thus given by Mr. Colebrooke: *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. V., p. 367.‡ Triple libations of *tila* (sesamum seeds) and water are to be given to the father, paternal grandfather, and great-grandfather; to the mother, maternal grandfather, great-grandfather, and great great-grandfather: and single libations are to be offered to the paternal and maternal grandmother and great-grandmother, to the paternal uncle, brother, son, grandson, daughter's son, son-in-law, maternal uncle, sister's son, father's sister's son, mother's sister, and other relatives. With exception of those, however, offered to his own immediate ancestors, which are obligatory, these libations are optional, and are rarely made.

---

\* *Āishis*.

† *Pramāṭṭi*. This word has escaped the lexicographers.

‡ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 145.

gods, demons,\* Yakshas, serpents, Gandharvas, Rákshasas, Piśáchas, Guhyakas,† Siddhas, Kúshmán-  
 das,‡ trees, birds, fish,§ all that people the waters,  
 or the earth, or the air, be propitiated by the water I  
 have presented to them! This water is given, by me,  
 for the alleviation of the pains of all those who are  
 suffering in the realms of hell. May all those who are  
 my kindred, and not my kindred, and who were my  
 relations in a former life, all who desire libations from  
 me, receive satisfaction from this water! May this  
 water and sesamum, presented by me, relieve the  
 hunger and thirst of all who are suffering from those  
 inflictions, wheresoever they may be!¹|| Presentations  
 of water, given in the manner, O king, which I have  
 described, yield gratification to all the world; and the  
 sinless man who, in the sincerity of faith, pours out  
 these voluntary libations obtains the merit that results  
 from affording nutriment to all creatures.

“Having, then, rinsed his mouth, he is to offer water  
 to the sun, touching his forehead with his hands  
 joined, and with this prayer: ‘Salutation to Vivaswat,  
 the radiant, the glory of Vishnú; to the pure illu-

---

¹ The first part of this prayer is from the Sāma-veda, and  
 is given by Mr. Colebrooke. *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. V., p. 367.¶

---

\* *Asura*.

† Servants of Kubera. Colebrooke calls them “unmelodious guardians  
 of the celestial treasure.” *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 146.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 166.

§ There is no word for this, in the original.

|| Several of my MSS. omit the stanza which this sentence translates.

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 146.



minator of the world; to Savitri, the granter of the fruit of acts!'<sup>\*</sup> He is, then, to perform the worship of the house, presenting to his tutelary deity† water, flowers, and incense. He is, next, to offer oblations with fire, not preceded by any other rite, to Brahmá.<sup>1</sup> Having invoked Prajapati, let him pour oblations,§ reverently, to his household gods,|| to Káśyapa, and to Anumati,<sup>2</sup> in succession. The residue of the obla-

---

<sup>1</sup> The rite is not addressed to Brahmá, specially; but he is to be invoked to preside over the oblations offered to the gods and sages, subsequently particularized.

<sup>2</sup> Káśyapa, the son of Kaśyapa, is Áditya,¶ or the Sun. Anumati\*\* is the personified moon, wanting a digit of full. The objects and order of the ceremony here succinctly described differ from those of which Mr. Colebrooke gives an account (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII., p. 236††), and from the form of oblations given by Ward (*Account of the Hindus*, Vol. II., p. 477); but, as

---

\* नमो विवस्वते ब्रह्मभास्वते विष्णुतेजसे ।  
जगत्सविचे शुचये सविचे कर्मदायिने ॥

The commentator prefers the reading ब्रह्मभास्वते, but notes ब्रह्मभास्वते.

† *Abhishta-sura*.

‡ अपूर्वमग्निहोत्रं च कुर्यात्प्राग्ब्रह्मणे ततः ।

*Apūrva* the commentator elucidates by *ananyaprakritika*: vide *supra*, p. 40, notes 1 and ‡. A variant, he says, is *appūrva*, 'previously sprinkled.' For the *agnihotra*, here spoken of, see p. 40, note 1; and p. 113, note †, *supra*.

§ *Āhuti*.

|| *Grihya*.

¶ For the twelve Ádityas, see Vol. II., p. 27, and pp. 284 *et seq.*

\*\* See Vol. I., p. 153; and Vol. II., p. 261: also, Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

†† Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 152.

tion let him offer to the earth, to water, and to rain,\* in a pitcher at hand; and to Dhátrī and Vidhátrī, at the doors of his house; and, in the middle of it, to Brahmá. Let the wise man also offer the Bali, consisting of the residue of the oblations, to Indra, Yama,† Varuṇa, and Soma,‡ at the four cardinal points of his dwelling,§ the east and the rest; and, in the north-east quarter, he will present it to Dhanwantari.<sup>1</sup> After having thus worshipped the domestic deities, he will, next, offer part of the residue to all the gods (the Viśwadevas); then, in the north-west quarter, to Váyu

---

observed by Mr. Colebrooke, oblations are made “with such ceremonies, and in such form as are adapted to the religious rite which is intended to be subsequently performed.” *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII., p. 237.||

<sup>1</sup> See, also, Manu, III., 84, &c., and the *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII., p. 275.¶

---

\* The ordinary reading is:

तच्छेषं मणिकेऽञ्जोऽथ पर्जन्याय क्षिपेत्ततः ।

But the commentator notes a variant, पृथ्वीपर्जन्याम्, which Professor Wilson seems to have preferred. And he explains मणिके—above rendered “in a pitcher at hand”,—by जलाधारसन्निधौ, ‘near a pond.’

Personifications are, of course, intended here. The commentator calls these offerings the *bhūtayajna*. This is the same as the *baliyajna*. See p. 93, notes 2 and ||, *supra*.

† *Dharmarāja*, in the original.

‡ Substituted for Indu.

§ The Sanskrit of this sentence begins:

गृहस्य पुरुषव्याघ्र दिग्देवानपि मे शृणु ।

“Hear from me, man-tiger, the house’s gods of the quarters, also.”

The Translator rarely renders the vocative epithets with which this work abounds; and these constitute one of its quaintest features.

|| Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 153.

¶ Or Colebrooke’s *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 191.

(wind); then, in all directions, to the points of the horizon,\* to Brahmá, to the atmosphere,† and to the sun; to all the gods,‡ to all beings, to the lords of beings, to the Pitris, to twilight.§ Then, taking other rice,<sup>1</sup> || let the householder, at pleasure, cast it upon a clean spot of ground, as an offering to all beings; repeating, with collected mind, this prayer: ‘May gods, men, animals, birds, saints, ¶ Yakshas, serpents, demons, ghosts, goblins,\*\* trees, all that desire food given by me; may ants, †† worms, moths, ‡‡ and other insects, hungered, and bound in the bonds of acts; may all obtain satisfaction from the food left them by me, and enjoy happiness! May they who have neither mother, nor father, nor relations, nor food, nor the means of preparing it, be satisfied and pleased with the food presented for their contentment!’<sup>2</sup> Inasmuch

<sup>1</sup> Or this ceremony may be practised instead of the preceding.

<sup>2</sup> This prayer is said, by Mr. Colebrooke, to be taken from the Puráñas (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 275). §§ He translates

\* निर्वपेद्विह्वलं च कर्म कुर्यादतः परम् ।  
वायवे वायवे दिक्षु समस्तासु ततो दिशाम् ॥

† *Antariksha.*

‡ *Viśve devāḥ.*

§ My MSS. concur in reading:

यक्ष्माणं च समुद्दिश्व वशिं दद्यान्नरेवर ।

There is nothing, here, of “twilight”. *Yakshman*, in this passage, may be Consumption, personified as a divinity. The commentary is silent.

|| *Anna*, ‘food’, as just below; not, necessarily, ‘rice’.

¶ *Siddha.*

\*\* *Daiṭya*, *preta*, and *pidācha*.

†† *Pipilika*, ‘termites’.

‡‡ *Patāngaka*.

§§ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 192.

as all beings, and this food, and I, and Vishnú, are not different, I, therefore, give, for their sustenance, the food that is one with the body of all creatures. May all beings that are comprehended in the fourteen orders of existent things<sup>1</sup> be satisfied with the food bestowed, by me, for their gratification, and be delighted!' Having uttered this prayer, let the devout believer cast the food upon the ground, for the nourishment\* of all kinds of beings: for the householder is, thence, the supporter of them all. Let him scatter food upon the ground, for dogs, outcasts,† birds, and all fallen and degraded‡ persons.

"The householder is then to remain, at eventide, in his court-yard, as long as it takes to milk a cow,<sup>1</sup>—or

---

the last clause: "May they, who have neither \* \* \* \* \* food, nor means of obtaining it." In our text, the phrase is

येषां \* \* \* \* \*  
नैवान्नसिद्धिर्न तथान्नमसि ।

which the commentator explains by येषामन्नं नास्ति येषां च सत्त्व्यन्ने नात्र सिद्धिः पाकसाधनं नास्तीत्यर्थः; understanding *Anna siddhi* to mean 'means of dressing food,' *Pāka sādhana*. The following passages of the prayer are, evidently, peculiar to the Vishnú Purāna.

<sup>1</sup> Either fourteen classes of Bhútas (or spirits); or the same number of living beings,—or eight species of divine, one of human, and five of animal, creatures.

<sup>2</sup> This, according to the commentator, is equal to the fourth part of a *Ghatiká*, which, considering the latter synonymous with

---

\* *Upakāra*.

† *Chandála*.

‡ *Apātra*. Some MSS. have *aputra*, 'sonless'. The former term imports 'undeserving of exequial offerings',—*śrāddhāyogya*,—says commentary B.

longer, if he pleases,—to await the arrival of a guest. Should such a one arrive, he is to be received with a hospitable welcome; a seat is to be offered to him, and his feet are to be washed, and food is to be given him with liberality,\* and he is to be civilly and kindly spoken to; and, when he departs, to be sent away, by his host, with friendly wishes.† A householder should ever pay attention to a guest who is not an inhabitant of the same village, but who comes from another place, and whose name and lineage are unknown. He who feeds himself, and neglects the poor and friendless stranger in want of hospitality, goes to hell. Let a householder who has a knowledge of Brahmá‡ reverence a guest, without inquiring his studies, his school, his practices, or his race.<sup>1</sup>§

---

Muhúrta, or one thirtieth of the day and night, would be twelve minutes.||

<sup>1</sup> These precepts, and those which follow, are of the same tenour as those given by Manu, on the subject of hospitality (III., 99, &c.), but more detailed.

---

\* *Śraddhā*. Elsewhere the Translator renders this word by “faith”.

† गच्छतस्त्रानुयानेन प्रीतिमुत्पादयेद्बुद्धी ।

It is, thus, directed, that, when the guest departs, his host should bear him company,—for a short distance, only, of course. The less common reading *anuyātena* must yield the same sense. The unique lection *anupānena* might move an imaginative speculator to attribute the idea of the stirrup-cup to the ancient Hindus.

‡ The Sanskrit directs the householder to reverence his guest ‘by regarding him as if he were Hirañyagarbha,’—*hirañyagarbha-buddhyā*.

§ “School,” “practices,” and “race” here render *gotra*, *charaṇa*, and *kula*, ‘stock,’ ‘school,’ and ‘family’. The commentator gives *charaṇa* two meanings,—*vedāvāntaraśākhā* and *āchāra*.

|| See Vol. I., p. 47, note 2.

"A householder should, also, at the perpetual Śrāddha,\* entertain another Brahman who is of his own country, whose family and observances are known, and who performs the five sacramental rites.† He is, likewise, to present, to a Brahman learned in the Vedas, four handfuls of food, set apart with the exclamation Hanta;‡ and he is to give, to a mendi-

\* *Pitrartham*, 'for the sake of the manes'. It is explained by *nitya-śrāddhārtham*, in the commentary.

† *Vide supra*, p. 93, note 2.

‡ अन्नायं च समुद्धृत्य हन्तकारोपकल्पितम् ।  
निर्वपभूतं भूपाल श्रीचियाद्योपपादयेत् ॥

"Let him, O king, also set apart the choicest of food, and present it, by way of appropriation, hallowed by the utterance *hanta*, to a Brāhman versed in holy writ."

The commentator says: अन्नायं भोजनायनवशिष्टम् । अथ चोत्तमम् ।

यासमाचा भवेद्विचा अयं यासचतुष्टयम् ।

अयाश्चैव तु चत्वारि हन्तकारं प्रचक्षते ॥

मनुष्येभ्यो हनोति मन्वेष्टोपकल्पितमन्नं हन्तकारोपकल्पितम् । निर्वपभूतं पृथक्कृत्य स्थापितम् ।

A stanza, the same in meaning as the one here quoted, is adduced, from Hemachandra's scholiast, in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Rieu's edition of the *Abhidhānachintāmaṇi*, p. 366:

यासप्रमाणं भिक्षा खाद्यं यासचतुष्टयम् ।

अयं चतुर्गुणं प्राहुर्हन्तकारं द्विजोत्तमाः ॥

*Annāgra* and *hantakāra*, rendered by 'the choicest of food' and 'the utterance *hanta*', have, thus, denoted specific quantities,—four mouthfuls and sixteen. But neither of these acceptations—which are, probably, of late date,—seems to be intended in the passage under annotation. One or other of them is there impossible.

The following is taken from the *Bṛihad-āranyaka Upanishad*,—V., VIII.: वाचं धेनुमुपासीत । तस्माच्चत्वारः क्षणाः स्वाहाकारो वषट्कारो हन्तकारः स्वधाकारः । तस्यो द्वौ क्षणौ देवा उपवीवन्ति स्वाहाकारं च वषट्कारं च हन्तकारं मनुष्याः स्वधाकारं पितरः । तस्माः प्राणश्च भो मनो वत्सः । "One should reverence speech as a cow. Hers are

cant\* religious student, three handfuls† of rice, or according to his pleasure, when he has ample means.‡ These, with the addition of the mendicant before described, are to be considered as guests; and, he who treats these four descriptions of persons with hospitality acquits himself of the debt due to his fellow-men.§ The guest who departs, disappointed, from any house, and proceeds elsewhere, transfers his sins to the owner of that mansion, and takes away with him such a householder's merits. || Brahmá, ¶ Prajapati, Indra,\*\* fire, the Vasus, the Sun, are present in the person of

four dugs: the utterance *swáhá*, the utterance *vashat*, the utterance *hanta*, the utterance *swadhá*. By two of her dugs, the utterance *swáhá* and the utterance *vashat*, the gods are sustained; by the utterance *hanta*, men; by the utterance *swadhá*, the manes. Life is her bull; the organ of imagination, her calf."

Of *swáhá* and *vashat* Śridhara says: आग्नां हविर्दीयते देवेभ्यः; of *hanta*, हन्ता इति मनुष्येभ्योऽन्नं प्रयच्छन्ति; of *swadhá*, स्वधाकारेण हि पिनुभ्यः स्वधां प्रयच्छन्ति ।

For *Swáhá* and *Swadhá*, see Vol. I., p. 109; for *Vashat*, Vol. II., p. 29, notes 3 and §.

\* *Parivrāj*.

† *Grāsa*, 'mouthfuls'.

‡ इच्छया च नरो दद्याद्विभवे सत्यवारितम् ।

§ इत्येतिऽतिथयः प्रोक्ताः प्रागुक्ता भिन्नवच्च ये ।

चतुरः पूजयन्नेतामृत्युञ्जयात्ममुच्यते ॥

"These are called guests: and one showing honour to the four above-mentioned eleemosynaries acquits," &c.

The commentator says that these persons are: the unknown Bráhman, the known Bráhman, the Bráhman versed in holy writ, and the mendicant religious student.

|| This is almost a verbal repetition of what we have had before. *Vide supra*, p. 94, text and note †. The Sanskrit here runs thus:

अतिथिर्यस्य भग्नो गृहाद्यात्स्वतोमुखः ।

स दत्त्वा दुष्कृतं तस्मै पुण्यमादाय गच्छति ॥

¶ Dhātṛi, in the original.

\*\* Substituted for Śakra.

a guest, and partake of the food (that is given to him). Let a man, therefore, be assiduous in discharging the duties of hospitality: for he who eats his food, without (bestowing any upon) a guest, feeds only upon iniquity.

“In the next place, the householder must provide food for a married damsel remaining in her father’s dwelling;\* for any one who is ill; for a pregnant woman; for the aged, and the infants (of his house); and then he may eat, himself. He who eats, whilst these are yet unfed, is guilty of sin (in this life), and, when he dies, is condemned, in hell, to feed upon phlegm. So, he who eats without performing ablutions is fed, (in hell), with filth; and he who repeats not his prayers,† with matter and blood; he who eats unconsecrated food, with urine; and (he who eats) before the children and the rest (are fed, is stuffed, in Tartarus), with ordure. Hear, therefore, O king of kings, how a householder should feed, so that, in eating, no sin may be incurred, that invariable health and increased vigour may be secured, and all evils and hostile machinations may be averted.‡ Let the householder, having bathed, and offered libations to the gods§ and manes, and decorated his hand with jewels, proceed to take his meal, after having repeated the

\* *Suvāsinī*.

† The *gāyatrī* and so forth, the commentator says.

‡ भवत्वरिष्टशान्तिश्च वैरिपक्षाभिचारिका ।

The gloss on this line is as follows: अरिष्टमशुभादृष्टं तस्य शान्तिः । वैरिपक्षाणामुत्पन्नरोगाणामभिचारिका विनाशशीलाः ।

§ Insert ‘Rishis’.



(introductory) prayers, and offered oblations with fire, and having given food to guests, to Brahmans, to his elders, and to his family. He must not eat with a single garment on, nor with wet hands and feet, but dressed in clean clothes, perfumed, and wearing garlands of flowers: he must not eat with his face to any intermediate point of the horizon, but fronting the east or the north:\* and thus, with a smiling countenance, happy and attentive, let him partake of food, of good quality, wholesome, boiled with clean water,† procured from no vile person, nor by improper means, nor improperly cooked.‡ Having given a portion to his hungry companions, let him take his food, without reproach,§ out of a clean handsome vessel, which must not be placed upon a low stool|| (or bed). He must not eat in an unfit place, or out of season,¶ or in an incommodious attitude;\*\* nor must he first cast any of his meal into the fire. Let his food be made holy with suitable texts; let it be good of its kind: and

\* The directions he must face when bathing. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 61: and compare VIII., 87. Also *vide infra*, p. 127.

† “Boiled with clean water” translates मोक्षितं मोक्षणीदक्षैः, “sprinkled with water for sprinkling,”—with a view to ceremonial purification.

‡ नैव दुग्धसावदसंस्कृतं, “not disgusting, nor unhallowed.” This is to be substituted for “nor by improper means, nor improperly cooked.” I find but one reading.

§ *Akūpita*, ‘undisturbed by wrath.’

|| *Asāṇḍi*; ‘wooden, three-legged, &c.’ says the commentary: दाहमयं त्रिपदादि ।

¶ *Nākāle*: as at noon, or either of the twilights, it is said. The commentator adds a variant, *nākāse*, ‘not in the open air.’

\*\* *Atisankirṇe*, “in a place much littered over”, I should think. The commentator says nothing.

it must not be stale, except in the case of fruit or meat;<sup>1</sup> nor must it be of dry vegetable substances, other than jujubes<sup>2</sup> or preparations of molasses; but never must a man eat of that of which the juices have

<sup>1</sup> By stale,\* as applied to meat, is intended, in this place, probably, meat which has been previously dressed, as part of an offering to the gods or manes; meat which is dressed in the first instance for an individual being prohibited; as by Yājñavalkya:† वृक्षामांसं वर्जयेत् । 'Let him avoid flesh killed in vain;' or, 'that which is not the residue of an offering to the gods, &c.': देवा-  
वर्चनावशिष्टं यन्न भवति ।‡ So, also, Manu, V., 7. §

<sup>2</sup> By dried vegetables, &c., (शुष्कशकादिकं), is to be understood unboiled vegetables, or pot-herbs dressed without being sprinkled with water: जलोपसेकं विना पक्कम् ॥ Instead of बद-  
रिक्केभ्यः, ¶ 'jujubes,' the reading is, sometimes, हरितिकेभ्यः, \*\* myro-

\* *Paryushita* means 'kept over night'. See the *Mitāksharā* on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 167; and Śrīdhara on the *Bhagavad-gītā*, XVII., 10.

† I., 167, 168.

‡ This is the *Mitāksharā*'s elucidation of the words of Yājñavalkya.

§ Add IV., 213. But V., 34, is most explicit on the enormity of the offence here denounced:

न तादृशं भवत्येनो मृगहन्तुर्धनार्थिनः ।

यादृशं भवति प्रेत्य वृक्षामांसानि खादतः ॥

"The sin of him who kills deer for gain is not so heinous, with respect to the punishment in another life, as that of him who eats flesh-meat in vain, or, not previously offered as a sacrifice." Sir William Jones's Translation.

|| The commentary further says, that the bare mention of 'pot-herbs, &c.' implies, that they are unaccompanied by fried grain and the like: शकादिकं सत्कादिकं विनैति शेषः ।

¶ I nowhere find this reading, but बादरिक्केभ्यः, 'preparations of jujubes,' according to the gloss, बदरविकारिभ्यः.

\*\* The reading preferred by the commentator, and explained by अप-  
क्वलेद्यादिभ्यः, "things to be licked, and the like, uncooked."

been extracted.<sup>1</sup> Nor must a man eat so as to leave no residue (of his meal), except in the case of flour-cakes,\* honey, water, curds, and butter.† Let him, with an attentive mind, first taste that which has a sweet flavour: he may take salt and sour things, in the middle course, and finish with those which are pungent and bitter. The man who commences his meal with fluids, then partakes of solid food, and finishes with fluids again, will ever be strong and healthy. In this manner, let him feed without fault, silent, and contented with his food; taking, without uttering a word, to the extent of five handfuls, for the nutriment of the vital principle.‡ Having eaten sufficiently, the householder is, then, to rinse his mouth, with his face turned towards the east or the north;§ and, having again sipped water, he is to wash his hands, from the wrist downwards.|| With a pleased and tranquil spirit, he is, then, to take a seat,¶ and call to memory his tutelary deity;\*\* and then he is thus to pray: 'May fire, excited by air, convert this food into the earthly ele-

---

balans.' The other term, गुडपक्केभ्यः, is explained 'sweetmeats.'†† The construction here, however, is somewhat obscure.

<sup>1</sup> As oil-cake, or the sediment of anything after expression.

---

\* The first edition exhibits "flour, cakes"; a typographical oversight. The Sanskrit word is *saktu*. † *Sarpis*, 'clarified butter.'

‡ *Prāñādi*.

§ *Vide supra*, p. 125, note \*.

|| "From the wrist downwards" is to render *mūlatas*, which the commentary explains by *kaphoṇi-paryantam*, 'as far as the elbow.'

¶ *Kṛtāsana-parigrahaḥ*, 'his wife being seated.'

\*\* *Abhīṣhta-dēvatā*, in the plural.

†† खड्गवादिभ्यः । गुडमद्येभ्य इति पाठे स एवार्थः । Commentary.

ments of this frame, and, in the space afforded by the ethereal atmosphere, cause it to digest, and yield me satisfaction!\* May this food, in its assimilation, contribute to the vigour of the earth, water, fire, and air of my body, and afford unmixed† gratification!‡ May Agasti, Agni, and submarine fire effect the digestion of the food of which I have eaten! May they grant me the happiness which its conversion into nutriment engenders; and may health (ever) animate my form! May Vishnu, who is the chief principle of all invested with bodily structure and the organs of sense, be propitiated by my faith in him, and influence the assimilation of the invigorating food which I have eaten! For, verily, Vishnu is the eater, and the food, and the nutriment:§ and, through this belief, may that which

\* अपिराध्याययत्नं पार्थिवं पवनेरितः ।

दत्तावकाशं नभसा ज्वरयत्नसु मे सुखम् ॥

The comment on this runs thus: पवनेरितो वह्निर्नभसा दत्तावकाशं मया भुक्तमन्नं ज्वरयतु । ततश्चान्नरसेन पार्थिवं देहधातुमाध्याययत्निति । According to this, the stanza signifies: "May fire, excited by air, effect the digestion of *any* food under heaven, *eaten by me*; and then may it, *viz., fire, by the juices of food*, prosper the earthy elements of *my* body: may there be happiness to me!" Independently of the scholiast, however, one would feel inclined to translate as follows: "May fire, excited by air, prosper *all* earthy food under heaven, *and* cause it to be digested: may there be happiness to me!"

† *Avyāhata*, 'uninterrupted.'

‡ Nearly all my MSS. here interpolate, if they do not substitute for what just precedes, as follows:

प्राज्ञापानसमानानामुदान्नानयोस्तथा ।

अन्नं पुष्टिकरं चासु ममास्त्ववाहृतं सुखम् ॥

The copies containing the commentary give this unimportant stanza, but in such a way, in some, that it is doubtful as to its genuineness. It is left unexplained. For अपान, &c., see Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

§ Read "digestion", *pariñāma*.

I have eaten be digested!"\*

"Having repeated this prayer, the householder should rub his stomach with his hand, and, without indolence, perform such rites as confer repose; passing the day in such amusements as are authorized by holy writings and are not incompatible with the practices of the righteous, until the Sandhyá, when he must engage in pious meditation.† At the Sandhyá at the close of the day, he must perform the usual rites before the sun has quite set; and, in the morning, he must perform them before the stars have disappeared.<sup>1</sup> The morning and evening rites must never

---

\* So Manu, II., 101, § and IV., 93. ||

---

\* विष्णुः समस्तोद्भिद्यदेहदेहि-  
प्रधानभूतो भगवान्वथैकः ।  
सखेन तेनान्नमशेषमेत-  
दारोग्यदं मे परिणाममेतु ॥  
विष्णुरत्ता तथैवान्नं परिणामश्च वै यथा ।  
सखेन तेन वै भुक्तं जीर्यत्वन्नमिदं तथा ॥

The first stanza should, rather, be rendered: "Just as the holy Vishnú, the ultimate source of all the organs of sense, bodies, and embodied souls, is one, so, by this truth, may all this food, health-giving, be digestible to me." For *pradhána*, see Vol. I., p. 20, note \*.

† ततः संध्यामुपतिष्ठेत्समाहितः ।

‡ दिनान्तसंध्यां सूर्येण पूर्वामृक्षेर्युतां बुधः ।  
उपतिष्ठेत्संध्यां सूर्येण सम्यगाचम्य पार्थिव ॥

As bearing on this, the commentator adduces a couplet from some *Smtiti*:

प्रातः संध्यां सनत्संध्यामुपासीत यथाविधि ।  
सादित्वा पश्चिमां संध्यामर्धास्तमितभास्कराम् ॥

§ पूर्वां संध्यां जपस्तिष्ठेत्सावित्रीमार्कदर्शनात् ।  
पश्चिमां तु समासीनः सम्यगुचविभावनात् ॥

॥ उत्थायावप्लवकं कृत्वा कृतशीचः समाहितः ।  
पूर्वां संध्यां जपस्तिष्ठेत्स्वकां चोपरां चिरम् ॥

be neglected, except at seasons of impurity,\* anxiety, sickness, or alarm. He who is preceded by the sun, in rising, or sleeps when the sun is setting,—unless it proceed from illness and the like,—incurs guilt which requires atonement;† and, therefore, let a man rise before the sun, in the morning, and sleep not until after he has set.‡ They who sinfully omit both the morning§ and the evening service go, after death, to the hell of darkness.|| In the evening, then, having again dressed food, let the wife (of the householder), in order to (obtain the fruit of) the Vaiśwadeva rite, give food, without prayers,¶ to outcasts and unclean spirits.\*\* Let the householder himself, according to his means, again show hospitality to any guest who may arrive; welcoming him with the salutation of evening,†† water for his feet, a seat, a supper, and a bed. The sin of want of hospitality to a guest who comes after sunset is eight times greater than that of turning away one

\* *Sūtakāśaucha*. *Sūtaka* is ceremonial uncleanness resulting from the birth of a child; *āśaucha*, that resulting from death. Commentary.

† Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 221:

सूर्येण ह्यभिनिर्मुक्तः शयानोऽभ्युदितश्च यः ।

प्रायश्चित्तमकुर्वीणो युक्तः स्नानमहतिगता ॥

‡ तस्मादभ्युदिते सूर्ये समुत्थाय महीपते ।

उपतिष्ठेन्नरः संध्यामस्त्रयंश्च दिनान्तवाम् ॥

§ See, on the sinfulness of this omission, Vol. II., p. 252.

|| *Tāmīra*. See Vol. II., p. 215, notes || and ¶.

¶ Instead of पत्न्यमन्त्रं, “wife”, “without prayers”, some MSS. read पत्न्या सार्धं, ‘with his wife.’ The commentator notices this variant.

\*\* In the original, अपचादिभ्यः. *Adi*, ‘etc.’, is here rendered by “unclean spirits.”

†† *Prahwa-svāgatokti* means ‘a salutation and a welcome’; *prahwa* being explained by *prahwatwa*, i. e., *prahma*. But, in several MSS., the reading is *prahwaḥ*, ‘complaisant.’

who arrives by day. A man should, therefore, most especially show respect to one who comes to him in the evening, for shelter; as the attentions that gratify him will give pleasure to all the gods. Let the householder, then, according to his ability, afford a guest food, pot-herbs, water, a bed, a mat, or, if he can do no more, ground on which to lie.\*

"After eating his evening meal, and having washed his feet, the householder is to go to rest. His bed is

\* शयनस्रस्तारमहीप्रदानिरथवापि तम् ।

So read most of my MSS. The commentary says: शयनं कम्बलादि । स्रस्तारः कटतृणादिः । मही स्रस्तारमात्रमपि । Several MSS. of the text, and one of the commentary, have *prastara*, for *srastara*; one MS. has *srastara* altered into *sainstara*, 'a couch'; and one has *swastara*. "Bed" denotes, then, 'a blanket, &c.'; and the *srastara*, which the Translator calls "mat", consists of 'a mat, straw, etc.' In the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 204, the reading, according to Kullūka, is *srastara*; but he does not explain it. Sir William Jones gives "a pavement of stones." Medhātithi has the lection *prastara*, which he defines to be: दम्भादितृणाक्षीर्णं स्रस्तारः, 'a rug strewed with *darbha* or other grass.' In Gulzār Pandit's Hindi version of the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, *srastara* is rendered *chatāi*, 'mat'. In the unfinished Calcutta translation of the same Code,—made, I am told, by Tārāchandra Chakravartin,—this term is interpreted "a seat made of sprouts and leaves", with the following comment: "*Srastara* is a word which is not much in use. It is not found in the Sanskrita dictionaries commonly consulted, nor even in the voluminous compilation of Dr. Wilson; and yet, unaccountable as the thing must appear, the word is left unexplained by the commentator [Kullūka]. We have found it, however, with the meaning given above, in a dictionary which was compiled and published some years ago, and is entitled *Prānakṛishṇa-śabdāmbudhi*. These circumstances considered, it will not appear improbable, that Sir William Jones took it to be a mistake, in the manuscript, for *prastara*, 'stone'; or that he found the word to be *prastara*, in his manuscript, and gave the rendering accordingly." The *Śabdāmbudhi*, ed. of 1856, defines *srastara* 'seat', 'support for sitting.' Finally, *srastara*, on the faith of the *Śabdakalpadruma*, is found in the *Buddhitattwa*, and is equivalent to *dsana*, 'seat.'

The word *prastara* recurs in p. 150, *infra*.

to be entire, and made of wood;\* it is not to be scanty, nor cracked, nor uneven, nor dirty, nor infested by insects, nor without a bedding: and he is to sleep with his head either to the east or to the south: any other position is unhealthy. In due season, a man should approach his wife, when a fortunate asterism† prevails, in an auspicious moment, and on even nights,‡ if she is not unbathed,§ sick, unwell,|| averse, angry,¶ pregnant,\*\* hungry, or over-fed. He should be, also, free from similar imperfections, should be neatly attired and adorned, and animated by tenderness and affection.†† There are certain days on which unguents, flesh, and women are unlawful; as the eighth and fourteenth lunar days, new moon and full moon,<sup>1</sup> and the

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, IV., 128.‡‡

\* This will do, in default of one of ivory, observes the commentator. A variant is *ekadārūṁāya*, 'made of a single pine', apparently. Oriental cots are light and easily portable.

† *Punnāmnyāśhe*. The asterisms referred to are, according to the commentator, ten in number: Aświni, Kṛttikā, Rohiṇi, Punarvasu, Pushya, Hasta, Anurādhā, Śravaṇa, Pūrvabhādrapadā, Uttarbhādrapadā.

‡ ज्येष्ठयुग्मासु रात्रिषु. Commentary: ऋतुकाखमारम्भ षष्ठाष्टम्यादिषु रात्रिषु । तत्रापि ज्येष्ठासु वृश्चासु उत्तरोत्तरं शुभास्तिवर्धः ।.

§ After her courses. Commentary. || *Rajaswālm*, 'menstruous.'

¶ There is an omission, here, of "not an object of evil report," *naprasāstām*; *aprasāsta* meaning, the scholiast says, परिवादादिदूषित.

\*\* The original adds other epithets, besides the two that follow in the translation:

नादक्षिणां नान्यकामां नाकामां नान्ययोषितम् ।

पुत्रकामामतिभुक्तां वा स्वयं वैभिर्गुणैर्युतः ॥

†† स्नातः स्रग्गन्धधृक्स्त्रीतो नाध्मातः पुषितोऽपि वा ।

सकामः सानुरागश्च व्यवयं पुरुषो ब्रजेत् ॥

‡‡ समावास्त्रामष्टमीं च पौर्णमासीं चतुर्दशमे ।

ब्रह्मचारी भवेन्नित्यमप्युती स्नातको द्विवः ॥



entrance of the sun into a new sign. On these occasions, the wise will restrain their appetites, and occupy themselves in the worship of the gods, as enjoined by holy writ, in meditation, and in prayer: and he who behaves differently will fall into a hell where ordure will be his food.\* Let not a man stimulate his desires by medicines, nor gratify them with unnatural objects,† or in public or holy places. Let him not think incontinently of another's wife, much less address her to that end; for such a man will be born, in future life, as a creeping insect.‡ He who commits adultery is punished both here and hereafter: for his days, in this world, are cut short; and, when dead, he falls into hell. Thus considering, let a man approach his own wife in the proper season, or even at other times.”§

\* This clause about punishment is not found in my MSS.

† Two terms used in the original—for which see note § in the present page,—are thus expounded by the commentator: अन्वयोनी। अन्वाद्योनी। अयोनी। मुखादौ। See, further, Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, article अयोनि.

‡ This explanation of the text is taken from the commentary.

§ The conclusion of this chapter is much abridged, as here translated. The original is as follows:

चतुर्दशष्टमी चैव अमावास्याय पूर्णिमा ।  
 पक्षाख्येताणि राजेन्द्र रविसंक्रान्तिरेव च ॥  
 तैत्तिरीयमाससंभोगी पर्वस्त्रितेषु वै पुमान् ।  
 विश्वमूषभोजनं नाम प्रयाति नरकं मृतः ॥  
 अश्वेषपर्वस्त्रितेषु तस्मात्संयमिभिर्वृधेः ।  
 भावं सञ्ज्ञास्त्रदेवैश्चाध्यानजप्यपरिर्नरैः ॥  
 नान्वद्योगावयोनी वा नोपयुक्तौषधसंज्ञा ।  
 द्विजदेवगुरुणां च ब्रह्मायी नाश्रमे भवेत् ॥  
 चैत्रचत्वरतीरेषु गोष्ठे नैव चतुष्पथे ।  
 नैव इमं शानोपवनसंज्ञितेषु महीपते ॥

प्रोक्तपर्वस्वशेषेषु नैव भूपास संध्ययोः ।  
 गच्छेद्वायं मतिमान्न मूढोच्चारपीडितः ॥  
 पर्वस्वभिगमोऽध्वन्यो दिवा पापप्रदो नृप ।  
 भुवि रोगावहो नृणामग्रशस्त्रो जलाशये ॥  
 परदारान्न गच्छेच्च मनसापि कदाचन ।  
 किमु वाचास्थिवन्धोऽपि नास्ति तेषु व्यवधिनाम् ॥  
 मृतो नरकमभ्येति ह्रीयतेऽचापि चायुषः ।  
 परदारगतिः पुंसामुभयचापि सीदति ॥  
 इति मत्वा स्वदारिषु चतुर्मत्सु बुधो ब्रजेत् ।  
 यद्योक्तदोषहीनेषु सकामेष्वनुतावपि ॥

---

## CHAPTER XII.

Miscellaneous obligations, purificatory, ceremonial, and moral.

AURVA continued.—“Let a respectable householder ever venerate the gods, kine, Brahmans, saints,\* aged persons, and holy teachers. Let him observe the two daily Sandhyás, and offer oblations to fire. Let him dress in untorn garments, use delicate herbs and flowers, wear emeralds and other precious stones, keep his hair smooth and neat, scent his person with agreeable perfumes, and always go handsomely attired, decorated with garlands of white flowers.† Let him never appropriate another's property, nor address him with the least unkindness. Let him always speak amiably, and with truth, and never make public another's faults. Let him not desire another's prosperity, nor seek his enmity. Let him not mount upon a crazy vehicle, nor take shelter under the bank of a river, (which may fall upon him). A wise man will not form a friendship, nor walk in the same path, with one who is disesteemed, who is a sinner, or a drunkard,‡ who has many enemies, or who is lousy,§ with a harlot, or her gallant, with a pauper,|| or a liar, with a prodi-

\* *Siddha*.

† सदानुपहते वस्त्रे प्रशस्ताश्च तथैवधीः ।  
गावश्चानि च रत्नानि विभुयात्मयतो नरः ॥  
प्रक्षिग्धामसक्षेत्रश्च सुगन्धिसाक्षेत्रश्चभृक् ।  
सिताः सुमनसो ह्यवा विभुयाश्च नरः सदा ॥

‡ *Patita* and *unmatta*.

§ *Atikittaka*, 'very verminous.'

|| *Keshudra*. It is glossed *आव्यक्तानीक्षित*, 'elated by petty gain.'

gal, a slanderer, or a knave. Let not a man bathe against the strength of a rapid stream, nor enter a house on fire, nor climb\* to the top of a tree, nor (in company) clean his teeth or blow† his nose, nor gape without covering his mouth, nor clear his throat,‡ nor

\* As will be seen below, to climb a tree to any height, apparently, is considered to be objectionable. The heterogeneous collection of maxims dictated by prudence, propriety, and superstition, of which this chapter is, in good part, made up, may be fitly accompanied by the sub-joined extract from Varadarāja's *Gīrvāṇapadamānjari*, or, as the work is called, in one copy, Dhruvādhirāja's *Gīrvāṇavāgmanjari* or *Gīrvāṇaśābdapadamānjari*: सर्वत्र दुराचाराः सन्धेव । तथा हि । दक्षिणदेशे कलौ मातुलकन्यापरिणयनं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* आन्ध्रदेशे हलाचरणं दुराचारः । कर्णाटकदेशे स्नानं विना भोजनं दुराचारः । ताम्रपात्रे गन्धादिनिक्षेपणं दुराचारः । महाराष्ट्र उच्छिष्टभक्षणं दुराचारः । ज्येष्ठं परित्यज्य कनिष्ठस्य विवाहकरणं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* द्रविडकेरलयोः सर्वासां कुचप्रदर्शनं दुराचारः । पथि पथुषिताम्भक्षणं दुराचारः । केरलदेशे उपरिसुरतं दुराचारः । कोङ्कणदेशे वृचारीहणं दुराचारः । गुजरेदेशे चर्मोदकपानं तृतीयदिने रत्नस्नानं दुराचारः । उत्तरदेशे कलौ मांसभक्षणं दुराचारः । पर्वतदेशे क्वचित्कलौ देवरेण सुतोत्पत्तिर्दुराचारः । क्वचिक्कुष्मांसभक्षणं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* सिन्धिलगोडदेशे सदा तिललेपनं दुराचारः । गौडदेशे वेदत्यागो दुराचारः । कान्यकुब्जदेशे पक्ष्यघृतपक्वभक्षणं दुराचारः । विवाहादौ भोजनसमये परस्परस्पर्शनं दुराचारः । उत्कलदेशे मुखसुरतं दुराचारः । गौडद्रविडकेरलोत्कलमैथिलेषु पक्वकलमतण्डुलोदनभक्षणं दुराचारः । सर्वेषां पथि ताम्बूलभक्षणं दुराचारः । मगधे वर्णसंकरणं दुराचारः । चर्मवत्पादपाशो-गमनं दुराचारः । काश्मीरदेशीया द्विजा केवलं यवनप्रायाः । खलु तेषां दुराचाराणां गणनैव नास्ति । Thus read, in combination, my two MSS., so far as they are legible. The book from which this passage is taken emanated, at least in one of its two forms, from Mahārāshtra; and it imparts instructive hints as to the opinions, on the dark side, entertained, by certain Hindus, of certain others.

† The verb here used is *kush*, 'to scratch.' The commentary says न कुष्णीयात् । नोत्किरेत् ।

‡ Read 'nor sigh'. The substantive here used is *twāsa*.

cough, nor laugh loudly, nor emit wind with noise, nor bite \* his nails, nor cut grass, nor scratch the ground,<sup>1</sup> nor put his beard into his mouth, nor crumble a clod of clay; nor look upon the chief planetary bodies,† when he is unclean.‡ Let him not express disgust at a corpse; for the odour of a dead body is the produce of the moon. Let (a decent man) ever avoid, by night, the place where four roads meet, the village-tree,§ the grove adjacent to the place where bodies are burnt, and a loose woman. Let him not pass across the shadow of a venerable person, of an image of a deity, of a flag,|| of a heavenly lumi-

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 71. ¶ "He who breaks clay, or cuts grass, or bites his nails, will speedily fall to ruin."

\* *Khādayet*. But a common reading is *vādayet*. He is, then, not to snap his nails, apparently.

† ज्योतीष्यमेधः शस्त्रानि । But the commentator notes a variant, ज्योतीष्यमेध्याशस्त्रानि, which he takes to mean ज्योतीषि चक्षुःप्रतिबिम्बानि चमेध्यानि पुरीषादीनि अशस्त्रानि अमङ्गलानि; that is to say, "things injurious to the eyes, filthy, and inauspicious."

But compare the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, IV., 142:

न चापि पश्चेदशुचिः सुखो ज्योतिर्गणादिवि ।

‡ Here follows the line:

नपां परस्त्रियं चैव सूर्यं चास्त्रमनोदये ।

Other objects forbidden to be looked at are, thus, 'another's naked wife, and the sun at its setting or rising.'

According to the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 53, a man may not see even his own wife in a state of nudity.

§ *Chaitya-taru*. I find a variant, *chaitya-tanu*, 'the interior of a temple', perhaps.

|| The original words, occurring in the midst of a compound, are *devadhwaṇja*, which may mean 'the banner of a god'.

In the former edition there was an unintentional comma after "image".

¶ लोष्टमर्दी नृणश्चेदी नखखादी च यो नरः ।

स विनाशं ब्रजत्वाशु सूचकोऽशुचिरेव च ॥

nary.<sup>1</sup> Let him not travel alone through a forest, nor sleep\* by himself in an empty house.<sup>2</sup> Let him keep remote from hair, bones, thorns, filth, remnants of offerings, ashes, † chaff, and earth<sup>3</sup> wet with water in which another has bathed. Let him not receive the protection of the unworthy, nor attach himself to the dishonest. Let him not approach a beast of prey; ‡ and let him not tarry long, when he has risen from sleep. Let him not lie in bed, when he is awake; nor encounter fatigue, when it is time to rest. § A prudent

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 130. || •

<sup>2</sup> Ib., id., 57. ¶

<sup>3</sup> Ib., id., 78. \*\*

\* I find *vaset*, 'dwell.'

† *Balibhasma*.

‡ Preferably, 'a vicious beast'; *vyāḍa* being interpreted *duṣṭa-mṛiga*.

§ अतीव जागरस्वप्ने तद्वत्स्थानासने बुधः ।

न सेवेत तथा शय्यां व्यायामं च न रश्मर ॥

"Let the wise man shun excess as to watching and sleeping; likewise, as to standing and sitting; and so, as to his bed and as to labour, O King."

One MS. has *jāgarasvapnau*, which we should rather expect. Perhaps the writer preferred jingle to good grammar. Further, several MSS. read *snāna*, 'bathing', for *sthāna*, 'standing'; and one gives *chiram*, 'for a long time', instead of *tathā*, 'so.' The scholiast says: अतीव जागरादीन् च सेवेत नाभ्यसेत् । स्थानं गतिनिवृत्तिम् । आसनमुपवेशनम् । शय्यामिति शयनव्यवाययोऽप्यस्य च । व्यायामं त्रयम् ।

॥ देवतानां गुरो राक्षः स्नातकाचार्ययोः सखा ।

नाक्रामेत्कामतरङ्गायां बभ्रुणो दीक्षितश्च च ॥

According to Kullūka and Medhātithi, idols are intended by the first word of this stanza.

¶ नैवः स्वप्याच्छ्रुत्येहि शयानं न प्रबोधयेत् ।

\*\* अधितिष्ठेन्न केशांस्तु न भस्मास्त्रिकपासिकाः ।

न कार्पासास्त्रि न तुषाद्दीर्घमाधुर्जिबीन्निवुः ॥

man will avoid, even at a distance, animals with tusks and horns; and he will shun exposure to frost, to wind,\* and to sunshine. A man must neither bathe, nor sleep, nor rinse his mouth,† whilst he is naked;‡ he must not wash his mouth, nor perform any sacred rite, with his waistband unfastened; and he must not offer oblations to fire, nor sacrifice to the gods, nor wash his mouth, nor salute a Brahman, nor utter a prayer,§ with only one garment on.¶ Let him never associate with|| immoral persons: half an instant is the limit for the intercourse¶ of the righteous with them. A wise man will never engage in a dispute with either his superiors or inferiors: controversy and marriage are to be permitted only between equals. Let not a prudent man enter into contention: let him avoid unprofitable enmity. A small loss may be endured; but he should shun the wealth that is acquired by hostility.

“When a man has bathed, he must not wipe his limbs with a towel or with\*\* his hands; nor shake his hair, nor rinse his mouth before he has risen.†† Let

¹ Manu, IV., 45.‡‡

\* Read ‘the east wind’, *puro-vāta*.

† *Upaspriset* is so explained by the commentator.

‡ As the original of “nor salute a Brahman, nor utter a prayer”, I find, with न • प्रवर्तेत in the context, द्विवचनके अपि, “nor-engage in prayer which he has procured to be said by the twice-born.” The commentator explains द्विवचनके by पुण्याहवाचने. The prayer referred to is, thus, understood to be that at a ceremony for which the Brāhmins have pronounced a certain day to be lucky.

§ Compare p. 125, *supra*. || *Sahāsita*. ¶ *Sahnīkarsha*. \*\* *Snānasāti*.

†† The Sanskrit has only *utthitāḥ*, implying ‘after he has stood up’.

‡‡ नान्नमयादेकवासा न नपः स्नानमाचरेत् ।

him not (when sitting,) put one foot over another, nor stretch forth \* his foot, in the presence of a superior, but sit, with modesty, in the posture called Vírāsana (or, on his knees). He must never pass round a temple upon his left hand, † nor perform the ceremony of circumambulating any venerable object in the reverse direction. A decent man will not spit, nor eject any impurity, in front of the moon, fire, the sun, water, wind, or any respectable person; † nor will he void urine standing, nor upon the highway. He will never step over phlegm, ordure, urine, or blood: nor is the expectoration of the mucus of the throat: allowable at the time of eating, offering sacrifices or oblations, or repeating prayers, § or in the presence of a respectable person.

“Let not a man treat women with disrespect; nor let him put entire || faith in them. Let him not deal impatiently with them, ¶ nor set them over matters of

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 52.\*\*

\* This—*prasārayet*—is the commentator's explanation of *nayet*.

† अपसव्यं न गच्छेच्च देवागारचतुष्पथान् ।

‡ Add 'or nose'. The original is श्लेष्मसिंहानकोत्सर्गः. Commentary A adds: सिंहानकं शुतम् । सिंहानो नासिकोन्नवः । सिंहानकं कठिनः श्लेष्मा । शुतमिति केचित् ।

§ बलिमङ्गलजप्यादौ न होमे ।

|| This all-important qualification is not in the original.

¶ न चैवेर्षुर्भवेत् । The commentary gives *irshu* = *asahishnu*.

\*\* प्रत्नयिं प्रति सूर्यं च प्रति सोमोदकद्विवान् ।

प्रति गां प्रति वातं च प्रज्ञा नञ्जति मेहतः ॥

Compare p. 110, *supra*.



importance.\* A man who is attentive to the duties of his station will not go forth from his house without

\* The Hindus, in their literature, here and there manifest a due esteem for womankind. In the subjoined extract from the *Mahābhārata* it is to be hoped that their misogyny found its utmost limit. These verses—selected from a slanderous effusion of a member of the celestial *demi-monde*, the *apsaras* Panchachūdā,—are to be met with in the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, *śl.* 2212—2230 (Chapter XXXVIII., *śl.* 11—29, in the Bombay edition of *Saka* 1784—6.).

कुलीना रूपवत्यश्च नाथवत्यश्च योषितः ।  
 मर्यादासु न तिष्ठन्ति स दोषः स्त्रीषु नारद ॥  
 अन्नचित्त्वान्मनुष्याणां भयात्परिव्रजन्त्यश्च ।  
 मर्यादायाममर्यादाः स्त्रियस्तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 न भयान्नाप्यनुक्रोशान्नाथहेतोः कथंचन ।  
 न ज्ञातिकुलसंबन्धात्स्त्रियस्तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 यौवने वर्तमानानां मुष्टाभरणवाससाम् ।  
 नारीणां स्त्रीवृत्तीनां स्पृहयन्ति कुलस्त्रियः ॥  
 पशुष्वप्यथ देवेषु ये चान्ये कुत्सिता नराः ।  
 स्त्रीष्वामगम्यो लोकेऽस्मिन्नास्ति कश्चिन्महामुने ॥  
 यदि पुंसां गतिर्नृणाम्कथंचिन्नोपपद्यते ।  
 अप्यन्योन्यं प्रवर्तन्ते न हि तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 अस्माभात्यनुषाणां हि भयात्परिव्रजन्त्यश्च ।  
 वधवन्धभयाच्चापि स्वयंगुप्ता भवन्ति ताः ॥  
 नापिसुष्यति काष्ठानां नापगानां महोदधिः ।  
 नान्तकः सर्वभूतानां न पुंसां वामलोचनाः ॥  
 इदमन्यश्च देवेषु रहस्यं सर्वयोषिताम् ।  
 इद्वैव पुण्यं ह्ययं योगिः प्रक्षिप्यते स्त्रियाः ॥  
 कामानामपि दातारं कर्तारं मनसां प्रियम् ।  
 रक्षितारं न मृष्यन्ति स्वभर्तारमसं स्त्रियः ॥  
 न कामभोगान्विपुलान्नालंकारान्न संश्रयान् ।  
 तथैव बह्वं मन्यन्ते यथा रत्नानमुग्रहम् ॥  
 अन्तकः पवनो मृत्युः पातालं बहवामुखम् ।  
 सुरधारा विषं सर्पां वह्निरित्येकतः स्त्रियः ॥

“Women, though born in noble families, *themselves* beauteous, and married to *worthy husbands*, remain not within the bounds of duty: this, Nārada, is the fault of women.

“From the want of a motive for deviation, or through fear of the

saluting the chaplets,\* flowers, gems, clarified butter, and venerable persons in it. At proper seasons, he will salute, respectfully, the places where four roads meet, when engaged† in offering oblations with fire. Let him liberally relieve the virtuous who are poor, and reverence those who are learned in the Vedas.‡

people or of their kindred, unbridled women may remain within the bounds of duty, *faithful* to their husbands.

"But neither through fear of *moral law*, nor through severe reprehension, nor from any motive of *regard for* wealth, nor on account of their connexion with kindred and family, are women constant to their husbands.

"Matrons envy women who live by prostitution the *bloom of* youth they possess, and the food and apparel they receive.

"Though men be lame, divine Sage! or otherwise contemptible, there is not any man, in this world, great Sage! insufferable to women.

"If they have no possible access to men, *O thou inspired by* Brahmā! they seduce each other: truly, they are not constant to their husbands.

"From not finding men, or through fear of their kindred, or apprehension of stripes or confinement, they guard themselves.

"But fire is not satiated with wood, nor the ocean with rivers, nor death with all beings, nor woman with man.

"This, divine Sage! is another hidden quality of all women: at the very sight of a handsome man, the heart of a woman melts with desire.

"Women bear not much *affection to* their husbands, though giving them what they desire, doing what they wish, and protecting them *from danger*.

"They do not so much value the gratification of their wishes, abundance of ornaments, or hoards of *wealth*, as they do sensual pleasures.

"Final destiny, wind, death, the infernal regions, the fire of the ocean, the edge of a razor, poison, venomous serpents, and *devouring* fire, all united, are *no worse than* women."

This translation is by Colebrooke, and may be found in his version of Jagannātha Tarkapanchānana's *Digest of Hindu Law*, Vol. II., pp. 393, 394, London edition.

\* *Mangalya*.

† Read "and will engage"; the Sanskrit being होमपरो भवेत्.

‡ दीनान्भुजरेत्साधूनुपासीत बह्व्युतान् ।

"Let him aid the needy; and let him reverence the virtuous, if very learned."

This is in accord with the commentary, which says: साधून्नेव बह्व्युतानुपासीत नेतरान् ।

He who is a worshipper of the gods and sages, who gives cakes and water to the manes, and who exercises hospitality, obtains the highest regions, (after death). He who \* speaks wisely, moderately, and kindly, goes to those worlds which are the inexhaustible sources of happiness. He who is intelligent, modest, devout, † and who reverences wisdom, his superiors, ‡ and the aged, goes to § heaven.

“On the days called Parvans, on periods of impurity, upon unseasonable thunder, and the occurrence of eclipses or atmospheric portents, || a wise man must desist from the study of the Vedas. <sup>1</sup> The pious man who suppresses anger and envy, who is benevolent to all, and allays the fears of others, secures, as the least of his rewards, enjoyment in Swarga. ¶ A man should carry an umbrella, as a defence against sun and rain; he should bear a staff, when he goes by night, or through a wood; and he should walk in shoes, if he desires to keep his body from harm. As he goes along, he should not look up, or about him, \*\* or

---

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 101, &c. The legislator is much more copious, on this subject, than the author of the Purāṇa.

---

\* In the Sanskrit, काले वश्यात्मा यः, “the person of subdued affections who, at the *proper* time.”

† *Kṣamāyukta*, ‘forbearing.’ Here follow two untranslated epithets, *āstika* and *vinayānvita*, ‘pious’ and ‘meek’.

‡ *Abhijana*; his ‘family’, perhaps.

§ Insert ‘the highest’, *anuttama*.

|| “Or atmospheric portents” is to render *ādika*, ‘etc.’

¶ शर्म नयति यः कुञ्जान्सर्वबन्धुरमत्सरी ।

भीताश्चासन्नज्जलाधुः स्वर्गसखायकं यत्नम् ॥

\*\* *Tiryach*.

afar off, but keep his eyes upon the ground, to the extent of a couple of yards, \*

“The householder who expels all sources of imperfection is, in a great degree, acquitted of the three ordinary objects of existence,—desire, wealth, and virtue;† sinless amongst the sinful; speaking amicably to all men; his whole soul melting with benevolence; final felicity is in his grasp.‡ The earth is upheld by the veracity of those who have subdued their passions, and, following righteous practices, are never contaminated by desire, coveteousness, and wrath.§ Let, therefore, a wise man (ever) speak the truth, when it is agreeable; and, when the truth would inflict pain, let him hold his peace. Let him not utter that which, though acceptable, would be detrimental; for it were better to speak that which would be salutary, although it should give exceeding offence.<sup>1</sup>|| A considerate

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, IV., 138. ¶ “Let him say what is true; but let him say what is pleasing. Let him speak no disagreeable truth; nor let him speak agreeable falsehood. This is a primeval rule.”\*\*

\* *Yuga-mātra*, defined by *hasta-chatushtaya*.

† दोषहेतुगणेषांस्तु वञ्छात्मा यो निरस्त्रति ।  
तस्य धर्मार्थकामानां हानिर्नाश्यापि जायते ॥  
‡ पापेऽप्यपापः पद्वेऽप्यभिधत्ते प्रियाणि यः ।  
मैत्रीद्रवान्तःकरणस्यस्य मुक्तिः करे स्थिता ॥  
§ ये कामक्रोधलोभानां वीतरागा न गोचरे ।  
सदाचारस्त्रितासेषामनुभावधृता मही ॥  
॥ प्रियं युक्तं हितं नैतदिति मत्वा न तददेत् ।  
श्रेयसाच्च हितं वाच्यं यत्तत्पुण्यमप्रियम् ॥  
¶ सत्यं ब्रूयात्प्रियं ब्रूयान्न ब्रूयात्सत्यमप्रियम् ।  
प्रियं च नानृतं ब्रूयादिष धर्मः सनातनः ॥

\*\* This is Sir William Jones's rendering.

man will always cultivate, in act, thought, and speech, that which is good for living beings, both in this world and in the next."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> That the preceding chapter agrees, in many respects, very closely with the contents of the fourth book of the Institutes of Manu, on economics and private morals, will be evident from the instances cited of some of the parallel passages. Several others might have been adduced.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

Of Śráddhas or rites in honour of ancestors, to be performed on occasions of rejoicing. Obsequial ceremonies. Of the Ekoddishṭa or monthly Śráddha, and the Sapiṇḍana or annual one. By whom to be performed.

AURVA continued.—“The bathing of a father, without disrobing, is enjoined, when a son is born; and he is to celebrate the ceremony proper for the event,\* which is the Śráddha offered upon joyous occasions.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The offerings of the Hindus to the Pitris partake of the character of those of the Romans to the lares and manes, but bear a more conspicuous part in their ritual. They are said, indeed, by Manu (III., 203†), in words repeated in the Váyu and Matsya Purāṇas, and Hari Vamśa, to be of more moment than the worship of the gods:

देवकार्यादपि सदा पितृकार्यं विशिष्यते । :

These ceremonies are not to be regarded as merely obsequial; for, independently of the rites addressed to a recently deceased relative,—and, in connexion with him, to remote ancestors, and to the progenitors of all beings,—which are of a strictly obsequial or funeral description, offerings to deceased ancestors, and the Pitris in general, form an essential ceremony, on a great variety of festive and domestic occasions. The Nirṇaya Sindhu, in a passage referred to by Mr. Colebrooke (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII. §), specifies the following Śráddhas: 1. The Nitya, or perpetual; daily offerings to ancestors in general: 2. The Naimittika, or occasional; as the Ekoddishṭa, or obsequial offerings

---

\* Expressed, in the original, by *jāta-karman*, for which see Colebrooke's *Digest*, &c., Vol. III., p. 104, note †.

† देवकार्यादपि सदा पितृकार्यं विशिष्यते ।

‡ *Harivaṃśa*, *sl.* 1005. § Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 180, note.

With composed mind, and thinking on nothing else, the Brahman should offer worship to both the gods and progenitors, and should respectfully circumambulate, keeping Brahmans on his left hand, and give them food.\* Standing with his face to the east,† he should present, with the parts of the hand sacred to the gods

on account of a kinsman recently deceased: 3. The Kámya, voluntary; performed for the accomplishment of a special design (अभिप्रेतसिद्धये): 4. The Vṛiddhi; performed on occasions of rejoicing or prosperity: 5. The Sapiṇḍana; offerings to all individual and to general ancestors: 6. The Párvaṇa Śráddha; offerings to the manes, on certain lunar days called Parvans, or day of full moon and new moon, and the eighth and fourteenth days of the lunar fortnight: 7. The Goshthí; for the advantage of a number of learned persons, or of an assembly of Brahmans, invited for the purpose: 8. The Śuddhi; one performed to purify a person from some defilement,—an expiatory Śráddha: 9. The Karmānga; one forming part of the initiatory ceremonies, or Saṃskáras, observed at conception, birth, tonsure, &c.: 10. The Daivika; to which the gods are invited: 11. The Yátrá Śráddha; held by a person going a journey: and, 12. The Pushṭi Śráddha; one performed to promote health and wealth. Of these, the four which are considered the most solemn are the rite performed for a parent, or near relative, lately deceased; that which is performed for kindred, collectively; that observed on certain lunar days; and that celebrated on occasions of rejoicing: अत्र पार्वणीकोद्दिष्ट-वृद्धिसपिण्डीकरणात्मकं चतुर्विधमेव मुख्यम् । Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 271.

\* युग्माद्देवांश्च पित्र्यांश्च सम्यक्सव्यक्कमाङ्घ्रिजान् ।  
पूजयेद्भोजयेच्चैव तन्मना नान्यमानसः ॥

"With mind intent thereon, i. e., on the son born, and on nothing else, let him duly circumambulate—keeping them on his left—Bráhmans, in couples, those set apart for the service of the gods and those set apart for the service of the manes; and let him worship and feed those same Bráhmans."

† Add "or to the north"; for the original has प्राङ्मुखोदमुखोऽपि वा।

and\* to Prajāpati, balls of food,<sup>1</sup> with curds, unbruised grain, and jujubes; and should perform, on every accession of good fortune, the rite by which the class of progenitors termed Nándimukha is propitiated.<sup>2</sup> A

<sup>1</sup> Manu directs the balls to be made from the remainder of the clarified butter constituting the previous oblation to the gods. III., 215. † Kullūka Bhaṭṭa explains, however, the oblation to consist partly of Anna (अन्न),—food, or boiled rice. The latter is the article of which the balls chiefly consist. Yājñavalkya ‡ directs them to be made of rice and sesamum-seeds. The Vāyu Purāṇa adds, to these, two ingredients, honey and butter: but various kinds of fruit, of pulse, and of grain, and water, frankincense, sugar, and milk, are, also, mixed up in the Piṇḍas. Their size, also, differs; and, according to Angiras, as quoted by Hemādri, in the Śrāddha Mayūkha, § they may be of the dimension of the fruit of the jujube, or of the hog-plum, of the fruit of the Bel, or of the wood-apple, or of a fowl's egg. Some authorities direct Piṇḍas of a different size for different Śrāddhas; prescribing them no larger than the wood-apple, at the first or pure funereal ceremony, and as big as a cocoa-nut, at the monthly and annual Śrāddha. In practice, the Piṇḍa is, usually, of such a magnitude, that it may be conveniently held by the hand.

<sup>2</sup> We have, here, the authority of the text for classing the Nándimukhas amongst the Pitṛis (see p. 98, *supra*). The verse is:

नान्दीमुखः पितृगणक्षेत्रे अग्निं पाषिर्ब ।  
प्रीयते तच्च कर्तव्यं पुरुषैः सर्ववृद्धिषु ॥

\* The original has *vá*, 'or'; the injunction allowing an option. The expressions here connected are *daivatir̥tha* and *kāya*, on which *vide supra*, p. 99, notes 1 and \*. The *daivatir̥tha* is sometimes called the *tir̥tha* of the Rishis,—*ār̥sha*.

† चींक्षु तस्माद्भविःशेषात्पिण्डान्मत्वा समाहितः ।  
औदकेनैव विधिना निर्वपेद्दक्षिणामुखः ॥

‡ ?

§ This work has Nīlakaṇṭha for its author. Hemādri wrote the *Śrāddha-kalpa*.



householder should diligently worship the Pitris so named, at the marriage of a son or daughter, on entering a new dwelling, on giving a name to a child, on performing his tonsure and other purificatory ceremonies,\* at the binding of the mother's hair during gestation, or on (first) seeing the face of a son, or the like. The Śráddha on such occasions, however, has been briefly alluded to. Hear now, O king, the rules for the performance of obsequial rites.

“Having washed the corpse with holy water, decorated it with garlands, and burnt it without the village, the kinsmen, having bathed with their clothes on, are to stand with their faces to the south, and offer libations (to the deceased), addressing him by name, and adding, ‘wherever thou mayest be.’<sup>1</sup> They then re-

---

And the same Gaṇa or class is presently again named:

**नान्दीमुखं पितृगणं पूजयेत्प्रयतो गृही ।**

The Mantra of the Vīddhi or festival Śráddha is, also, said, in the Nirṇaya Sindhu, to be नान्दीमुखेभ्यः पितृभ्यः स्वाहा । According to the authorities, however, which are cited in that work, there seems to be some uncertainty about the character of the Nándimukhas; and they are addressed both as Pitris and gods; being, in the former case, either the ancestors prior to the great-grandfather,—ancestors collectively, or a certain class of them; and, in the latter, being identified with the Viśwadevas, or a class of them called also Úrdhwavaktra. The term Nándimukha is, also, applied to the rite itself, or to the Vīddhi Śráddha, and to one addressed to maternal ancestors. Nirṇaya Sindhu, pp. 268, &c.

<sup>1</sup> “An oblation of water must be next presented from the joined palms of the hand, naming the deceased and the family

---

\* *Chūḍākarmádika.*

turn, along with the cattle (coming from pasture), to the village, and, upon the appearance of the stars, retire to rest, sleeping on mats spread upon the earth.\* Every day (whilst the mourning lasts), a cake (or ball) of food<sup>1</sup> is to be placed on the ground, (as an offering) to the deceased; and rice,† without flesh, is to be daily‡ eaten. Brahmans are to be fed for as many days as the mourner pleases; for the soul of the defunct derives satisfaction accordingly as his relatives are content with their entertainment.§ On the first day, or the third, or seventh, or ninth (after the death

from which he sprung, and saying, 'May this oblation reach thee.'" Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 244.|| The text has:

यच्च तच्च स्थितायैतदमुकायेति वादिनः ।

<sup>1</sup> The proper period of mourning is ten days, on each of which, offerings of cakes and libations of water are to be made to the deceased, augmenting the number of cakes each day, so that, on the last day, ten cakes are presented. When the period is shorter, the same number of ten cakes must be distributed amongst the several days; or they may be, all, presented on one day. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 429.

\* कटधर्मीकृतः कुर्युर्ममी सस्तरशायिनः ।

Here—compare p. 131, note, *supra*,—we encounter the unusual vocable *srastara*, with the variants *prastara*, *sahstara*, and *swastara*. Commentary A has *srastara*; commentary B, *prastara*: but, as both give the same definition, तृषण्णया, it is presumable that one or other of them is sophisticated as to the term defined.

On the expression कटधर्मीन् the commentator remarks प्रेतकृत्यानि.

† So the commentator explains *bhakta*.

‡ *Divd*, 'by day.'

§ प्रेतसृप्तिं तथा याति बन्धुवर्गेण भुञ्जता ।

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 159, 160.

of a person), his kinsmen should change their raiment,\* and bathe out of doors, and offer a libation of water, with (tila) sesamum-seeds. On the fourth day,<sup>1</sup> the ashes and bones should be collected; after which the body of one connected with the deceased by offerings of funeral cakes may be touched (by an indifferent person, without thereby incurring impurity); and those who are related only by presentation of water† are qualified for any occupation.<sup>2</sup> The former class of

<sup>1</sup> It should be, more correctly, on that day on which the mourning ceases, or, as previously mentioned, the first, third, seventh, or ninth: but the authorities vary; and, besides these, the second and fourth days, and certain days of the fortnight or month, are specified. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 432.

<sup>2</sup> They are no longer unclean. The Sapiṇḍas, or those connected by offerings of cakes to common ancestors, extend to seven degrees, ascending or descending; the Samānodakas, or those similarly connected by presentations of water, to fourteen degrees.‡

---

\* The words वस्त्रत्यागं \* छत्वा imply that the clothes should be laid aside for the second funeral ablution. As we have seen just above, they are to be retained during the first. According to some MSS., however, which have

ततोऽनु वस्त्रवर्णसु भुवि दद्यात्तिलोदकम् ।

instead of

वस्त्रत्यागं बहिः स्नानं छत्वा दद्यात्तिलोदकम् ।

there is no bathing prescribed for this latter occasion.

† Samānasalila It means the same as samānodaka.

‡ In the *Mitāksharā*, where it expatiates on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, II., 136, the following lines are quoted from Bṛihas-Manu:

सपिण्डता तु पुरुषे सप्तमे विनिवर्तते ।

समानोदकभावसु निवर्तताचतुर्दशतः ।

जन्मनाशोः स्मृतेरेके तत्परं गोचसुच्यते ॥

“The relation of the *sapiṇḍas* (or, kindred connected by the funeral oblation,) ceases with the seventh person: and that of *samānodakas* (or,

relatives may use beds;\* but they must still refrain from unguents and flowers, and must observe continence, after the ashes and bones have been collected, (until the mourning is over). When the deceased is a child,† or one who is abroad,‡ or who has been degraded, or a spiritual preceptor,§ the period of uncleanness is but brief,|| and the ceremonies with fire and water are discretionary.¶ The food of a family in which a kinsman is deceased is not to be partaken of for ten days;<sup>1</sup> and, during, that period, gifts, acceptance, sacrifice, and sacred study are suspended. The

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, a mere guest, or stranger, is not to partake of it. The food directed to be given to Brahmans is given, in general, only to the relatives of the deceased who are already unclean. In this respect, our text and the modern practice seem to differ

---

those connected by a common libation of water,) extends to the fourteenth degree; or, as some affirm, it reaches as far as the memory of birth and name extends. This is signified by *gotra* (or, the relation of family-name)." Colebrooke's *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, pp. 351, 352.

Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, V., 60.

\* Add 'and seats', *āsana*.

† That has not yet cut its teeth, says the commentator.

‡ And has been so for upwards of a year, the commentary adds.

As explanatory of what is meant by "abroad", the following stanza is cited:

महानखनारं यच्च गिरिषी व्यवधायकः ।

वाचो यच्च विमिश्रिते तद्देशान्तरमिष्यते ॥

§ *Guru*. A common variant, and preferred by commentary A, is *muni*.

|| *Sadyas*. It is stated, by the scholiast, that it lasts only three nights, for one who dies abroad.

¶ बाले देशान्तरस्थे च पतिते च गुरौ मृते ।

सद्यः शौचं तथेच्छातो जलाग्न्युद्वन्धनादिषु ॥

After "brief" read: "likewise, optionally, as regards persons who die from water, fire, or hanging."

term of impurity for a Brahman is ten days;\* for a Kshattriya,† twelve; for a Vaiśya, half a month; and a whole month, for a Śúdra.<sup>1</sup> On the first day (after uncleanness ceases), the nearest relation of the deceased should feed Brahmans at his pleasure, but in uneven numbers, and offer to the deceased a ball of rice upon holy grass‡ placed near the residue of the food that has been eaten. After the guests have been fed, the mourner, according to his caste, is to touch water, a weapon, a goad, or a staff; as he is purified by such contact. He may then resume the duties prescribed for his caste, and follow the avocation ordinarily pursued by its members.

“The Śráddha enjoined for an individual§ is to be repeated on the day of his death, (in each month, for a year),<sup>2</sup> but without the prayers and rites performed

---

from the primitive system, as described by Manu, III., 187.|| The eleventh or twelfth day is the term on which the Śráddha which crowns the whole of the funeral rites is to be performed, and when Brahmans are to be invited. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 437.

<sup>1</sup> The number of Piṇḍas, however, is, for each case, the same, or ten. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 429.

<sup>2</sup> So Manu, III., 251.¶ It may be doubted if the monthly

---

\* The ceremonial uncleanness of the Brāhman lasts as long as that of the Kshattriya, according to my MSS., which here read:

विप्रस्नेतद्वादशाहं राजन्यस्याप्यशीचकम् ।

But the Translator has the support of the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, V., 83.

† *Rājanya*, in the original.

‡ *Darbha*.

§ This phrase is to render *ekoddishta*.

॥ पूर्वेषुरपरेषुर्वा आहकर्मसुपस्थिते ।

निमग्नयेत त्रयरात्रस्यविप्रान्ययोदितान् ॥

¶ ?

on the first occasion, and without offerings to the Viśwadevas.\* A single ball of food is to be offered to the deceased, as the purification of one person; and Brahmans are to be fed.† The Brahmans are to be asked, by the sacrificer, if they are satisfied; and, upon their assent, the prayer 'May this ever satisfy such a one' (the deceased,) is to be recited.‡

"This is the Śrāddha called Ekoddishṭa, which is to be performed (monthly,) to the end of a twelve-month (from the death of a person); at the expiration of which, the ceremony called Sapiṇḍana§ is to be observed. The practices of this rite are the same as those of the monthly obsequies; but a lustration is to be made with four vessels of water, perfumes, and sesamum. One of these vessels is considered as dedicated to the deceased; the other three, to the progenitors in general; and the contents of the former are

Śrāddha was part of the ancient system, although Kullūka Bhāṭṭa supposes it to be referred to (v. 248), and supplies the fancied omission of the text.

\* मृताहनि च कर्तव्यमेकोद्दिष्टमतः परम् ।

आहुतादिक्वियादिवनियोगरहितं हि तत् ॥

The commentator says that the Viśwe devas are here intended; and the Translator has substituted his explanation.

† एकोऽर्घ्यश्च दातव्यस्तथैवैकं पवित्रकम् ।

प्रेताय पिण्डो दातव्यो भुक्तवत्सु द्विजातिषु ॥

‡ प्रसन्नं तत्राभिरतिर्यजमानैर्दिव्यज्जनाम् ।

अथज्जममुकस्तेति वक्तव्यं विरतौ तत्रा ॥

§ The term here used, in the original, is *sapiṇḍakarma*, as a little below.

to be transferred to the other three,\* by which the deceased becomes included in the class of ancestors, to whom worship is to be addressed, with all the ceremonies of the Śrāddha. The persons who are competent to perform the obsequies (of relations connected by the offering of the cake) are the son, grandson, great-grandson, a kinsman of the deceased,† the descendants of a brother, or the posterity of one allied by funeral offerings. In absence of all these, (the ceremony may be instituted) by those related by presentations of water only, or those connected, by offerings of cakes or water, to maternal ancestors. Should both families (in the male line) be extinct, the last obsequies may be performed by women, or by the associates of the deceased in religious or social institutions,‡ or by any one who becomes possessed of the property of a deceased kinsman.§

“Obsequial rites are of three descriptions,—initiative, intermediate, and subsequent.<sup>1</sup> The first are those which are observed after the burning (of the corpse),

<sup>1</sup> Pūrva, ‘first’; Madhyama, ‘middle’; and Uttara, ‘last’.

\* पाचं प्रेतस्व तत्रैकं पाचययुतं तथा ।

सेचयेत्पितृपात्रेषु प्रेतपाचं नृप त्रिषु ॥

† *Bandhu*. “*Bandhu*, cognate or distant kin, corresponding nearly to the Cognati of the Roman law.” Colebrooke’s *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, p. 352, note.

‡ The phrase “associates of the deceased,” &c. is to represent *sanghātāntargata*, on which the commentator observes: संघातः सार्धो याचिकसमुदायः । तच्च मृतस्य तदन्तर्गतेः । प्रेतक्रियार्येत्यर्थः । समानप्रवरसमानशास्त्रादिरूपः संघात इति केचित् ।

§ *Utsanna-bandhu*.

until the touching of water, weapons, &c., (or, until the cessation of uncleanness); the intermediate ceremonies are the Śrāddhas called Ekoddishṭa, which are offered every month; and the subsequent rites are those which follow the Sapīṇḍīkaraṇa, when the deceased is admitted amongst the ancestors of his race: and the ceremonies are, thenceforth, (general or) ancestral. The first set of rites (as essential) are to be performed by the kindred of the father or mother,—whether connected by the offering of the cake or of water,—by the associates of the deceased,\* or by the prince who inherits his property. The first and the last rites are, both, to be performed by sons and other relations, and by daughter's sons, and their sons; and so are the sacrifices on the day of the person's death. The last class, or ancestral rites, are to be performed annually, with the same ceremonies as are enjoined for the monthly obsequies; and they may be, also, performed by females. As the ancestral rights are, therefore, most universal, I will describe to you, O king, at what seasons, and in what manner, they should be celebrated."†

---

\* *Saṅghātāntargata.*

† तस्मादुत्तरसंज्ञा या क्रिया तां शृणु पार्श्व ।  
यदा यदा च कर्तव्या विधिना येन जानघ ॥



## CHAPTER XIV.

Of occasional Śráddhas or obsequial ceremonies: when most efficacious, and at what places.

AURVA proceeded.—“Let the devout performer of an ancestral oblation<sup>1</sup> propitiate Brahmá, Indra, Rudra,

---

<sup>1</sup> We may here take the opportunity of inquiring who are meant by the Pitris: and, generally speaking, they may be called a race of divine beings, inhabiting celestial regions of their own, and receiving into their society the spirits of those mortals for whom the rite of fellowship in obsequial cakes with them, the Sapińdíkarańa, has been duly performed. The Pitris collectively, therefore, include a man's ancestors; but the principal members of this order of beings are of a different origin. The Váyu, Matsya, and Padma Puráńas, and Hari Vamśa, profess to give an account of the original Pitris. The account is much the same, and, for the most part, in the same words, in all. They agree\* in distinguishing the Pitris into seven classes; three of which are without form (अमूर्तयः), or composed of intellectual, not elementary, substance, and assuming what forms they please; and four are corporeal (समूर्तयः). When they come to the enumeration of the particular classes, they somewhat differ; and the accounts, in all the works, are singularly imperfect. According to a legend given by the Váyu and the Hari Vamśa, the first Pitris were the sons of the gods. The gods, having offended Brahmá, by neglecting to worship him, were cursed, by him, to become fools; but, upon their repentance, he directed them to apply to their sons, for instruction. Being taught, accordingly, the rites of ex-

---

\* From the *Harivamśa*, śl. 932:

सन्ति जयतां श्रेष्ठ सर्वे पितृगणाः क्षुताः ।  
चत्वारो मूर्तिमन्तो वै जय एषाममूर्तयः ॥

the Aświns,\* the sun, fire, the Vasus, the winds,† the Viśwadevas, the sages, birds, men, animals,‡ reptiles,§

piation and penance, by their sons, they addressed them as fathers; whence the sons of the gods were the first Pitṛis.

ते पुत्रानब्रुवन्प्रीता लब्धसंज्ञा दिवौकसः ।

यूयं वै पितरोऽस्माकं यैर्वयं प्रतिबोधिताः ॥

So the Matsya has:

मन्वन्तरेषु जायन्ते पितरो देवसूनवः ।

‘The Pitṛis are born, in the Manwantaras, as the sons of the gods.’ The Hari Vamśa ¶ makes the sons assume the character of fathers; addressing them, ‘Depart, children:’

गम्यतां पुत्रका एवं पुत्रैरुक्ताश्च ते तदा ।

Again, the Vāyu Purāṇa declares the seven orders of Pitṛis to have been, originally, the first gods, the Vairājas, whom Brahmā, with the eye of Yoga, beheld in the eternal spheres, and who are the gods of the gods:

लोकाः सान्त्वानिका नाम यत्र तिष्ठन्ति भास्वराः ।

ते वैराजा इति ख्याता देवानां दिवि देवताः ॥

\* \* \* \* \*

आदिदेवा इति ख्याता महासत्त्वा महौजसः । \*\*

\* \* \* \* \*

तेषां सप्त समाख्याता गण्यो लोकोपूजिताः ।

अमूर्तस्त्रयलोषां चत्वारस्तु समूर्तयः ॥

Again, in the same work, we have the incorporeal Pitṛis called Vairājas,†† from being the sons of the Prajāpati Virāja:‡‡

\* Nāsatyas, their synonym, in the original.

† *Māruta* is the Sanskrit expression. For the Maruts, or *Mārutas*, deities so called, see Vol. II., p. 79. ‡ *Paśu*. § *Sarīśīpa*.

¶ This is from the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. Compare the *Harivamśa*, śl. 917, 918.

¶ Śl. 912.

\*\* Here I have filled out a line which Professor Wilson, it should seem, was not enabled, from the illegibility of his MSS., to decipher in its entirety. †† See Vol. II., p. 227, text and note 1.

‡‡ For “the patriarch Vairāja”, see Vol. I., p. 177; and Vol. II., p. 86, and p. 262, note †. From Vol. I., p. 104, note 2, and p. 108, note 1, it

progenitors, and all existent things, by offering adoration to them monthly, on the fifteenth day of the

अमूर्तयः पितृगणाः पुत्रास्ते वै प्रजापतेः ।

विराजस्व द्विजाः श्रेष्ठा वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ॥

The Matsya agrees with this latter statement, and adds, that the gods worship them:

अमूर्तयः पितृगणा विराजस्व प्रजापतेः ।

यजन्ति यान्देवगणा वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ॥

The Hari Vamśa\* has the same statement, but more precisely distinguishes the Vairājas as one class only of the incorporeal Pitṛis. The commentator† states the same, calling the three incorporeal Pitṛis, Vairājas, Agnishwāttas, and Barhishads;‡ and the four corporeal orders, Sukālas, Āngirasas, Suswadhas,§ and Somapas. The Vairājas are described as the fathers of Mená,|| the mother of Umá. Their abode is variously termed the Sántānika, Sanātana, and Soma loka.¶ As the posterity of Virāja, they are the Somasads of Manu.\*\* The other classes of Pitṛis

seems that Vairāja is one with Manu. Who, then, is the *prajāpati* Vairāja? And was Vairāja corrupted into Virāja? Nilakantha says that Virāja's sons were *mánasa*, which term he explains by *manomātraśarīra*. Arjuna Miśra, another scholiast on the *Harivamśa*, identifies Virāja with Brahmā:

\* Śi. 935, 936:

लोकाः सनातना नाम यत्र तिष्ठन्ति भास्वराः ।

अमूर्तयः पितृगणास्ते वै पुत्राः प्रजापतेः ॥

विराजस्व द्विजश्रेष्ठ वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ।

यजन्ति तान्देवगणा विधिक्षुष्टेन कर्मणा ॥

† Nilakantha.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 156, note 2.

§ Vide *infra*, p. 164, note \*\*.

|| A different paternity is assigned to Mená in Vol. I., pp. 156, 157. Also vide *infra*, p. 162, note ||.

¶ For their residence in the Tapoloka, &c., see Vol. II., p. 227, text and note 1.

\*\* In III., 195, we read that the Somasads were sons of Virāj:

विराजुताः सोमसदः साध्वानां पितरः स्मृताः ।

अभिष्मन्ताश्च देवानां मारीच्या लोकविश्रुताः ॥

See note †† in the preceding page.

moon's wane (or dark fortnight),\* or on the eighth day of the same period in certain months,† or at particular‡ seasons, as I will explain.

the three Purāṇas agree with Manu in representing as the sons of the patriarchs, and, in general, assign to them the same offices and posterity.§ They are the following:—

Agnishwāttas—sons of Marīchi, and Pitṛis of the gods (Manu, || Matsya, Padma): living in Soma-loka, and parents of Achchhodā (Matsya, Padma, Hari Vamśa¶). The Vāyu\*\* makes them residents of Viraja-loka, sons of Pulastya, †† Pitṛis of the demigods and demons, and parents of Pivari; omitting‡‡ the next order of

\* This, the commentator observes, is the *darśa-śrāddha*.

† For these months,—three, or four, according to different authorities,—*vide infra*, p. 168, text and note ‡.

‡ *Kāmya*.

§ In the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, XCVI., 40—42, the Agnishwāttas, Barhishads, Ájyapas, and Somapas are attached to the east, south, west, and north, respectively.

|| See the quotation in note || in the preceding page.

¶ *Śl.* 953, 954:

लोकाः सोमपदा नाम मरीचैर्यत्र वै सुताः ।  
पितरो दिवि वर्तन्ते देवास्त्राभावयन्नुत ॥  
अभिष्वात्ता इति ख्याताः सर्व एवामितौजसः ।  
एतेषां मानसी कन्या अक्षोदा नाम निम्बगा ॥

\*\* विरजा नाम ते लोका दिवि रोचन्ति ते गणाः ।  
अभिष्वात्ताः स्मृतास्तत्र पितरो भास्वरप्रभाः ॥  
तत्र ते दानवगणा रक्षोगन्धर्वकिनराः ।  
भूतसर्पपिशाचाश्च भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥  
एते पुत्राः समाख्याताः पुलहस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
त्रय एते गणाः प्रोक्ता धर्ममूर्तिधराः शुभाः ॥  
एतेषां मानसी कन्या पीवरी नाम विद्युता ।  
योगिनी योगिपत्नी च योगिमाता तथैव च ॥

†† My MSS. have Pulaha. See the last note.

‡‡ Without doubt, there is a hiatus in my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. These contain, nearly word for word, the three lines—all but their

“When a householder finds that any circumstance has occurred, or a distinguished guest has arrived, on

Pitr̥is, to whom these circumstances more accurately refer. The commentator on the Hari Vamśa\* derives the name from Agnishu (अग्निषु), ‘in or by oblations to fire,’ and Átta (आत्ताः), ‘obtained,’ ‘invoked.’

Barhishads—sons of Atri, and Pitr̥is of the demons (Manu†): sons of Pulastya, Pitr̥is of the demons, residents in Vaibhrāja,‡ fathers of Pívari (Matsya, Padma, Hari Vamśa§).

opening, निरता दिवि—ending the extract in note § in p. 165, *infra*; and there was, probably, mention, in what preceded, of the Barhishads. These personages were, then, it seems, regarded as sons of Vasishtha, as dwellers in Jyotirbhāsin, and as parents of a mind-born daughter by name Go. It should be added, that my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* elsewhere mention the Barhishads again and again; as in the line:

अग्निष्वात्ता बर्हिषदः पितरो द्विविधाः स्मृताः ।

Also see Vol. II., p. 303, notes 1 and ५.

\* अग्निषु अग्निसाधेषु कर्मसु आत्ताः गृहीताः पित्र्यादिविष्टिषु ।  
Nīlakaṇṭha.

† III., 196:

इत्यदानवयक्षाणां गन्धर्वोरगरक्षसाम् ।

सुपर्णकिंनराणां च स्मृता बर्हिषदोऽचिजाः ॥

‡ Nīlakaṇṭha, commentator on the *Harivamśa*, glosses this word thus:

वैधात्रा इति । विधात्रः सूर्यस्त्रेमे वैधात्राः ।

§ *Sl.* 974—977:

वैधात्रा नाम लोकास्ते दिवि भान्ति सुदर्शनाः ।

यच्च बर्हिषदो नाम पितरो दिवि विष्नुताः ॥

तान्दानवगणाः सर्वे यच्चगन्धर्वराक्षसाः ।

नागाः सर्पाः सुपर्णाश्च भावयन्त्वमितीजसः ॥

एते पुत्रा महात्मानः पुत्रस्त्वस्त्व प्रजापतेः ।

महात्मानो महाभागाल्लोकोयुक्तास्तपस्विनः ॥

एतेषां मानसी कन्या पीवरी नाम विष्नुता ।

योना च योनिपत्नी च योनिमाता तथैव च ॥

Also see note ‡ in the preceding page.

which account ancestral ceremonies are appropriate, he should celebrate them.\* He should offer a volun-

These three are the formless or incorporeal Pitris.

Somapas,—descendants of Bhṛigu, or sons of Kavi by Swadhā, the daughter of Agni;† and Pitris of the Brahmans (Manu‡ and Vāyu Purāṇa§). The Padma calls them Ūshmapas. The Hari Vamśa || calls the Somapas—to whom it ascribes the same de-

\* आद्याहमागतं द्रव्यं विशिष्टमथवा द्विजम् ।

आद्यं कुर्वीत विज्ञाय \* \* \* \* \*

† Swadhā appears, in Vol. I., p. 109, as daughter of Daksha and Prasūti. For her husbands, *vide ibid.*, pp. 156, 157. Also *vide supra*, p. 122, note ‡, *ad finem*.

Nilakaṇṭha, commentator on the *Harivamśa*, says that Hiraṇyagarbha, mentioned in the passage in note ||, below, intends Agni: कवेर्दुहितरि स्वधायाम् । हिरण्यगर्भस्यापि: सुता: ।

‡ III., 197, 198:

सोमपा नाम विप्राणां चक्षियाणां हविर्भुजः ।

वैश्वानामाज्यपा नाम शूद्राणां तु सुकालिनः ।

सोमपास्तु कवेः पुत्रा हविष्मन्तोऽङ्गिरःसुताः ।

पुलस्त्यस्याज्यपाः पुत्रा वसिष्ठस्य सुकालिनः ॥

§ My five MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* do not here tally with those on which Professor Wilson depended.

|| Śl. 997—999:

उत्पन्ना ये स्वधायां ते सोमपा वै कवेः सुताः ।

हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुताः शूद्रासाम्भावयन्त्युत ॥

मानसा नाम ते लोका येष तिष्ठन्ति ते दिवि ।

तेषां वै मानसी कन्या गर्भदा सरितां वरा ॥

यां भावयन्ति भूतानि दक्षिणापथगामिनीम् ।

अग्निं च सदस्त्र्योः सा पुत्रकुत्सपरिग्रहः ॥

The Somapas are here—as in the *Matsya-purāṇa*,—said to dwell in Mānasa, and to have the river Narmadā for mind-born daughter. In Śl. 941, Menā, too, is their mind-born daughter. But *vide supra*, p. 159, note ||. Compare, also, note ‡ in p. 165, *infra*.

tary sacrifice, upon any atmospheric portent,\* at the equinoctial and solstitial periods, at eclipses of the sun

scent as the Váyu,—the Pitris of the Śúdras; and the Sukálas, the Pitris of the Brahmans.†

Havishmata‡:—in the solar sphere, sons of Angiras, and Pitris of the Kshattriyas (Manu, § Váyu, || Matsya, Padma, Hari Vamśa ¶).

\* *Vyatipáta*. On the malignant aspect so called, an astrological *yoga*, see Professor Whitney's comment at p. 236 of the American translation of the *Sūrya-siddhānta*: or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187; Vol. II., p. 363.

† In the *Nirṇayasindhu*, III., B, fol. 11 r, Bombay edition, the *Nandi-purāṇa*—not called an *Upapurāṇa*—is quoted as follows:

अभिध्वान्ता ब्राह्मणानां पितरः परिकीर्तिताः ।

राक्षां बर्हिषदो नाम विशां काव्याः प्रकीर्तिताः ।

सुकाशिनस्तु शुद्राणां व्यामा स्नेहान्धजातिषु ॥

Here the Agnishwāttas are declared to be the *pitris* of the first caste; the Barhishads, of the second; the Kávyas, of the third; the Sukálin, of the fourth; and the Vyámas,—‘Fumes’, mere smoke,—of *mlechchhas* and the lowest castemen.

Of the Vyámas I know of no mention except in passages from the *Nandi-purāṇa*, for which see Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., p. 81; also, note || in the next page, and p. 166, *infra*, note ‡.

‡ Here I have corrected “Havishmantas”. § See the next note.

|| As is seen in note ‡ in the preceding page, a Havishmat is synonymously denominated a Havirbhuj. A third designation is Upahúta, which occurs in the following passage and elsewhere:

मरीचिगर्भीसे लोकान्समाश्रित्य दिवि स्थिताः ।

एते ह्यङ्घ्रिरसः पुषाः सार्धैः सह विवर्धिताः ॥

उपहृताः स्मृतास्तु पितरो भास्वरा दिवि ।

ताम्बन्निषण्णा दृष्ट्वा भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥

एतेषां मानसी कन्या यमोदा नाम विष्णुता ।

पत्नी सा विश्वमहतः सुषा वै विश्वशर्मणाः ॥

These beings are here said to inhabit Marichigarbha, and to have a mind-born daughter Yaśodá.

Nilakantha thus comments on the first term in this passage: मरीचि-गर्भेण । सूर्यरश्मिप्रकाशान् ।

¶ In *Æ*. 988—990, we have almost the very words of the extract in the

and moon, on the sun's entrance into a zodiacal sign, upon unpropitious aspects \* of the planets and as-

Ájyapas—sons of Kardama, Pitris of the Vaiśyas, in the Kámaduha-loka † (Manu, ‡ &c.); but the lawgiver calls them the sons of Pulastya. § The Pitris of the Vaiśyas are called Kávyas, in the Nandi Upapurāṇa; || and, in the Hari Varṇa ¶ and its comment, they are termed Suswadhas, \*\* sons of Kardama, descended from Pulaha.

preceding note; except that the line is omitted which names the *pitris* under description, and that Yaśodá is said to be daughter-in-law of Vídhdhāsarman.

\* “Unpropitious aspects” is to represent *pidā*, which signifies ‘occultation.’

† This seems to be a mistake. The *Matsya-purāṇa* has Kámadugha; with which compare the *Mahābhārata*, *Vana-parvan*, śl. 15460. In the *Harivahśa*, the name is Kámaga. See note ¶ in this page.

‡ *Vide supra*, p. 162, note ‡.

§ We read, in the *Váyu-purāṇa*:

आज्यपा नाम पितरः कर्दमस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
समुत्पन्नस्य पुलहादुत्पन्नास्य च पुनः ॥  
लोकेष्वेतेषु वर्तन्ते कामनेषु विहंगमाः ।  
एतान्विश्रमयाः शब्दे भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥  
एतेषां मानसी कन्या विरजा नाम विश्रुता ।  
ययातेर्वननी साध्वी पत्नी सा नृपस्य तु ॥

It is stated here,—compare note ¶, below,—that the Ájyapas live in Kámaga, and that they have a mind-born daughter Virajā.

|| See note † in the last page, and p. 166, note ‡, *infra*; also, Vol. I., Preface, p. LXXXVII.

¶ Śl. 993—996:

मुखधा नाम पितरः कर्दमस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
समुत्पन्नासु पुलहान्महात्मानो दिव्यर्षभाः ॥  
लोकेषु दिवि वर्तन्ते कामनेषु विहंगमाः ।  
तांश्च विश्रमयास्तां भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥  
तेषां च मानसी कन्या विरजा नाम विश्रुता ।  
ययातेर्वननी ब्रह्मन्महिषी नृपस्य च ॥

\*\* My best MSS. yield Sumedhas, which reading seems to be preferred by Arjuna Miśra. The *Matsya-purāṇa* appears to exhibit Swaswadhas.



terisms, on dreaming unlucky dreams, and on eating the grain of the year's harvest.\* The Pitris derive sa-

Sukálas—sons of Vasishtha, and Pitris of the Śúdras (Manu† and Váyu Purāṇa ‡). They are not mentioned in the Padma. The Matsya inserts the name and descent, but specifies them as amongst the incorporeal Pitris:

अमूर्तिमन्ः पितरो वसिष्ठस्य मुकालिनः ।

नाम्ना तु मानसाः सर्वे सर्वे ते धर्ममूर्तयः ॥

It may be suspected that the passage is corrupt. The Hari Vamśa § makes the Sukálas sons of Vasishtha, the Pitris of the Brahmans; and gives the title of Somapas to the Pitris of the Śúdras. In general, this work follows the Váyu, but with omissions and transpositions, as if it had carelessly mutilated its original.

\* *Navasasyāgama.*

† See note ‡ in page 162, *supra.*

‡ They are there called Sukálas:

मुकाला नाम पितरो वसिष्ठस्य प्रजापतेः ।

हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुताः शुद्धास्माभावयन्त्युत ॥

मानसा नाम ते लोका वर्तन्ते यत्र ते दिवि ।

एतेषां मानसी कन्या नर्मदा सरितां वरा ।

सा भावयति भूतानि दक्षिणापथनामिनी ॥

जननी वसदक्षोर्हि पुत्रकुत्सपरिग्रहः ।

The personages here spoken of are said to have their home in Mánasa; and a mind-born daughter is affiliated on them, in the form of the river Narmadá. Compare note || in p. 162, *supra.*

For discrepancies between this extract and that in the next note, additional to those pointed out by the Translator, *vide supra*, p. 160, note ‡.

The *Matsya-purāṇa*, by evident corruption, gives the Sukálas—as it calls them—the synonym Mánasas.

§ *Śi.* 985, 986:

मुकाला नाम पितरो वसिष्ठस्य प्रजापतेः ।

निरता दिवि लोकेषु ज्योतिर्भासिषु भार्गव ॥

सर्वकामसमुद्देशेषु द्विजास्माभावयन्त्युत ।

तेषां वै मानसी कन्या गौर्नाम्ना दिवि विमुता ॥

tisfaction, for eight years, from ancestral offerings upon the day of new moon when the star of the conjunc-

Besides these Pitris or progenitors, other heavenly beings\* are, sometimes, made to adopt a similar character. Thus, Manu† says: "The wise call our fathers Vasus; our paternal grandfathers, Rudras; our paternal great-grandfathers, Ādityas; agreeably to a text of the Vedas:" that is, these divine beings are to be meditated upon, along with, and as not distinct from, progenitors. Hemādri quotes the Nandi Upapurāṇa‡ for a different practice, and directs Vishnu to be identified with the father; Brahmā, with the grandfather; and Śiva, with the great-grandfather. This, however, is Śaiva innovation. The Vaishṇavas direct Aniruddha to be regarded as one's-self; and Pradyumna, Sankarshaṇa, and Vāsudeva, as the three ancestors. Again, they are identified with Varuṇa, Prājāpatya, and Agni; or, again, with months, seasons, and years. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 284. It may be doubted how far any of these correctly represent the original notions inculcated by the texts of the Vedas, from which, § in the most essential particulars, they are derived.

\* Also *vide supra*, p. 98, note †; p. 163, note †. The Saunyas and Kāvyas are mentioned in Vol. II., p. 303, text and note 1; also, with the Agnidagdhas and Anagnidagdhas, in the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 199:

अग्निदग्धानग्निदग्धान्वाक्वाक्वर्हिषदस्तथा ।

अग्निष्वात्तांश्च सौम्यांश्च विप्राणामेव निर्दिशेत् ॥

In Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, the Agnidagdhas are said to be certain *pitris* "who, when alive, kept up the household flame, and presented oblations with fire"; the Anagnidagdhas, *pitris*, "apparently, who, when alive, did not observe religious rites."

† III., 284:

वसुत्वदन्ति वै पितृसुद्रांश्चैव पितामहान् ।

प्रपितामहांस्त्वादित्वाञ्श्रुतिरेषा सनातनी ॥

‡ Some extracts from the *Nandi-purāṇa*,—as Hemādri, like the *Nirṇaya-sindhu*, calls the work here named,—and further particulars touching the *pitris*, will be found in a note at the end of the volume.

For the *Nandi-purāṇa*, *vide supra*, p. 163, note †.

§ Where?

tion<sup>1</sup> is Anurádhá,\* Visákhá, or Swáti; and, for twelve years, when it is Pushya, Ádrá,† or Punarvasu. It is not easy‡ for a man to effect his object, who is desirous of worshipping the Pitris, or the gods, on a day of new moon when the stars are those of Dhanishthá, Púrvabhádrapadá, or Śatabhishaj.§ Hear, also, an account of another class of Śráddhas, which afford especial contentment to progenitors,|| as ex-

<sup>1</sup> When the Yogatára, or principal star seen, is the chief star or stars of these asterisms or lunar mansions, respectively. See the table given by Mr. Colebrooke: Asiatic Researches, Vol. IX., p. 346.¶ The first three named in the text are stars in Scorpio, Libra, and Arcturus; the second three are stars in Cancer, Orion, and Gemini; and the third are stars in the Dolphin, Pegasus, and Aquarius.

\* The Sanskrit has its synonym, Maitra.

† Raudra, its synonym, is the word used in the original.

‡ वासवावेकपादुषे पितृणां तृप्तिमिच्छताम् ।

दास्यं चाप्यमावास्या देवानामपि दुर्बभा ॥

"For those who wish to propitiate the progenitors, or the gods, a day of new moon under the asterism Vāsava, or Ajaikapád, or Varuṇa, is hard to find."

Compare what is said of Dhanishthá in p. 169, *infra*.

§ Substituted for "Śatabhishá". The three names in the Sanskrit are as in the last note. The commentator wrongly interprets Vāsava by Jyeshthá.

|| नवसृषेष्वावास्या यदितेष्ववनीपते ।

तदा तृप्तिप्रदं आस्यं पितृणां शुश्रू चापरम् ॥

"When, O king, the day of new moon falls under any of these nine asterisms, then exequial rites are propitiatory of the progenitors. And listen further."

This stanza comes immediately after that in note ‡, above. The Translator passed by the first line of it, and connected the second with what follows; namely:

गीतं सनत्कुमारेण यदेजाय महात्मने ।

पुच्छते पितृभक्ताय श्रद्धयावगताय च ॥

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. II., table opposite p. 322.

plained, by Sanatkumāra, (the son of Brahmā), to the magnanimous Purúravas,\* when, full of faith and devotion to the Pitris, he inquired (how he might please them). The third lunar day of the month Vaiśākha (April, May), and the ninth of Kārttika (October, November), in the light fortnight; the thirteenth of Nabha (July, August), and the fifteenth of Māgha (January, February), in the dark fortnight; are called, by ancient teachers, the anniversaries of the first day of a Yuga or age (Yugādya), and are esteemed most sacred. On these days, water mixed with sesamum-seeds should be regularly presented to the progenitors of mankind; as well as on every solar and lunar eclipse; on the eighth lunations of the dark fortnights of Āgrahāyaṇa, Pausa, and Māgha† (November—February);‡ on the two days commencing the solstices, when the nights

\* Called, in the Sanskrit, by his metronym, Aila, i. e., son of Ilā.

† For an account of the *māṃsāshtakā* festival, see Professor Wilson's *Essays and Lectures*, &c., Vol. II., pp. 181, 182. Also *vide supra*, p. 106, note †.

‡ The text has only "on the three eighth days after the full moon", चिष्वष्टकासु; the months not being specified: but their names are stated in recent copies of commentary A,—though not in old ones, nor in commentary B,—in the following couplet, professedly taken from the *Kūrma-purāṇa*:

मार्गशीर्षे तथा पुष्ये माघमासे तथैव च ।

तिथौऽष्टकाः समाख्याताः कृष्णपक्षे च सूरिभिः ॥

The months here named are Mārgaśīrsha, Pushya,—a rare substitute for Pausa,—and Māgha. I have, accordingly, corrected the Translator's "Āgrahāyaṇa, Māgha, and Phālguna (December—February)."

According to Āśwalāyana's *Gṛihya-sūtra*, II., IV., 1, the great *ashtakās* are four in number, coming in the frosty and the dewy seasons, that is to say, in Mārgaśīrsha, Pausa, Māgha, and Phālguna. Śāṅkhāyana, in his *Gṛihya-sūtra*, recognizes but three. See Dr. Stenzler's *Āśvalāyana*, Part II., p. 71; also, Kullūka and Medhātithi on the *Māna-vadharmasāstra*, IV., 150.

and days alternately begin to diminish; on those days which are the anniversaries of the beginning of the Manwantaras; when the sun is in the path of the goat; and on all occurrences of meteoric phenomena.\* A Śráddha at these seasons contents the Pitris for a thousand years: such is the secret which they have imparted. The fifteenth day of the dark half of the month Mágha, when united with the conjunction of the asterism over which Varuṇa presides (Śatabhishaj†), is a season of no little sanctity, when offerings are especially grateful to the progenitors. Food and water presented by men who are of respectable families, when the asterism Dhanishthá is combined with the day of new moon, content the Pitris for ten thousand years; whilst they repose for a whole age, when satisfied by offerings made on the day of new moon when Ārdrá is the lunar mansion. §

\* चन्द्रायो माधवमासि यत्र  
दिनचयश्चाप्ययनद्वयं च ।  
मन्वन्तरास्त्रयस्यैव  
ऋचा गवस्य व्यतिपातकालः ॥

These verses occur in only a few of my MSS. Commentary B recognizes them, but in silence; while commentary A omits them. Professor Wilson's translation supposes readings materially different from those here given.

On *Chháya gajasya*, "the shadow of the elephant", see Vol. II., p. 264, note \*; and pp. 276, 277; also, the *Laws of the Mánava*, III., 274. For *vyatipáta*,—the same as *vyatipáta*,—see p. 163, note \*, *supra*.

Compare, respecting the seasons most appropriate for exequial offerings, the *Laws of the Mánava*, III., 122, 276; IV., 150; also, the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 217, 218. † Altered from "Śatabhishá."

‡ *Samagra*. There is a variant, *sahasra*, 'a thousand.'

§ तत्रैव चेन्नाद्रपदास्तु पूर्वाः  
काले तदा चत्वारिंशते पितृभ्यः ।

“He who, after having offered food and libations to the Pitris, bathes in the Ganges, Satlaj,\* Vipásá (Beas), Saraswatí,† or the Gomatí at Naimisha,‡ expiates all his sins. The Pitris also say: ‘After having received satisfaction for a twelvemonth, we shall further derive gratification by libations offered, by our descendants, at some place of pilgrimage, at the end of the dark fortnight of Mágha.’§ The songs of the Pitris confer purity of heart, integrity of wealth, prosperous seasons, perfect rites, and devout faith,—all that men can desire. Hear the verses that constitute those songs, by listening to which all those advantages will be secured, O prince, by you:|| ‘That enlightened

आजं परां तुष्टिमुपेत तेन  
युगं समयं पितरः स्वपन्ति ॥

This is the only reading that I find; and the asterism mentioned is Púrvabhádrapadá,—not “Árdrá”, which, on a rapid glance, might be surmised in the first line.

\* Śatadrú, in the original.

† See, for the Śatadrú, Vipásá, and Saraswatí rivers, Vol. II., pp. 130, 131, and 142—144.

‡ In the Sanskrit, *Naimisha-gomatí*, the Gomatí of the country—apparently—in which lies the Naimisha forest, as distinguished from the better-known Gomatí in Oude; for which see Vol. II., p. 146, text and note 3. A third Gomatí, a feeder of the Sindhu, is spoken of in the *Rigveda*, X., LXXV., 6. For the locality of Naimisha, see Professor Wilson's *Essays, Analytical, &c.*, Vol. I., p. 137.

§ गायन्ति चैतत्पितरः सदैव  
वर्षामघातुष्टिमवाप्य भूयः ।  
माघासितानि शुभतीर्थतोषि-  
यैस्त्वाम तुष्टिं तनयादिदत्तैः ॥

No other reading appears in my MSS.; and I would substitute, in lieu of “satisfaction for a twelvemonth”, “satisfaction under the asterism Maghá during the rainy season.”

Compare the *Laws of the Mánava*, III., 273.

|| What follows is known as the *Pitris-gītā*.

individual who begrudges not his wealth, but presents us with cakes, shall be born in a distinguished family. Prosperous and affluent shall that man ever be, who, in honour of us, gives to the Brahmans, if he is wealthy, jewels, clothes, land, conveyances, wealth, or any valuable presents; or who, with faith and humility, entertains them with food, according to his means, at proper seasons. If he cannot afford to give them dressed food, he must, in proportion to his ability, present them with unboiled grain,\* or such gifts, however trifling, as he can bestow. Should he be utterly unable even to do this, he must give to some eminent Brahman, bowing at the same time before him, sesamum-seeds adhering to the tips of his fingers, and sprinkle water to us, from the palms of his hands, upon the ground;† or he must gather, as he may,‡ fodder for a day, and give it to a cow; by which he will, if firm in faith, yield us satisfaction. If nothing of this kind is practicable, he must go to a forest, and lift up his arms to the sun and other regents of the spheres,§

\* *Dhānya-māna*, i. e., as much as a man can eat, says the commentator.

† तिषीः सप्ताष्टभिर्वापि समवेताञ्जसाञ्जलीम् ।

भक्तिगमः समुद्दिष्टं भुवसाकं प्रदास्यति ॥

Instead of "and sprinkle", &c., read: "or, bowing in devotion, he will offer to us, by name, on the ground, handfuls of water, with seven or eight grains of sesamum."

‡ "Whencesoever he can", *yataḥ kutaśchit*.

§ *Lokapāla*. This word, it should seem, more properly designates the four superintendents named in Vol. II., pp. 86 and 261–263. But it is also used, as here, for *dikpāla*. The *dikpālas*—see Vol. II., pp. 112, 118; also, p. 118, *supra*,—are, at least in the later Hindu writings, eight in number. I owe to Dr. Muir the indication of a passage in the *Taittiriya-brāhmaṇa*,—III., XI., 5,—where seven *devatās* or deities are

and say, aloud: I have no money, nor property, nor grain,\* nor anything whatever fit for an ancestral offering. Bowing, therefore, to my ancestors, I hope the progenitors will be satisfied with these arms tossed up in the air in devotion.' These are the words of the Pitṛis themselves; and he who endeavours, with such means as he may possess, to fulfil their wishes, performs the ancestral rite called a Śrāddha."

---

assigned as follows: Agni, to the east; Indra, to the south; Soma, to the west; Mitra and Varuṇa, to the north; Bṛihaspati, to the region above; and Aditi, to the region here below.

For a long list of *lokapālas*, see Professor Wilson's *Select Specimens of the Theatre of the Hindus*, Vol. I., p. 219, note ‡.

\* My MSS., and likewise the commentator, have *dhana* only; reading:

न मेऽस्ति वित्तं न धनं न चाव्यत् ।

It may be conjectured that the Translator, supposing the lection to be न चाव्यत्, wrote "nor grain", and forgot to strike it out, when he came to prefer "nor property."

---



## CHAPTER XV.

What Brahmins are to be entertained at Śráddhas. Different prayers to be recited. Offerings of food to be presented to deceased ancestors.

AURVA proceeded:—“Hear, next, O prince, what description of Brahman should be fed at ancestral ceremonies.\* He should be one studied in various triplets of the R̥g- and Yajur Vedas;† one who is

---

\* The Brahmins here particularized are termed *Trināchiketa*, *Trimadhu*, and *Trisuparīa*, and are so denominated, according to the commentator, from particular parts of the Vedas. The first is so called from studying or reciting three *Anuvākas* of the *Kāthaka* branch of the *Yajur-veda*, commencing with the term *Trināchiketa*; the second, from three *Anuvākas* of the same *Veda*, beginning *Madhuvātā*, &c.; and the third, from a similar portion, commencing *Brahmavan namāmi*. † The first and third terms

---

\* The *pārvaṇa-śráddha* is here described, says the scholiast.

† The commentator's words are: द्वितीयकाठकशास्त्रयो ऽनुवाक-  
स्त्रिषाचिकेताः । तदध्यायी तदनुष्ठाना च त्रिषाचिकेतः । मधु वाता  
इति तृषाध्यायी तद्व्रतच चिमधुः । ब्रह्मवेत्तमामीत्याबनुवाकचया-  
ध्यायी तद्व्रतच चिसुपर्णः । The *trināchiketa* is, thus, said to be so called  
from three *anuvākas* of the second *Kāthaka*, denominated *trināchiketas*;  
the *trimadhu*, from three *śishes*, beginning with the words *madhu vātāḥ*;  
and the *trisuparīa*, from three *anuvākas*, beginning with the words  
*brahmaṇen namāmi*.

Of the passage referred to the *Kāthaka* I am unable to say anything at present. The three versicles opening with the words *madhu vātāḥ* appear first in the *R̥gveda*, as I., XC., 6–8; and they reappear in the *White Yajurveda*, as XIII., 27–29. The position of the Vaidik passage alleged to be connected with the *trisuparīa* has not been traced out.

*Aparāditya*, commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 200, gives this definition of *trimadhu*, denoting a person: त्रिमधुर्ब्रह्म-  
पयसास्मिन्नेव वेदभावमधीति च चिमधुः ।

acquainted with the six supplementary sciences of the Vedas;<sup>1</sup>\* one who understands the Vedas; one who practises the duties they enjoin;<sup>2</sup> one who exercises

occur in Manu, III., 185; and Kullūka Bhaṭṭa explains Triṇāchiketa to mean a portion of the Yajur-veda, and the Brahman who studies it; and Trisuparṇā, a part of the Rīch, and the Brahman who is acquainted with it. The Nirṇaya Sindhu explains the terms in a like manner, but calls the Trisuparṇā, as well as the Triṇāchiketa, prayers, portions of the Yajus. The Trimadhu it assigns to the Rīch. Other explanations are also given to the terms Triṇāchiketa and Trisuparṇā; the first being explained a Brahman who thrice performs the ceremony called Chayana;† and the last, one who, after the seven ascending generations, worships the Pittis termed Somapas.‡ These explanations are, however, considered less correct than the preceding, and which are thus given in the authority cited: चिन्ताचिकेतस्त्रिसुपर्णो यजुर्वेदिकदेशो तद्वृत्तेन तदध्यायिनी । . . . चिमधु चन्वेदिकदेशसदध्यायी ।

<sup>1</sup> For the six Angas, see p. 67, *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> So the commentator§ distinguishes the Vedavit,—the Brah-

\* *Shāṅgavit*.

† केचिन्नाचिकेतं चयनं विः कृतवानित्यर्थमाहुः । And herewith agrees Śankara, where commenting on the *Katha Upanishad*, I., 17, चिन्ताचिकेतः । विःकृतो नाचिकेतोऽपि स्थितो येन स चिन्ताचिकेतसद्विज्ञानसद्वृत्तान्वान्वा ।

‡ यस्य सप्त पूर्वे सोमपाः स त्रिसुपर्ण इति बोपदेवः । “He of whom seven forefathers have drunk the juice of the moon-plant is a *trisuparṇā*: so says Bopadeva.” These words occupy the blank, indicated by asterisks, in the passage quoted at the end of the note here supplemented; and the definitions preceding them are referred to the same author.

§ His words are: वेदवित् । वेदार्थविचारकः । ओचियः । तदर्थागुहाता । In the *Mitāksharā*, I., 219, we read: ओचियः । मुताध्याय-नसंपन्नः । Kullūka, on the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 128, says: हन्दीमावाध्यायी ओचियः । Medhātithi has: ओचियः । हान्दसः कृतमन्त्रब्राह्मणिकां शाखामधीति यः ।

penance;\* a chanter of the principal Sāma-veda,<sup>1</sup> an officiating priest,† a sister's son, a daughter's son, a son-in-law, a father-in-law, a maternal uncle, an ascetic,‡ a Brahman who maintains the five fires,§ a pupil, a kinsman;|| one who reverences his parents.¶ A man should first employ the Brahmans first specified in the (principal) obsequial rite; and the others, (commencing with the ministering priest), in the subsidiary ceremonies\*\* instituted to gratify his ancestors.

---

man who understands the meaning of the text of the Vedas,—from the Śrōtriya, who practises the rites he studies.

<sup>1</sup> Portions of the Sāman contained in the Āraṇyaka are called the Jyeshtha, 'elder' or 'principal', Sāman.††

---

\* *Yogin.*

† *Kṛivig.*

‡ *Tapo-nishtha.*

§ According to Ānanda, the five fires, spoken of in the *Kaṭha Upanishad*, III., 1, are called *gārhapatya*, *dakṣiṇāgni*, *āhavanīya*, *sabhya*, and *āvasathya*. Also see the *Mitāksharā*, I., 221. The more technical name of the *dakṣiṇāgni* or *dakṣiṇa* is *anvāhāryapachāna*; as we learn from the *Chhāndogya Upanishad*, IV., XII., 1. The three first-named fires, out of the five, are the principal. See, regarding them, the Translator's last note on Chapter VI. of Book IV.

|| *Sambandhin*, 'a relation by marriage.'

¶ Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, III., 148.

\*\* *Anukalpa.*

†† The commentator says that the *jyeshtha-sāman* opens with the *rich* beginning with the words *mūrdhānan divaḥ*: मूर्धानं दिव इत्यावृन्नि-  
शेषनीतं ज्येष्ठसाम । तन्नाता ज्येष्ठसामगः । Professor Wilson should seem to have preferred the authority of Kullūka, who thus explains the term *jyeshtha-sāmaga*, occurring in the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 185: ज्येष्ठसामानि चारखके नीयन्ते । तेषां माता । The stanza in question is found in the *Rigveda*, VI., VII., 1; and it is met with twice in the *Sāmaveda*,—as I., 67, and as II., 490.

"A false friend, a man with ugly nails\* or black teeth,† a ravisher, a Brahman who neglects the service of fire and sacred study, a vender of the Soma-plant, a man accused of any crime, a thief, a calumniator, a Brahman who conducts religious ceremonies for the vulgar; one who instructs his servant in holy writ, or is instructed in it by his servant; the husband of a woman who has been formerly betrothed to another; a man who is undutiful to his parents;‡ the protector of the husband of a woman of the servile caste,§ or the husband of a woman of the servile caste;|| and a Brahman who ministers to idols ¶—are not proper persons to be invited to an ancestral offering.<sup>1</sup> On the first day, let a judicious man invite eminent teachers of the Vedas,\*\* and other Brahmans, and, according to their directions, determine what is

---

<sup>1</sup> Manu, III., 150, &c.

---

\* *Kunakhin*. The commentator explains this term to mean 'with nails naturally bad.' Neither Kullūka nor Medhātithi justifies Sir William Jones's rendering, "a man with whitlows on his nails." See his Translation of "Menu", III., 153.

† 'A eunuch', *klība*, is omitted.

‡ Rather, an 'abandoner' of them, *ujjhaka*.

§ *Vṛishali-sūti-poshṭri*, "the supporter of the offspring of a *vṛishali*", who seems to be a woman sprung from a man that has lost caste.

Professor Wilson read, for *sūti*, *pati*, which I find in some MSS. But the gloss, *गृहापत्यपोषकः*, shows that *pati* is a clerical error.

|| *Vṛishali*.

¶ *Devalaka*. He must have been so for three years, says the commentator, to incur disqualification. And yet an idol was reputed so holy that it was sacrilege to pass over its shadow. *Vide supra*, p. 137, text, and p. 138, note ||.

\*\* *Śrotriya*. *Vide supra*, p. 174, note §.

to be dedicated to the gods, and what to the Pitṛis.\* Associated with the Brahmans, let the institutor of an obsequial rite abstain from anger and incontinence.† He who, having eaten, himself, in a Śrāddha, and fed Brahmans, and appointed them to their sacred offices, is guilty of incontinence, thereby sentences his progenitors to shameful suffering.‡ In the first place, the Brahmans before described are to be invited: but those holy men§ who come to the house without an invitation are, also, to be entertained. The guests are to be reverently received with water for their feet, and the like; and the entertainer, holding holy grass in his hand,|| is to place them, after they have rinsed their mouths, upon seats. An uneven number of Brahmans is to be invited in sacrifices to the manes; an even, or uneven, number, in those presented to the gods; or one only, on each occasion.<sup>1¶</sup>

“Then let the householder, inspired by religious faith, offer oblations\*\* to the maternal grandfather,

<sup>1</sup> As two, or five, at a ceremony dedicated to the gods; three, at the worship of the Pitṛis. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 311.

\* कचयेच्च तदेवेषां नियोगात्पिचदेविकान् ।

† Add ‘fatigue’, *dyāsa*; also, “this is a great offence on that occasion”,  
दोषस्तत्र महानयम् ।

‡ याज्ञे नियुक्तो भुक्त्वा तु भोजयित्वा नियुज्य च ।

§ यायायी रेतसो गते मज्जयत्वात्मनः पितृन् ॥

§ *Yati*; these being Brāhmans, as the original conditions.

|| *Pavitra-pāni*; literally, ‘pure-handed’.

¶ It is directed, in the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 227:

युग्माद्देवे यथाशक्ति पित्र्येऽयुग्मांस्तथैव च ।

\*\* *Śrāddha*.

along with the worship of the Viśwadevas,<sup>1</sup> or the ceremony called Vaiśwadeva,\* (which comprehends offerings to both paternal and maternal ancestors, and to ancestors in general).† Let him feed the Brahmans who are appropriated to the gods and to maternal ancestors, with their faces to the east; and those set apart for the paternal ancestors and ancestors in general, with their faces to the north.‡ Some say, that

---

<sup>1</sup> The worship of the Viśwadevas§ (see p. 158, *supra*) forms a part of the general Śrāddhas, and of the daily sacrifices of the householder. According to the Vāyu, this was a privilege conferred upon them, by Brahmā and the Pitris, as a reward for religious austerities practised, by them, upon Himālaya. Their introduction as a specific class seems to have originated in the custom of sacrificing to the gods collectively, or to all the gods,|| as the name Viśwadevas implies. They appear, however, as a

---

\* तदा मातामहव्राह्मं वैश्वदेवसमन्वितम् ।  
कुर्वीत भक्तिसंपन्नसत्त्वं वा वैश्वदेविकम् ॥

† "It consists in oblations to the gods, to the manes, and to the spirits." Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 188.

‡ The original passage, in correct MSS., runs thus:

प्राङ्मुखोऽयं यदि प्राद्वेवानामुभयार्थकम् ।  
पितृमातामहानां च भोजयेन्नायुदङ्मुखान् ॥

"For both *sets* of his ancestors let him feed, with *their* faces to the east, Brāhmans retained for the gods called Viśwadevas; and let him also feed, with *their* faces to the north, Brāhmans retained for his paternal and maternal manes."

The Translator, corrected above, transposed "east" and "north".

Comment: उभयार्थकम् । पितृमातामहोऽयं वैश्वदेवसमन्वितम् । पितृमातामहवर्गव्याधीयानुदङ्मुखोऽयं वाच्यः ।

Compare the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 228:

द्वौ देवे प्राङ्मुखः पित्र्य उदयेऽक्षयमेव वा ।

§ See note at the end of this chapter.

|| So the term signifies, literally: but I have never found it expressed by the compound "Viśwadevas", as it is by Professor Wilson.

the viands of the Śrāddha should be kept distinct for these two sets of ancestors; but others maintain, that they are to be fed with the same food, at the same time.\* Having spread Kuśa grass for seats,† and offered libations‡ according to rule, let the sensible

---

distinct class, in the Vedas;§ and their assumption of this character is, therefore, of ancient date. The daily offering to them is noticed by Manu, III., 90, || 121; ¶ and offerings to 'the gods' are, also, enjoined at the beginning and end of a Śrāddha. Kulūka Bhaṭṭa understands, here, the Viśwadevas; and it probably is so: but, in another verse, different divinities are specified: "First, as it is ordained, having satisfied Agni, Soma, and Yama, with clarified butter, let him proceed to satisfy the manes of his progenitors."\*\* Verse 211.†† Manu also directs them to be worshipped first and last in order. See Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., pp. 265, 271, &c.‡‡

---

\* पृथक्पृथक् केचिदाहुः श्राद्धस्य करणं नृप ।  
एकैकेन पात्रेन वदन्त्यन्ये महर्षयः ॥

† *Viśhṭara*.

‡ *Argha*.

§ Professor Wilson has elsewhere observed, that "The Viśwadevas are, sometimes, vaguely applied to divinities in general; but they also form a class, whose station and character are imperfectly noticed, but who are entitled, at most religious rites, to share in the solemnity." Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 9, note b.

Bhaga, Mitra, Aditi, Daksha, Asridh, Aryaman, Varuṇa, Soma, and the Aświns, named together in the *Rigveda*, LXXXIX., 3, are said to be considered as Viśwe devas.

Of all these Daksha alone is included in any of the various lists of post-vaiddik Viśwe devas collected in the last note in p. 189, *infra*.

॥ विश्वेभ्यश्च देवेभ्यो बलिमाकाश उत्क्षिपेत् ।  
दिवाचरेभ्यो भूतेभ्यो नक्तचारिभ्य एव च ॥

¶ See Vol. II., p. 22, note §.

\*\* Sir William Jones's translation.

†† अग्निः सोमयमाभ्यां च कृत्वाप्राचनमादितः ।

इदिदग्नेष विधिवत्पञ्चात्संदर्पयेत्पितॄन् ॥

‡‡ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 181, 188, &c.

man invoke the deities, with the concurrence of the Brahmans who are present.<sup>1</sup> Let the man who is acquainted with the ritual offer a libation to the gods, with water and barley; having presented to them flowers,\* perfumes, and incense.† Let him offer the same to the Pitris, placed upon his left; and, with the consent (of the Brahmans), having first provided seats of Kuśa‡ grass doubled, let him invoke, with (the usual) prayers, the manes (to the ceremony), offering a libation, on his left hand, of water and sesamum. He will then, with the permission of the Brahmans, give food to any guest who arrives at the time, or who is desirous of victuals, or who is passing along the road:§ for holy saints and ascetics, || benefactors

---

<sup>1</sup> The text is तदनुज्ञया, 'with *their* assent;' but no noun occurs, in the sentence, with which the relative is connected. It must mean the Brahmans, however; as in this passage of Vṛiddha Parāśara: "Let the sacrificer place his left hand on the Brahman's right knee, and say, 'Shall I invoke the Viśwadevas?' And, being desired to invoke them, let him address them with the two Mantras, 'Viśwadevas, he is come!' 'Viśwadevas, hear him!'"

ततः सर्वं करं न्यस्य विप्रदक्षिणवानुनि ।  
 देवानावाहयिष्येऽहमिति वाचमुदीरयेत् ॥  
 आवाहयेदनुज्ञातो विद्ध्ये देवाः स आगतः ।  
 विद्ध्ये देवाः शृणुतेममिति मन्त्रद्वयं पठेत् ॥ १

---

\* *Srag*, 'garlands.'

† Add 'lights', *dipa*.

‡ *Darbha*, in the original.

§ काले तत्रातिथिं प्राप्तमन्नकामं नृपाध्वजम् ।

|| The original has only one word, *yogin*, for "holy saints and ascetics."

¶ Bṛihat-Parāśara's *Dharmasūtra*, V., 184, 185.



of mankind, are traversing this earth, disguised in various shapes.<sup>1</sup> On this account, let a prudent man welcome a person who arrives at such a season: for inattention to a guest frustrates the consequences of an ancestral offering.

"The sacrificer is then to offer food, without salt or seasoning,\* to fire,<sup>2</sup> three several times, with the consent of the assistant Brahmans; exclaiming, first: 'To fire, the vehicle of the oblations;† to the manes! Swáhá!' Next, addressing the oblation‡ to Soma, the lord of the progenitors,§ and giving the third to Vairavaswata.¶ He is then to place a very little of the residue of the oblation¶ in the dishes of the Brahmans; and, next, presenting them with choice viands, well-dressed and seasoned, and abundant, he is to request them, civilly, to partake of it at their pleasure.\*\* The

---

<sup>1</sup> This notion occurs, more than once, in the Váyu, in nearly the same words:

सिद्धा हि विप्ररूपेण चरन्ति पृथिवीमिमाम् ।

तस्मादतिथिमायान्तमभिगच्छेत्कृताञ्जलिः ॥

<sup>2</sup> This places the initiatory oblations noticed by Manu (see p. 178, note 1, *supra*) subsequent to the offerings to the Viśwadevas.

---

\* *Vyanjana*; explained, by the scholiast, to denote pot-herbs and the like.

† *Kavya*.

‡ *Ahuti*.

§ *Pitrimat*, 'attended by the manes.'

¶ The commentator observes: वैवस्वताय यमायेति पृथगाहुतिः  
शाखिभेदव्यवस्थिता ।

¶ *Huta*.

\*\* ततोऽन्नमिष्टमन्त्रार्चनमीष्टमपि सत्कृतम् ।

इत्वा शुषधिमिक्षातो वाचमेतदग्निपुरम् ॥

Brahmans are to eat of such food attentively, in silence, with cheerful countenances, and at their ease. The sacrificer is to give it to them, not churlishly, nor hurriedly,\* but with devout faith.

“Having, next, recited the prayer for the discomfiture of malignant spirits,<sup>1</sup> and scattered sesamum-seeds upon the ground, the Brahmans (who have been fed) are to be addressed,† in common with the ancestors (of the sacrificer), in this manner: ‘May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, in the persons of these Brahmans, receive satisfaction! May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather derive nutriment from these oblations to fire!‡ May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather derive satisfaction from the balls of food placed, by me, upon the ground! May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather be pleased with what I have, this day, offered§ them in faith! May my maternal grandfather, his father, and his father, also enjoy contentment from my offerings! May all the gods || experience gratifi-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Rakshoghna Mantra,—the extinguishing of a lamp lighted to keep off evil spirits, which is accompanied by a Mantra, or prayer. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 274. ¶

---

\* अमुष्यता चात्वरता ।

† *Dhyeya*, ‘to be meditated on.’

‡ पिता पितामहश्चैव तथैव प्रपितामहः ।

मम तृप्तिं प्रयान्त्वपिहोमाप्यायितमूर्तयः ॥

§ For *ihāhṛita*, ‘here offered,’ there is a variant, *udāhṛita*, ‘spoken.’

|| *Viśve devāḥ*.

¶ Or Colebrooke’s *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 191.

cation, and all evil beings\* perish! May the lord of sacrifice,† the imperishable‡ deity Hari, be the acceptor of all oblations made to the manes or the gods! § And may all malignant spirits,|| and enemies of the deities, ¶ depart from the rite!’

“When the Brahmans have eaten sufficiently, the worshipper must scatter some of the food upon the ground, and present them, individually, with water, to rinse their mouths. Then, with their assent, he may place upon the ground balls made up of boiled rice and condiments, along with sesamum-seeds. With the part of his hand sacred to the manes he must offer sesamum-seeds, and water from his joined palms; and, with the same part of his hand, he must present cakes to his maternal ancestors.\*\* He should, in lonely places, naturally beautiful, and by the side of sacred streams, diligently make presents (to the manes and

\* *Yātudhāna*. See Vol. II., p. 292, note, near the foot of the page.

† *Yajñeshwara*. See Vol. II., p. 124, note ‡.

‡ *Ayayātman*, ‘immutable,’ See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.

§ This is to translate हव्यसेनसकव्यभोक्ता ।

|| *Rakshas*.

¶ “Enemies of the gods” renders *asura*.

\*\* तृप्तेषु तेषु विकिरेदन्नं विप्रेषु भूतले ।  
 दद्याच्चामनार्थाय तेभ्यो वारि सन्नत्सन्नत् ॥  
 सुतृप्तेक्षीरगुग्घातः सर्वेषाम्नेन भूतले ।  
 सतिलेन ततः पिण्डान्सम्यग्दद्यात्समाहितः ॥  
 पितृतीर्थेन सतिलान्दद्याद्य अस्त्राङ्गलीन ।  
 मातामहृभ्यक्षीर्णैव पिण्डांस्तीर्थेन निर्वपेत् ॥

“Instead of “Then, with their assent,” &c., read: “Authorized by them, *they being* fully satisfied, let him, collectedly, then duly offer, on the ground, funeral cakes made of all sorts of food and of sesamum.”

the Brahmans).<sup>1\*</sup> Upon Kuśa† grass, the tips of which are pointed to the south, and lying near the fragments (of the meat), let the householder present the first ball of food, consecrated: with flowers and incense, to his father; the second, to his grandfather; and the third, to his great-grandfather: and let him satisfy those who are contented with the wipings of his hand, by wiping it with the roots of Kuśa grass.<sup>2</sup>§ After presenting balls of food to his maternal ancestors, in the same manner, accompanied by perfumes and incense, he is to give to the principal Brahmans water, to rinse their mouths; and then, with attention and piety, he is to give the Brahmans|| gifts, according to his power, soliciting their benedictions, accompanied

<sup>1</sup> Part of this passage is in the words of Manu, III., 207:

अवकाशेषु षोडशे नदीतीरेषु चैव हि ।

It is omitted in the MSS. in the Bengali character.

<sup>2</sup> Manu, III., 216. ¶

\* दक्षिणाप्रवणं चैव प्रयत्नेनोपपादयेत् ।

अवकाशेषु षोडशे जलतीरेषु चैव हि ॥

“And he should carefully select a southerly slope, in a pure place, and also by the side of water.”

Compare the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 227:

परिक्षुते शुची देशे दक्षिणाप्रवणे तथा ।

† *Darbha*, its synonym, in the original; and so just below, and frequently.

‡ *Pijita*.

§ दर्भमूले लेपभुजः प्रीणयेत्लेपघर्षणे ।

|| *Pitṛebhyaḥ*, ‘to the manes,’ whom the Brāhmans represent. *Vide supra*, p. 182.

¶ न्युष्य पिण्डांस्तत्त्वांस्तु प्रयतो विधिपूर्वकम् ।

तेषु दर्भेषु त हस्त निमृज्याक्षेपभागिनाम् ॥

with the exclamation 'Swadhá!'<sup>1</sup>\* Having made presents to the Brahmans,† he is to address himself to the gods,‡ saying: 'May they who are the Viśwadevas be pleased with this (oblation)!' Having thus said, and the blessings to be solicited having been granted by the Brahmans, he is to dismiss first the paternal ancestors, and then the gods. The order is the same with the maternal ancestors and the gods, in respect to food, donation, and dismissal. Commencing with the washing of the feet, until the dismissing of the gods and Brahmans, the ceremonies are to be performed first for paternal ancestors, and then for ancestors on the mother's side.§ Let him dismiss the

---

<sup>1</sup> "Then let the *Brāhmans* address him, saying *swadhá*; for,

---

\* सुसधेत्वाशिवा युक्तां दद्याच्छ्रुत्या च दक्षिणाम् ।

We are to read, then: "and let him give, according to his ability, a present, accompanied with the benediction *suswadhá*."

† 'To them', agreeably to the Sanskrit. See note || in the preceding page.

‡ *Vaiśwadevika*.

§ तथेति चोक्ते तैर्विप्रैः प्रार्थनीयास्तथाशिवाः ।

पश्चाद्विसर्जयेद्वान्पूर्वं पित्र्यान्महामते ॥

मातामहानामथैव सह देवैः क्रमः श्रुतः ।

भोजने च स्वश्रुत्या च दाणे तद्वद्विसर्जने ॥

आपादशीचनात्पूर्वं कुर्याद्वैवद्विजन्मसु ।

विसर्जनं तु प्रथमं पितृमातामहेषु वै ॥

"And, 'so be it' having been uttered by those Brāhmans, blessings are, likewise, to be solicited: and then let him dismiss, first, the *Brāhmans* entertained in the service of the manes, and, afterwards, those entertained in the service of the gods, O great-souled. For the maternal ancestors, too, along with the gods,—all these being represented by *Brāhmans*,—the order is laid down the same, as to food, donation according

Brahmans with kindly speeches and profound respect, and attend upon them at the end of the Śrāddha, until permitted, by them, to return. The wise man will then perform the invariable worship\* of the Viśwadevas, and take his own meal, along with his friends, † his kinsmen, and his dependants.

“In this manner, an enlightened householder will celebrate the obsequial worship of his paternal and maternal ancestors, who, satisfied by his offerings, will grant him all his desires. Three things are held pure at obsequies,—a daughter’s son, ‡ a Nepal blanket,

in all ceremonies relating to deceased ancestors, the word *swadhā* is the highest benison.” § Manu, III., 252. ||

to ability, and, in like manner, as to dismissal. *In the Vaiśwadeva ceremony*, let him first do *everything*, beginning with the purification of the feet, for the Brāhmanas entertained in the service of the gods; but let him first grant dismissal to the personated paternal ancestors and maternal ancestors.”

On this passage the commentator remarks as follows: किंच पश्चाद्विसर्जयेदिति । अनेन विसर्जनमपि पितृपूर्वकमिति । अतोऽन्यत्सर्वं देवपूर्वमेवेत्यर्थादुक्तम् । इममेवार्थं वैश्वदेवतत्त्वपक्षेऽप्याह । आपादेति । पादप्रक्षालनात्मभूति देवार्थानां ब्राह्मणानां सर्वं प्रथमं कुर्यात्ततः पितृवर्गाणां ततो मातामहवर्गाणामिति । विसर्जनं त्विति । दक्षिणाया उपलक्षणं पूर्वमेवोक्तत्वात् ।

\* *Nitya-kriyā*.

† *Pūjya* = *mānya*. Commentary.

‡ The MSS. have both *dauhitrak* and *dauhitram*. And see note † in the next page.

§ This is Sir William Jones’s rendering.

॥ स्वधास्त्वित्येव तं ब्रूयुर्ब्राह्मणास्तदनन्तरम् ।

स्वधाकारः परा ह्याग्नीः सर्वेषु पितृकर्मसु ॥

and sesamum-seeds;<sup>1</sup> and the gift, or naming, or sight,

<sup>1</sup> We have, here, the words of Manu :

त्रीणि अग्ने पवित्राणि दौहित्रः कुतपस्त्रिधाः ।

III., 235. 'Three things are held pure, at such obsequies,—the daughter's son, the Nepal blanket, and sesamum-seed.' Sir William Jones's translation of these terms rests upon the explanation of Kullúka Bhaṭṭa of this and the verse preceding:

व्रतस्थमपि दौहित्रं अग्ने यत्नेन भोजयेत् ।

कुतपं चाग्ने दद्यात्तिलैश्च विकिरेन्नहीम् ॥ \*

'Let him give his daughter's son, though a religious student, food at a Śrāddha, and the blanket for a seat,' &c. The commentator on our text says, † that some understand, by Dauhitra, clarified butter made from the milk of a cow fed with grass gathered on the day of new moon; and some explain it a plate, or dish, of buffalo-horn. ‡ Kutapa he interprets by Aṣṭāma Mu-  
hūrta, the eighth hour of the day, or a little after noon; although he admits, that some render it a blanket made of goat's wool. §

\* III., 234.

† His words are: दौहित्रो दुहितुः सुतः । कुतपोऽष्टमो मुहूर्तः ।  
दौहित्रमिति पाठे दौहित्रं घृतविशेषः ।

अमावास्यागते सोमे या च खादति गौक्षुणम् ।

दौहित्री सा मता तस्या घृतं दौहित्रमुच्यते ॥

इति । दौहित्रं खड्गपात्रमिति केचित् । केचित्तु कुतपमपि अग्निसोमं  
कम्बलमाहुः । My oldest and best MSS. have अष्टमा घटिका, instead  
of अष्टमो मुहूर्तः. See Vol. I., p. 47, note 2; also, p. 120, note 2,  
*supra*.

The *Nirāyasindhu* quotes, as follows, from the *Brahmaṇḍa-purāṇa*:

अमावास्यागते सोमे या खादयति गौक्षुणम् ।

तस्या गोर्वज्रवेत्सीरं तद्दौहित्रमुदाहृतम् ॥

‡ Read 'rhinoceros-horn.' So explains the *Kalpataru*, says the *Nirāyasindhu*: दौहित्रं खड्गपात्रमिति कल्पतरुः ।

§ Thus Vijnāneśwara understands it, in his comment on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 186: कुतपः । पार्वतीयश्चागरोमनिर्मितः कम्बलः ।  
And similarly Aparāditya. Also see the *Śabdakalpadruma*, *sub voce*.

of silver (is, also, propitious).<sup>1</sup> The person offering a Śraddha should avoid anger, walking about, and hurry: these three things are very objectionable.\* The Viśwadevas, and paternal and maternal ancestors, and (the living members of) a man's family, are, all, nourished by the offerer of ancestral oblations.

"The class of Pitris derives support from the moon; and the moon is sustained by acts of austere devotion.† Hence, the appointment of one who practises austerities‡ is most desirable. A Yogin set before a

---

These explanations are also noticed in the Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 302; and, upon the authority of the Matsya Purāṇa, Kutapa is said to mean eight things which equally consume (Tap) all sin (Ku), or, — noon, a vessel of rhinoceros-horn, a Nepal blanket, silver, holy grass, sesamum, kine, and a daughter's son:

मध्याह्नः खड्गपात्रं च तथा नेपालकम्बलः ।

रौप्यं दर्भाशिला गावो दीहिचचाष्टमः स्मृतः ॥ §

पापं कुत्सितमित्वाऽऽसृज्य संतापकारिणः ।

अष्टचिते यतस्तस्मात्कुतपा इति विद्युताः ॥ ||

<sup>1</sup> So the Matsya Purāṇa has 'the gift, sight, and name, of silver are desired:'

रजतस्य तथा दानं दर्शनं नाम चेष्टते । ¶

The notion originates with Manu, III., 202.\*\*

---

\* भोजुरप्यथ राजेऽहं चयमेतन्न ग्राह्यते ।

† सोमाधारः पितृगणो योगाधारश्च चन्द्रमाः ।

See Vol. II., pp. 298—303; and compare Vol. I., p. 90.

‡ Yogin.

§ I find दीहिचं चाष्टमं स्मृतम्; also.

|| Quoted in the Nirṇayasindhu.

¶ This line is cited by the commentator.

\*\* राजतेर्भाजनेरेवामथो वा राजतान्वितेः ।

वार्धपि अक्षया दत्तमवधायोपकल्पते ॥



thousand Brahmins enables the institutor of obsequial rites to enjoy all his desires."<sup>1</sup>\*

\* The same doctrine is inculcated by the Váyu Purāṇa:† but it appears to be a Paurāṇik innovation; for Manu places the Brahman intent on scriptural knowledge and on austere devotion on a level, and makes no mention of the Yogin. III., 134. ‡

\* सहस्रस्त्रापि विप्राणां योगी चेतुरतः स्तितः ।  
सर्वाभ्योक्तंक्षारयति यजमानं तथा नृप ॥

Instead of "enables," &c., read "saves all the eaters, and, likewise, the sacrificer."

† Cited thus, in the commentary:

आग्ने प्रीताः पुनः सोमं पितरो योगमाश्रिताः ।  
आप्याययन्ति योगेन वैलोक्य तेन जीवति ॥

Just before, the scholiast quotes the ensuing stanza,—*sl.* 939—from the *Harivamśa*:

एतेऽस्त्यपितरस्तात योगिनां योगवर्धनाः ।  
आप्याययन्ति ये पूर्वं सोमं योगबलेन वै ॥

In these passages, the manes are represented as nourishing the moon by their devotion of *yoga*.

‡ ज्ञाननिष्ठा द्विजाः केचित्तपोनिष्ठास्तथापरे ।  
तपःस्वाध्यायनिष्ठाश्च कर्मनिष्ठास्तथापरे ॥

Note referred to at pp. 178, 179, *supra*.

The names and functions of the post-vaiddik Viśve devas are set forth, in the *Likhita-smṛiti*, as follows:

ऋतुर्देवो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामो धुरिरोचनी ।  
पुरुवा माद्रवाश्च विन्धे देवाः प्रकीर्तिताः ॥  
\* \* \* \* \*

रश्मिश्चाग्ने ऋतुर्देवो वसुः सत्यश्च देविके ।  
कालः कामोऽभिकार्येषु कान्येषु धुरिरोचनी ।  
पुरुवा माद्रवाश्च पावणेषु नियोजयेत् ॥

Here the Viśve devas are said to be Kratu, Daksha, Vasu, Satya, Kāla, Kāma, Dhuri, Rochana, Purúravas, and Mádravas; ten, in all.

In Hemādri's *Śráddhakalpa*, the *Bṛihaspati-smṛiti* is named as the source of these lines:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कामः कालस्तथैव च ।  
 धनिश्च रोचनश्चैव तथा चैव पुरुरवाः ।  
 आर्द्रवश्च दक्षैते तु विश्वे देवाः प्रकीर्तिताः ॥

As well as of these:

इष्टिआग्ने ऋतुर्दक्षः सत्यो नान्दीमुखे वसुः ।  
 नैमित्तिके कालकामी काम्ये च धनिरोचनी ।  
 पुरुरवा आर्द्रवश्चैव पार्वणे समुदाहृता ॥

This last extract, slightly varied, is, in the *Śrāddhatattva*, likewise credited to Bṛihaspati.

And the following verses are professedly taken, by Hemādri, from the *Śankha-smṛiti*:

इष्टिआग्ने ऋतुर्दक्षः संकीर्त्यो वैश्वदेविके ।  
 नान्दीमुखे सत्यवसू काम्ये च धुरिरोचनी ॥

But I can find nothing of the sort in Bṛihaspati and Śankha.

In the *Agni-purāṇa*, we read, according to Colebrooke's best MS., copied in the time of Akbar:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामस्तथा धनिः ।  
 रोचकश्चार्द्रवाश्चैव तथा चान्यः पुरुरवाः ।  
 विश्वे देवा भवन्त्येते दश सर्वत्र पूजिताः ॥  
 विश्वेदेवौ ऋतुर्दक्षौ सर्वास्त्रिष्टिषु विभुतौ ।  
 नित्यं नान्दीमुखआग्ने वसुस्तथैव च पितृके ॥  
 नवाम्नास्तथैव देवौ कामकालौ सदैव हि ।  
 अपि कन्यागते सूर्ये आग्ने वा धनिरोचनौ ।  
 पुरुरवाश्चार्द्रवाश्च विश्वेदेवौ च पर्वणि ॥

The last half of this extract, slightly varied, is quoted in the *Nirṇaya-sindhu*, in Rāmakṛishṇa's *Śrāddhagaṇapati*, and in other works, as from the *Āditya-purāṇa*.

The ensuing enumeration is referred, in the *Rājyābhishekapaddhati*, to the *Agni-purāṇa*; but I have not been able to find it there:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कामः कालो धुरिर्वयः ।  
 पुरुरवा माद्रवाश्च विश्वे देवाश्च रोचनः ॥

Here the *Viśve devas* number eleven; the additional one being *Jaya*.

In the *Nītimayūkha* and *Pūrtakamalākara*, we meet with the subjoined verses, taken, perhaps, from the *Vasishṭha-saṃhitā*:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामो मुनिस्तथा ।  
 धृतिमात्मनुजश्चैव रोचमानस्तथैव च ।  
 एते त्वाभिविष्टु विश्वे देवास्तथा दश ॥

The name *Muni*, in the first line, looks exceedingly like a mere clerical error.

We read, further, in the *Sárasangraha*:

पु॒रु॒रवा मा॒द्रवा॒श्च क्रतु॑र्द॒क्षो प॑र्व॒क्षयाः ।  
ना॒न्दि॒के व॑सु॒सत्त्वी च॑ का॒न्ये तु धु॑रि॒रोच॑नी ॥  
का॒ल॒कामी॑ तु वि॒क्षेयी॑ व॒ह्निका॑र्ये दि॒वोत्त॑म ।  
वि॒क्षे दे॒वाः समा॑ख्या॒ताः आ॒श्वक॑र्म॒सु सर्व॑दा ॥

We have, thus, to choose between Dhuri, Dhvani, and Muni; between Rochana, Rochaka, Rochamāna, and the Lochana of some MSS.; between Purúravas and Dhṛitimat; and between Mádravas, Ádravas, Ádrava, and Manuja. I incline to think that the मा-, in the reading पु॒रु॒रवा मा॒द्रवा॒श्च, may have been corrupted out of चा-, and this out of च. The *Nirñayasindhu*, like other treatises, in quoting the second passage which Hemādri refers to Bṛihaspati, and the extract from the *Agni-purāṇa*, gives, instead of the immetrical पु॒रु॒रवा चा॒र्द्रव॑श्चैव, and पु॒रु॒रवाचा॒र्द्रवा॒श्च, पु॒रु॒रवा॒र्द्रवो॑ चैव. Possibly, this originated from पु॒रु॒रवो॑र्द्र॒वो चैव, which yields, at all events, in lieu of two unintelligible names, two intelligible,—Purúravas and Ádrava. The termination of the unmeaning Mádravas and Ádravas was, perhaps, suggested by that of Purúravas.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, in my MSS., declares:

क्रतु॑र्द॒क्षः अ॒वः स॒त्यः का॒लः का॒मी धु॑नि॒स्तथा ।  
कु॒रु॒वान॑म॒वांश्चै॒व रो॒चमा॑न॒श्च ते द॑क्ष ।  
ध॒र्मपु॒त्राः स्मृ॒ता ह्ये॒ते वि॒श्वायां॑ ज॒ज्ञिरे शु॒भाः ॥

Here the Viśve devas, called sons of Dharma and Viśvá.—see Vol. II., pp. 21, 22,—are said to be ten in number, namely: Kratu, Daksha, Śrava, Satya, Kāla, Kāma, Dhuni, Kuruvat, Amavat, and Rochamāna.

Śrava, possibly, here grew out of Vasu, with its consonants transposed. Dhuni, again, could easily be corrupted from Dhuri; or *vice versa*. See Vol. II., p. 23, note §. For Kuruvat it is obvious to propose Puruvat,—the original, perhaps, of the readings Purúravas and Dhṛitimat; as Amavat may have been of Ádravas, &c.

It is a suggestive fact, that none of the dozen or more law-books which I have examined for the Viśve devas refers to these verses,—the oldest, not impossibly, of all that are cited in this note. Is this omission to be accounted for by the desuetude of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*? And can that work be more ancient than the *Likhita-smṛiti*, in the form of it which has been derived to us?

Perhaps it was even some older work than the *Vāyu-purāṇa* that led Śankara—in his commentary on the *Bṛihad-āraṇyaka Upanishad*, I., IV., 12,—to count Viśvá's sons, the Viśve devas, at thirteen.

In the *Harivamśa*, śl. 11541—4, I make out, as the result of collating several MSS.:

विश्वे देवाश्च विश्वाद्यां धर्मोद्भूता इति श्रुतिः ।  
 दक्षश्चैव महाबाहुर्वसुश्च सुत एव च ॥  
 सुधर्मा च महाबाहुः शङ्खपाञ्च महाबलः ।  
 पृथुश्चैव महाबाहुर्वपुष्माश्च तथैव च ॥  
 चाक्षुषश्च मनोरेते तथानन्तमहारणी ।  
 विश्वावसुसुपर्वाण्यौ निष्कुम्भश्च महायशः ॥  
 रुद्रश्च ऋषिपुत्रो वै भास्करप्रमितश्रुतिः ।  
 विश्वेदेवान्देवमाता विश्वेशा जगद्यत्सुतान् ॥

Here, subject to correction, I read the names of thirteen *Viśve devas*, to-wit: Daksha, Vasu, Suta, Sudharman, Śankhapād, Pṛithu, Vapushmat, Ananta, Mahārāṇa, Viśwāvasu, Suparvan, Nishkumbha, and Ruru. The first seven are said to be connected with the Manu Chākshusha. *Vide supra*, p. 11.

It is alleged, by the Translator,—Vol. II., p. 22, note 1,—that there are twelve *Viśve devas*, according to the *Matsya-purāṇa*. The passage, in that work, which names these supernals,—but without numbering them,—is much too corrupt, in my MSS., to invite conjectural mending. For the most part, if not throughout, it has, without question, a close genetic relationship to the last extract transcribed.

## CHAPTER XVI.

Things proper to be offered, as food, to deceased ancestors: prohibited things. Circumstances vitiating a Śráddha: how to be avoided. Song of the Pitṛis or progenitors, heard by Ikshwáku.

AURVA continued.—“Ancestors are satisfied, for a month, with offerings of rice or other grain,\* with clarified butter,<sup>1</sup> with fish, or the flesh of the hare, of birds, of the hog, the goat, the antelope,† the deer,‡ the Gayal,§ or the sheep, or with the milk of the cow, and its products.<sup>2</sup> They are for ever satisfied with

---

<sup>1</sup> See Manu, III., 266, &c. The articles are much the same; the periods of satisfaction somewhat vary.

<sup>2</sup> The expression Gavya (गव्य) implies all that is derived from a cow: but, in the text, it is associated with ‘flesh’; and, as the commentator observes, some consider the flesh of the cow to be here intended: मांसमध्यपाठान्मांसमेवेत्यन्ये ।॥ But this, he adds, relates to other ages.¶ In the Kali or present age, it implies milk and preparations of milk.\*\* The sacrifice of a cow or calf formed part of the ancient Śráddha. It then became typical; or, a bull was turned loose, instead of being slaughtered: and

---

\* There is nothing, in the original, corresponding to “offerings of rice or other grain.” The scholiast, however, suggests such an addition.

† *Aśva*, adjective of *śva*.

‡ *Ruru*; explained, in the commentary, by *ptishata*. In Vol. I., p. 72, it is translated “antelope”.

§ *Gavaya*.

|| The commentator here refers, in terms, to a variant of the text.

¶ तनु युगान्तरीयमित्ववधेयम् ।

\*\* The five pure products of the cow are milk, curds, butter, her urine, and her dung.

flesh (in general), and with that of the long-eared white goat,\* in particular. The flesh of the rhinoceros, the Kálašáka (pot-herb), and honey are, also, especial sources of satisfaction to those worshipped at ancestral ceremonies. The birth of that man is the occasion of satisfaction to his progenitors, who performs, at the due time, their obsequial rites at Gayá. Grains that spring up spontaneously,† rice growing wild,‡ panic§ of both species (white or black||), vegetables that grow in forests,¶ are fit for ancestral oblations; as are barley, wheat, rice, sesamum, various kinds of pulse,\*\* and mustard.†† On the other hand, a

---

this is still practised, on some occasions.‡‡ In Manu, the term Gavya is coupled with others, which limit its application:

---

\* *Várddhriṇasa*. Some, according to the commentator, understand this word to denote a bird with a dark throat, a red head, and white wings.

† *Prasátiká*. The scholiast says: प्रसातिका देवधान्यानि । चार-  
खत्रीहिसङ्घाः । चेतशूका इति केचित् । Commentary A.

‡ नीवारा रक्तशूकाः । Commentary A. In the comment on the text of Vol. I., p. 95, *nivāra* is defined चारखा व्रीहयः.

§ *Śyāmāka*.

|| So adds the commentator.

¶ *Vanaushadhi*.

\*\* The original specifies *priyanyu*, *mudga*, *nishpāva*, and *kovidāra*. *Nishpāva* is said, in one commentary, to be the same as *valla*; in the other, the same as *tibya*; and a gloss gives *yugapatra* as the synonym of *kovidāra*. For these and other vegetable products named in this chapter, see the list in Vol. I., p. 95.

†† Unlike the list referred to in the preceding note, this does not profess to be exhaustive. In the former, we find the names of fourteen articles; in the latter, the names of twelve. This mentions five species of grains,—*prasátiká*, *mudga*, *nishpāva*, *kovidāra*, and *sarshapa*,—omitted in the other; while the remaining seven species are common between both.

‡‡ See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 177.

householder must not offer any kind of grain that is not consecrated, by religious ceremonies, on its first coming into season;\* nor (the pulse called) *Rajamāsha*,† nor millet,‡ nor lentils, nor gourds,§ nor garlic, nor onions,|| nor nightshade,¶ nor camels' thorn,\*\* nor salt, nor the efflorescence of salt deserts,†† nor red vegetable extracts,‡‡ nor anything that looks like salt,§§ nor anything that is not commendable: nor is water fit to be offered at a *Śrāddha*, that has been brought by night, or has been abandoned, or is so little as not to satisfy a cow, or smells badly, or is covered with froth. The milk of animals with undi-

संवत्सरं तु गव्येन पयसा पायसेन च ।

"A whole year with the milk of cows, and food made of that milk." || || III., 271.

\* अकृताययणं यच्च धान्यजातं नरेश्वर ।

\* \* \* \* \* विवर्जयेत् ॥

† *I. e.*, *māsha* not black, according to the commentator.

‡ *Aśu*. Commentary A gives *china* as its synonym; B defines it by *sūkshma-śāli*. In the comments on the text of Vol. I., pp. 94, 95, it is said, equivalently, to be *kshudra-śāli*, 'small rice'; while *chinaka* is explained to be *śu-tulya*.

§ *Alābi*.

|| Insert 'carrots'(?), *piṇḍamūlaka*. The commentary explains the word by *पिण्डाकारमूलकं*, 'a bulbous root.'

¶ *Gāndhāraka*. शाकभेदः काञ्जिकं वा । Commentary.

\*\* *Karambha*. करम्भानि चविकसिता खाजाः । शाकभेद इत्येके । Commentary.

†† *Aushara*.

‡‡ आरत्तांशिव निर्यासान्.

§§ *प्रत्यक्षवर्णानि*, which the commentator defines to be चतुर्वर्णवर्णानि.

|| || Sir William Jones.

vided hoofs, of a camel, a ewe, a deer,\* or a buffalo, is unfit for ancestral oblations. If an obsequial rite is looked at by a eunuch, a man ejected from society,† an outcast, a heretic, a drunken man, or one diseased, by a cock,‡ a naked ascetic,¹ a monkey, a village-hog,§ by a woman in her courses or pregnant, by an unclean person, or by a carrier of corpses,¶ neither gods nor progenitors will partake of the food. The ceremony should, therefore, be performed in a spot carefully enclosed.\*\* Let the performer cast sesamum on the ground, and drive away malignant spirits.†† Let him not give food that is fetid, or vitiated by hairs or insects, or mixed with acid gruel,‡‡ or stale.§§ Whatever suitable food is presented with pure faith, and with the enunciation of name and race,||| to ancestors,

---

¹ Nagna is, literally, 'naked', but, as explained in the following chapter, means a Jaina mendicant. No such person is included, by Manu (III., 239, &c.), amongst those who defile a Śrāddha by looking upon it. The Vāyu contains the same prohibition: नप्तादयो न पक्षेयुः ।

---

\* The original word is *mārga*. But there is a variant, *chhāga*, 'of a goat.'

† *Apavidha*; defined महाजनपरित्यक्त. ‡ *Krikavāku*.

§ I have corrected the printer's blunder "a village-hag"; the original being *grāma-śūkara*.

|| *Sūtikā*. This, according to the commentator, is a woman ceremonially unclean by reason of recent childbirth.

¶ *Mṛitahāra*; explained by शवनिर्हरणवृत्तिः, in the commentary.

\*\* तस्मात्परिश्रिते कुर्याच्छ्रावं श्रद्धासमन्वितः ।

†† *Yātudhāna*. See Vol. II., p. 292, near the foot.

‡‡ *Abhishava*; synonymized by *kānjika*, in the commentary.

§§ *Paryushita*. The scholiast says it means पक्वं रात्र्यन्तरितम् । Also *vide supra*, p. 126, note \*. ||| *Gotra*.



at an obsequial oblation, becomes food to them (or, gives them nourishment).\* In former times, O king of the earth, this song† of the Pitṛis was heard by Ikshwáku,‡ the son of Manu, in the groves of Kalápa, (on the skirts of the Himálaya mountains§): ‘Those of our descendants shall follow a righteous path, who shall reverently present us with cakes at Gayá. May he be born in our race, who shall give us, on the thirteenth of Bhádrapada and Mágha,|| milk, honey, and clarified butter; or when he marries a maiden,¶ or

\* अश्वासमन्विर्देत्तं पितृभ्यो नामगोचतः ।

यदाहाराद्यु ते जातास्तदाहारत्वमेति तत् ॥

† *Gáthá*.

‡ See, for him, Book IV., Chapter I.

§ It is a village there, says the scholiast, from whom this parenthesis is borrowed. His words are: कलापो हिमवत्पार्श्ववर्ती ग्रामविशेषः । The village of Kalápa is mentioned in Book IV., Chapter IV., *ad finem*.

|| The words “of Bhádrapada and Mágha” correspond to वर्षासु च मघासु च, which means, “during the rainy season, and under the asterism Maghá.” Only one period, however, is intended; and that is during the month of Bhádrapada, according to the scholiast: वर्षासु । भाद्रपदे मघानक्षत्रे चयोद्ग्रीं प्राप्य । Compare note § to p. 170, *supra*.

¶ *Gauri*. In definition of this term, the commentator adduces, from some unnamed *Smṛiti*, the ensuing stanza:

अष्टवर्षा भवेद्गौरी नववर्षा तु रोहिणी ।

दशवर्षा भवेत्कन्या अत ऊर्ध्वं रजस्वला ॥

It appears, herefrom, that *gauri* signifies a girl of eight years; *rohinī*, one of nine; and *kanyá*, one of ten; after which age, a female is to be considered as a woman.

With this the stanza which I have quoted from the *Panchatantra*, in p. 102, note \*, *supra*, is unaccordant, as regards the *rohinī*.

For what seems to be intended for the above, cited in a corrupt and curtailed form by Vallabhagañi, see Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce* अरजस्व.

By its acceptance of the strains of the *pitṛis*, our text sanctions the marriage of a *gauri*. We have seen that this technicality is held to denote a maiden of eight; I nowhere find that it means a damsel more

liberates a black bull,<sup>1</sup> or performs any domestic ceremony agreeable to rule, accompanied by donations to the Brahmans!'"\* 2\*

<sup>1</sup> Nīla vṛisha. But this animal is not altogether, or always, black. In the Brahma Purāṇa, as quoted in the Nirṇaya Sindhu, † it is said to be of a red colour, with light face and tail, and white hoofs and horns; or, a white bull, with black face, &c.; or, a black bull, with white face, tail, and feet.‡

<sup>2</sup> Very full descriptions of the Śrāddha occur in almost all

advanced; and it may be doubted whether the compiler of the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* took a different notion of its import.

*Kanyā*—*vide supra*, pp. 102–105,—is often used in the vague sense of 'virgin'. Such may, then, be a *gaurī*.

The commentator quotes, as follows, from the lawgiver Saṁvarta:

गौरीं ददन्नाकष्टं वैकुण्ठं याति रोहिणीम् ।  
कन्यां ददद्भस्त्रलोकं रौरवं तु रजस्वलाम् ॥

"He who gives away a *gaurī* goes to Nākapīśhtha; he who gives away a *rohīṇī*, to Vaikuṇṭha; he who gives away a *kanyā*, to Brahma-loka; but he who gives away a damsel whose courses have commenced, to Raurava."

Nākapīśhtha is the highest heaven of the three specified. Raurava is a hell: see Vol. II., p. 216.

Ratnagarbha would have proved himself inconsistent indeed, if, while citing the two preceding stanzas with tacit approval, he had expressed himself as represented in note 2 to p. 101, *supra*.

\* I find only this reading:

यजेत वाग्धमेधेन विधिवद्विद्यावता ।

This is to be rendered: "or offers a hippocaust accompanied by remuneration agreeable to rule."

† The *Brahma-purāṇa* is there quoted much to this effect. The *Brahmaṇḍa-purāṇa*—with many other authorities,—is adduced, by Hemādri, as follows:

लोहितो यस्तु वर्णेन मुखे पुच्छं च पाण्डुरः ।  
श्वेतः खुरविषाणाभ्यां स नीलो वृष उच्यते ॥  
चरणाश्च मुखं पुच्छं यस्तु श्वेतानि गोपतेः ।  
साधारससवर्णस्तु तं नीलमिति निर्दिशेत् ॥

‡ In the *Āchārachandrikā*, bulls of different colours are appropriated to different castes.

the Purāṇas,—especially in the Vāyu, Kūrma, Mārkaṇḍeya, Vāmana, and Garuḍa. The Matsya and Padma (Śrīṣṭī Khaṇḍa) contain descriptions which are much the same as that of the Vāyu. The accounts of the Brahma, Agni, and Varāha are less full and regular than in some of the others; and in none of them is the subject so fully and perspicuously treated as in our text. For satisfactory information, however, the Śrāddha Mayūkha and the Nirṇaya Sindhu should be consulted.\*

---

\* The prime authority on the subject of obsequies is, beyond all question, the voluminous *Śrāddhakalpa* of Hemādri,—a work which the *Śrāddhamayūkha* and *Nirṇayasindhu* perpetually lay under contribution.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

Of heretics, or those who reject the authority of the Vedas: their origin, as described by Vasishtha to Bhishma: the gods, defeated by the Daityas, praise Vishnu: an illusory being, or Buddha, produced from his body.

PARÁŚARA.—Thus, in former days, spake the holy Aurva to the illustrious monarch Sagara, when he inquired concerning the usages proper to be practised (by mankind): and thus I have explained to you the whole of those observances against which no one ought to transgress.\*

MAITREYA.—You have told me, venerable sir, that an ancestral rite is not to be looked upon by certain persons, amongst whom you mentioned such as were apostates. I am desirous to learn whom you intended by that appellation;† what practices bestow such a title upon a man; and what is the character of the individual to whom you alluded.

PARÁŚARA.—The Rig-, Yajur-, and Sáma-Vedas constitute the triple covering of the several castes; and the sinner who throws this off is said to be naked (or apostate).‡ The three Vedas are the raiment of all the orders § (of men); and, when that is discarded,

- \* मयाधेतदशेषेण कथितं भवतो द्विज ।  
समुल्लङ्घ्य सदाचारं कश्चिन्नामोति शोभनम् ॥
- † षण्ढापविद्धप्रमुखा विदिता भगवत्तम ।  
उदक्वायाश्च ये सर्वे नममिच्छामि वेदितुम् ॥
- ‡ अग्नयवुःसामसंज्ञेयं चयी वर्षावृत्तिर्द्विज ।  
एतामुज्झति यो मोहात्स नमः पातकी ह्युतः ॥

§ *Varia.*

they are left bare.<sup>1</sup> On this subject hear what I heard my grandfather, the pious Vasishtha, relate to the magnanimous Bhishma:

There was, formerly, a battle between the gods and demons,\* for the period of a divine year, in which the gods were defeated by the demons† under the command of Hrada.<sup>2</sup> The discomfited deities fled to the northern shore of the milky ocean,‡ where, engaging in religious penance, they thus prayed to Vishnu: “May

<sup>1</sup> This idea is expressed in nearly the same terms, in the Vāyu Purāṇa:

सर्वेषामिव भूतानां त्रयी संवरणं क्षुता ।  
परित्यजन्ति ये मोहान्ते वै नमोदयो जनाः ॥

“The three Vedas are the covering of all beings; and they who throw it off, through delusion, are called Nagnas, naked.” The notion is, probably, original with neither of the Purāṇas; and the metaphorical sense of the term is not that in which it was first employed: ascetics, whether of the Bauddha or of the Digambara order of Jainas, being, literally, Nagnas,—or, going naked. The qualified application of it, however, was rendered necessary by the same practice being familiar to ascetics of the orthodox faith. To go naked was not necessarily a sign of a heretic; and, therefore, his nudity was understood to be, rejecting the raiment of holy writ. Thus, the Vāyu Purāṇa extends the word to all ascetics—including naked Brahmans,—who practise austerities fruitlessly, that is, heretically or hypocritically:

बुधादप्यङ्गी बुधामुच्छी बुधानमश्च यो दिवः ।  
बुधाव्रती बुधावापी ते वै नमोदयो जनाः ॥

“The Brahman who unprofitably bears a staff, shaves his head, goes naked, makes a vow, or mutters prayers,—all such persons are called Nagnas and the like.”

<sup>2</sup> A son of Hiraṇyakaśipu (Vol. II., p. 30).

\* *Asura*.

† *Daiṭya*.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 200.

the first of beings, the divine Vishnú, be pleased with the words that we are about to address to him, in order to propitiate the lord of (all) worlds; from which mighty cause all (created things) have originated, and into whom they shall again dissolve! Who is able to declare his praise? We, who have been put to shame by the triumph of our foes, will glorify thee, although thy true power and might be not within the reach of words.\* Thou art earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, † crude matter, ‡ and (primeval) soul. § All this elementary creation, with or without visible form, is thy body; all, from Brahmá to a stock, || diversified by place and time. Glory to thee, who art Brahmá, thy first form, evolved from the lotos springing from thy navel, for the purpose of creation! Glory to thee, ¶ who art Indra, \*\* the sun, Rudra, the Vasus, †† fire, ‡‡ the winds, §§ and even, also, ourselves! Glory to thee, Go-

\* तच्चाक्षरातिविध्वंसध्वंसवीर्या भवार्थिनः ।

त्वां लोष्यामस्योक्तीनां याचातम्यं नैव नीचरे ॥

"Albeit thy real selfhood is not within the scope of words, yet we, whose might has been destroyed by discomfiture at the hands of our enemies, being solicitous of renewed welfare, will, according to our understanding, laud thee."

The commentator explains this stanza in detail.

† *Antahkaraṇa*.

‡ *Pradhāna*. See Vol. I., p. 20, note \*.

§ *Puṁs*. It is qualified by *tatpara*, 'superior thereto', viz., to *pradhāna*.

|| *आत्मसम्बन्धवर्जितम्* । We have, here, the very words with which the *Sāṅkhya-pravachana*, III., 47, begins.

¶ Supply 'identical with the gods', *devātman*.

\*\* Śakra, in the original.

†† See, for the Vasus, Vol. II., pp. 22, 23.

‡‡ I find 'the Aświns'; for whom *vide supra*, p. 21.

§§ 'The Maruta.' See Vol. II., p. 79.

vinda, who art all demons, whose essence is arrogance and want of discrimination, unchecked by patience or self-control!\* Glory to thee, who art the Yakshas, whose nature is charmed with sounds, and whose frivolous hearts perfect knowledge cannot pervade!† Glory to thee, who art all fiends that walk by night, sprung from the quality of darkness, fierce, fraudulent, and cruel!‡ Glory to thee, Janárdana, who art that piety which is the instrument of recompensing the virtues of those who abide in heaven!§ Glory to thee, who art one with the saints, whose perfect nature is ever blessed, and traverses, unobstructed, all permeable elements!|| Glory to thee, who art one with the serpent-race, double-tongued, impetuous, cruel, insatiate of enjoyment, and abounding with wealth! Glory to thee, who art one with the Rishis, whose nature is free from sin or defect, and is identified with wisdom and tranquillity! Glory to thee, O lotos-eyed, who art one with time, the form that devours, without remorse, all created things, at the ter-

\* इक्ष्वाक्यमसंबोधि तितिषादमवर्जितम् ।

चद्रूपं तव नोविन्द तस्मै दैव्यात्मने नमः ॥

† नातिज्ञानवद्वा यस्मिन्नाद्यस्मिन्मिततेष्वसि ।

शब्दादित्योमि यत्तस्मै तुभ्यं यक्षात्मने नमः ॥

‡ क्रौर्यमायामयं घोरं यच्च रूपं तवासितम् ।

निशाचरात्मने तस्मै नमस्ते पुरुषोत्तम ॥

§ स्वर्गस्वधर्मि सद्धर्मफलपकरणं तव ।

धर्मैक्यं च तया रूपं नमस्तस्मै जनार्दन ॥

|| हर्षप्रायस्संसर्गि गतिवन्नमनादिषु ।

सिद्धात्मैक्यं चद्रूपं तस्मै सिद्धात्मने नमः ॥

mination of the Kalpa!\* Glory to thee, who art Rudra, the being that dances (with delight), after he has swallowed up all things,—the gods and the rest,—without distinction! Glory to thee, Janārdana, who art man, the agent in developing the results of that activity which proceeds from the quality of foulness! Glory to thee, who art brute animals, the universal spirit that tends to perversity, which proceeds from the quality of darkness, and is encumbered with the twenty-eight kinds of obstructions!<sup>1</sup>† Glory to thee, who art that chief spirit which is diversified in the vegetable world, and which, as the essence: of sacrifice, is the instrument of accomplishing the perfection of the universe! Glory to thee, who art everything, and whose primeval form is the objects of perception, and heaven, and animals, and men, and gods!§ Glory to thee, who art the cause of causes, the supreme spirit; who art distinct from us and all beings composed of intelligence and matter and the like, and with whose

---

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. I., p. 71, note 2.

---

\* भवत्यथ कल्पान्ते भूतानि यदवारितम् ।

त्वद्रूपं पुण्डरीकाक्ष तस्मै कालात्मने नमः ॥

For Puṇḍarikākṣa, see Vol. I., p. 2, note 1.

† अष्टाविंशद्विधोपेतं यद्रूपं तामसं तव ।

उन्मार्गेणानि सर्वात्मनस्ते पञ्चात्मने नमः ॥

Some MSS. have the reading अष्टाविंशद्विधोपेतं, to which the commentator, followed by the Translator, gives the preference.

‡ *Anga.*

§ तिर्यग्गुण्यदेवादि व्योमशब्दादिकं च यत् ।

रूपं तवादेः सर्वस्य तस्मै सर्वात्मने नमः ॥



primeval nature there is nothing that can be compared! We bow to thee, O lord, who hast neither colour, nor extension, nor bulk,\* nor any predicable qualities; and whose essence,† purest of the pure, is appreciable only by holy sages.‡ We bow to thee, in the nature of Brahma, uncreated, undecaying;§ who art in our bodies, and in all other bodies, and in all living creatures; and besides whom there is nothing else. We glorify that Vásudeva, the (sovereign) lord (of all), who is without soil, the seed of all things, exempt from dissolution, unborn, eternal; being, in essence, the supreme condition of spirit,|| and, in substance,¶ the whole of this (universe)."

Upon the conclusion of their prayers,\*\* the gods beheld the sovereign deity Hari, armed with the shell, the discus, and the mace, riding on Garuḍa. Prostrating themselves before him, they addressed him, and said: "Have compassion upon us, O lord, and protect us, who have come to thee for succour from the Daityas! They have seized upon the three worlds, and appropriated the offerings which are our portion, taking care not to transgress the precepts of the Veda. Although we, as well as they, are parts of thee, of whom all beings consist, yet we behold the world impressed by the ignorance of unity, with the belief of

\* *Ghana.*

† *Rūpa.*

‡ *Paramarshi.*

§ *Avyaya.* See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.

|| *Paramapadātmavat.*

¶ *Rūpa* is here rendered by both "essence" and "substance".

\*\* *Stotra.*

its separate existence. Engaged in the duties of their respective orders,\* and following the paths prescribed by holy writ, practising, also, religious penance, it is impossible for us to destroy them. Do thou, whose wisdom is immeasurable,† instruct us in some device by which we may be able to exterminate the enemies of the gods :!”

When the mighty Vishnu heard their request, he emitted from his body an illusory form,§ which he gave to the gods, and thus spake: “This deceptive vision|| shall wholly beguile the Daityas; so that, being led astray from the path of the Vedas, they may be put to death: for all gods, demons, or others, who shall be opposed to the authority of the Veda, shall perish by my might, whilst exercised for the preservation of the world. Go, then, and fear not. Let this delusive vision precede you: it shall, this day, be of great service unto you, O gods!”¶

\* *Varia.*

† *Aneydtman.*

‡ *Asura.*

§ *Māyāmoha*, “the deluder by illusion.”

|| *Māyāmoha.*

¶ Most of my MSS., including all those accompanied by the commentary, here add:

पराशर उवाच ।

इत्युक्ताः प्रविष्ट्वैवं ययुर्देवा ब्रह्मात्मनः ।

मायामीहोऽपि तैः सार्धं ययौ सच महासुराः ॥

## CHAPTER XVIII.

**Buddha goes to the earth, and teaches the Daityas to contemn the Vedas: his sceptical doctrines: his prohibition of animal sacrifices. Meaning of the term Bauddha. Jainas and Bauddhas: their tenets. The Daityas lose their power, and are overcome by the gods. Meaning of the term Nagna. Consequences of neglect of duty. Story of Śatadhanu and his wife Śaibyā. Communion with heretics to be shunned.**

**PARÁŚARA.**—After this, the great delusion,\* having proceeded (to earth), beheld the Daityas, engaged in ascetic penances, upon the banks of the Narmadā river;<sup>1</sup> and, approaching them, in the semblance of a naked mendicant,† with his head shaven, and carrying a bunch of peacock's feathers,<sup>2</sup> he thus addressed them, in gentle accents: "Ho, lords of the Daitya race, wherefore is it that you practise these acts of penance?"

---

<sup>1</sup> The situation chosen for the first appearance of the heresy agrees well enough with the great prevalence of the Jaina faith in the west of India, in the eleventh and twelfth centuries (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. XVI., p. 318), or, perhaps, a century earlier, and is a circumstance of some weight, in investigating the date of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

<sup>2</sup> A bunch of peacock's feathers is still an ordinary accompaniment of a Jaina mendicant. According to the Hindī poem, the Pṛithu Rai Charitra, it was borne by the Buddhist Amara Simha. But that work is not, perhaps, very good authority for Bauddha observances,—at least, of an ancient date.

Is it with a view to recompense in this world? or in another?" "Sage," replied the Daityas, "we pursue these devotions, to obtain a reward hereafter. Why should you make such an inquiry?"\* "If you are desirous of final emancipation," answered the seeming ascetic,† "attend to my words; for you are worthy of a revelation: which is the door to ultimate felicity. The duties that I will teach you are the secret path to liberation: there are none beyond, or superior to, them.§ By following them you shall obtain either heaven or exemption from future existence. You, mighty beings, are deserving of such (lofty) doctrine." By such persuasions, and by many specious arguments,|| did this delusive being mislead the Daityas from the tenets of the Vedas; teaching, that the same thing might be for the sake of virtue and of vice; might be, and might not be; might, or might not, contribute to liberation; might be the supreme object,¶ and not the supreme object; might be effect, and not be effect; might be manifest, or not be manifest; might be the duty of those who go naked, or who go clothed in much raiment. And so the Daityas were seduced from their proper duties by the repeated lessons of their illusory preceptor, maintaining the equal truth

\* पारत्र्यफललाभाय तपश्चर्या महामते ।

अस्माभिरित्यमारब्धा किंवा तेऽत्र विवक्षितम् ॥

† *Māyāmoha.*

‡ *Dharma.*

§ धर्मो विमुक्तिरहोऽयं नैतस्मादपरः परः ।

॥ एवंप्रकारैर्बहुभिर्युक्तिर्द्वर्णवर्धितः ।

¶ *Paramārtha.*

of contradictory tenets;<sup>1\*</sup> and they were called Arhatas,<sup>2</sup> from the phrase he had employed, of “Ye are worthy (Arhatha) of this great doctrine,”—that is, of the false doctrines which he persuaded them to embrace.†

The foes of the gods: being, thus, induced to apostatize from the religion of the Vedas, by the delusive person (sent by Vishnú), became, in their turn, teachers of the same heresies, and perverted others; and these, again, communicating their principles to others, by whom they were still further disseminated, the Ve-

<sup>1</sup> In this and the preceding contradictions it is probable that the writer refers, although not with much precision, to the sceptical tenets of the Jainas, whence they are called, commonly, Syádvádins, assertors of probabilities, or of what may be. These usually form seven categories, or: 1. a thing is; 2. it is not; 3. it is, and it is not; 4. it is not definable; 5. it is, but is not definable; 6. it is not, neither is it definable; 7. it is, and it is not, and is not definable. Hence the Jainas are also termed Saptavádins and Saptabhangins, assertors and oppugners of seven propositions. Asiatic Researches, Vol. XVII., p. 271;§ and Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. I., p. 555.||

<sup>2</sup> Here is further confirmation of the Jainas being intended by our text; as the term Arhat is, more particularly, applied to them, although it is also used by the Buddhists.

\* इत्यनेकात्मवादं च मायामोहेन निबध्ना ।  
तेन दर्शयता देवाः स्वधर्मास्त्वाजिता द्विज ॥  
† अहंविमं महाधर्मं मायामोहेन ते यतः ।  
प्रोक्तास्त्वमात्रिता धर्ममार्हतास्तेन तेऽभवन् ॥

‡ *Anura.*

§ Or Professor Wilson's collected essays, Vol. I., pp. 315, 316.

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 386, 387.

das were, in a short time, deserted by most of the Daitya race. Then the same deluder, putting on garments of a red colour, assuming a benevolent aspect, and speaking in soft and agreeable tones, addressed others of the same family, and said to them: "If, (mighty) demons, you cherish a desire either for heaven or for final repose,\* desist from the iniquitous massacre of animals (for sacrifice), and hear (from me what you should do). Know that all (that exists) is composed of discriminative knowledge.† Understand my words; for they have been uttered by the wise. This world subsists without support,‡ and, engaged in the pursuit of error, which it mistakes for knowledge, as well as vitiated by passion and the rest, revolves in the straits of existence." In this manner, exclaiming to them, "Know!" (Budhyadhwam), and they replying, "It is known" (Budhyate), these Daityas were induced, by the arch-deceiver, to deviate from their religious duties§ (and become Bauddhas), by his repeated argu-

\* *Nirvāṇa*.

† *Vijñāna*. The commentator explains this term by *buddhi*. He says that the doctrine of the Yogācāras—a sect of Bauddhas,—is here set forth. According to Colebrooke,—*Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 391,—the Yogācāras "except internal sensation or intelligence (*vijñāna*), and acknowledge all else to be void. They maintain the eternal existence of conscious sense alone."

‡ This is the faith of the Mādhyamikas, agreeably to the scholiast. These "maintain that all is void (*sarva śūnya*); following, as it seems, a literal interpretation of Buddha's *sūtras*." Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 391. See, further, on the Yogācāras and Mādhyamikas, Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., pp. 449 *et seq.*

§ I find no reading but this:

एवं बुध्यत बुध्यध्वं बुध्यतेवमितीरयन् ।

मायामोहः स दैतेयान्धर्ममत्वाद्ययन्निजम् ॥

ments and variously urged persuasions.<sup>1</sup> When they had abandoned their own faith, they persuaded others to do the same: and the heresy spread; and many deserted the practices enjoined by the Vedas and the laws.

The delusions of the false teacher paused not with the conversion of the Daityas to the Jaina and Bauddha\* heresies; but, with various erroneous tenets,† he prevailed upon others to apostatize, until the whole were led astray, and deserted the doctrines and observances inculcated by the three Vedas. Some then spake evil of the sacred books; some blasphemed the gods; some treated sacrifices and other devotional ceremonies with scorn; and others calumniated the Brahmans. "The precepts," they cried, that lead to the injury of

<sup>1</sup> We have, therefore, the Bauddhas noticed as a distinct sect. If the author wrote from a personal knowledge of Buddhists in India, he could not have written much later than the tenth or eleventh century.

"Saying 'thus understand, understand, understand thus,' he, the deluder by illusion, caused the Daiteyas—i. e., sons of Diti—to forsake their own religion."

The commentary recognizes *budhyata*, not *budhyate*; as it says: एवं बुध्यतेष्व पुनरुक्तिर्बोद्धपदनिरुद्धार्था ।

Burnouf, evidently without looking at the original of the passage here rerendered, departs still further from its literal sense than Professor Wilson, for whose "arch-deceiver" (*mâyāmoha*) he boldly substitutes Buddha: "Connaissez (*budhyadhwam*), s'écriait le Buddha aux Démons qu'il voulait séduire. Cela est connu (*budhyatê*), répondirent ses auditeurs." *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., note 1 in pp. 70, 71.

\* The translation adds the words "Jaina" and "Bauddha" to the original.

† The commentator explains: लोकायतिकमतभेदेः, "with varieties of the secularist belief."

animal life (as in sacrifices,) are highly reprehensible. To say, that casting butter into flame is productive of reward, is mere childishness. If Indra, after having obtained godhead by multiplied rites, is fed upon the wood used as fuel in holy fire, he is lower than a brute, which feeds, at least, upon leaves. If an animal slaughtered in religious worship is, thereby, raised to heaven, would it not be expedient for a man who institutes a sacrifice to kill his own father for a victim? If that which is eaten by one, at a Śrāddha, gives satisfaction to another, it must be unnecessary for one who resides at a distance to bring food for presentation in person."<sup>1</sup>\* "First, then, let it be determined what may be (rationally) believed by mankind; and then," said their preceptor, "you will find, that felicity may be expected from my instructions. The words of authority do not, mighty Asuras, fall from heaven: the text that has reason is, alone, to be acknowledged by me, and by such as you are."<sup>2</sup> By such and similar lessons the

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, according to the commentator, a Śrāddha may be performed, for a man who is abroad, by any of his kinsmen who are tarrying at home: it will be of equal benefit to him as if he offered it himself; he will equally eat of the consecrated food.†

<sup>2</sup> We have, in these passages, no doubt, allusion to the Bār-

---

\* तृप्तये जायते पुंसो भुक्तमन्येन चेत्ततः ।

दद्याच्छ्राद्धं श्रद्धयाज्ञं न वहियुः प्रवासिनः ॥

† अन्येन श्राद्धेऽन्नं भुक्तमन्यस्स तृप्तये चेज्जायते तर्हि प्रवासिनोऽन्नं न वहियुः । किंतु स्वयमश्वितः पुत्रादिस्समुद्दिश्य श्राद्धं दद्यात् ।  
Commentary.

For the real meaning of the verse thus explicated, which the Translator misunderstood, see note \* in p. 214, *infra*.



Daiṭyas were perverted, so that not one of them admitted the authority of the Vedas.

---

haspatyas, or followers of Bṛihaspati, who seem to have been numerous and bold at some period anterior to the fourteenth century. Asiatic Researches, Vol. XVI., p. 5.\*

---

\* Or Professor Wilson's collected essays, Vol. I. pp. 5—7.

I subjoin Dr. Muir's translation of a metrical passage, quoted in the *Sarvadarśanasangraha*, purporting to represent the views of Bṛihaspati:

"There is no heaven, no final liberation, no soul [which continues to exist] in another world, nor any ceremonies of castes or orders which are productive of future reward.

"The Agnihotra-sacrifice, the three Vedas, the mendicant's triple staff (*tridaṇḍa*), and the practice of smearing with ashes, are the means of livelihood ordained, by the Creator, for men who have neither understanding nor energy.

"If [it be true, that] an animal slaughtered at the Jyotishtōma sacrifice is [in consequence,] exalted to heaven, why does not the worshipper immolate his own father?

"If a *śraddha* (offering of food to the manes) satiates even defunct creatures, it is quite superfluous to furnish people who are setting out upon a journey with any provisions; [as their friends who remain behind can offer food to them].

"Since [as you say,] persons in heaven are filled by oblations presented upon earth, why is not food similarly offered [by those below,] to people on the roof of the house?

"While a man does live, let him live merrily, let him borrow money, and swallow clarified butter. How can a body return to Earth, after it has once been reduced to ashes?

"If a man goes to another world, when he quits his body, why does not affection for his kindred impel him to come back?

"Hence, ceremonies for the dead are a mere means of livelihood devised by the Brāhmins, and nothing else.

"The three composers of the Veda were buffoons, rogues, and goblins. Every one has heard of *jarbhari*, *turphari*, and such other [nonsensical] exclamations of the Pandits.

"It is well known, that, in an *aśvamedha* (horse-sacrifice), the embraces of the horse must be received by the queen; and it is, in like manner, well known what other sorts of things, also, are to be grasped by those

When the Daityas had thus declined from the path of the holy writings, the deities took courage, and gathered together for battle. Hostilities, accordingly, were renewed; but the demons were now defeated and slain by the gods, who had adhered to the righteous path. The armour of religion, which had formerly protected the Daityas, had been discarded by them; and upon its abandonment followed their destruction.<sup>1\*</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> We may have, in this conflict of the orthodox divinities and heretical Daityas, some covert allusion to political troubles,

---

buffoons. In the same way, the eating of flesh is prescribed by those goblins." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., pp. 299—301.

Dr. Muir's learned and instructive notes must, for want of space, be omitted.

\* The original of these two paragraphs has been more accurately rendered, by Dr. Muir, as follows: "The great Deceiver, practising illusion, next beguiled other Daityas by means of many other sorts of heresy. In a very short time, these Asuras (= Daityas), deluded by the Deceiver, abandoned the entire system founded on the ordinances of the triple Veda. Some reviled the Vedas; others, the gods; others, the ceremonial of sacrifice; and others, the Brāhmins. This [they exclaimed,] is a doctrine which will not bear discussion: the slaughter [of animals, in sacrifice,] is not conducive to religious merit. [To say, that] oblations of butter consumed in the fire produce any future reward, is the assertion of a child. If Indra, after having attained to godhead by numerous sacrifices, feeds upon *sami* and other woods, then an animal which eats leaves is superior to him. If it be a fact, that a beast slain in sacrifice is exalted to heaven, why does not the worshipper slaughter his own father? If a man is really satiated by food which another person eats, then *śraddhas* should be offered to people who are travelling abroad; and they, trusting to this, should have no need to carry any food along with them. After it has been settled, that this doctrine is entitled to credence, let the opinions which I express be pondered, and received as conducive to happiness. Infallible utterances do not, great Asuras, fall from the skies: it is only assertions founded on reasoning that are ac-

Thus, Maitreya, (you are to understand, that) those who have seceded from their original belief are said to be naked, because they have thrown off the garment of the Vedas. According to the law, there are four conditions (or orders of men of the three first castes),—the religious student, the householder, the hermit, and the mendicant.\* There is no fifth state; and the unrighteous man who relinquishes the order of the householder, and does not become either an anchorite or a mendicant, is (also,) a naked (seceder). The man who neglects his permanent observances for one day and night, being able to perform them, incurs, thereby, sin for one day; and, should he omit them, not being in trouble, for a fortnight, he can be purified only by arduous expiation. The virtuous must (stop to) gaze upon the sun, after looking upon a person who has allowed a year to elapse without the observance of the

---

growing out of religious differences, and the final predominance of Brahmanism. Such occurrences seem to have preceded the invasion of India by the Mohammedans, and prepared the way for their victories.

---

cepted by me, and by other [intelligent] persons like yourselves. Thus, by numerous methods, the Daityas were unsettled by the great Deceiver; so that none of them any longer regarded the triple Veda with favour. When the Daityas had entered on this path of error, the deities mustered all their energies, and approached to battle. Then followed a combat between the gods and the Asuras; and the latter, who had abandoned the right road, were smitten by the former. In previous times, they had been defended by the armour of righteousness which they bore; but, when that had been destroyed, they, also, perished." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., p. 302.

For the remainder of this note, see the end of the volume.

\* *Parivrāj*.

perpetual ceremonies; and they must bathe, with their clothes on, should they have touched him: but, for the individual himself, no expiation has been declared. There is no sinner, upon earth, more culpable than one in whose dwelling the gods,\* progenitors, and spirits† are left to sigh, unworshipped. Let not a man associate, in residence, sitting, or society,‡ with him whose person, or whose house, has been blasted by the sighs of the gods, progenitors, and spirits. Conversation, interchange of civilities,§ or association|| with a man who, for a twelvemonth, has not discharged his religious duties, is productive of equality of guilt; and the person who eats in the house of such a man, or sits down with him, or sleeps on the same couch with him, becomes like him, instantaneously. Again; he who takes his food without showing reverence to the gods, progenitors, spirits, and guests, commits sin. How great is his sin! The Brahmans, and men of the other castes, who turn their faces away from their proper duties, become heretics, and are classed with those who relinquish pious works. Remaining in a place where there is too great an intermixture of the four castes is detrimental to the character of the righteous.

\* Insert 'Rishis'.

† *Bhūta*.

‡ *Parichchhāda*.

§ *Anuprasna*.

|| Here insert, by transfer, the words "for a twelvemonth." The original runs:

संभाषणानुप्रश्नादि सहास्रां चैव कुर्वतः ।

आयते तुल्यतां पुंससेनैव द्विज वत्सरम् ॥

The commentator says: संवत्सरं कुर्वतः । तेन । नयेन ।

Men fall into hell, who converse with one who takes his food without offering a portion to the gods, the sages,\* the manes, spirits, and guests. Let, therefore, a prudent person carefully avoid the conversation, or the contact, and the like, of those heretics who are rendered impure by their desertion of the three Vedas. The ancestral rite, although performed with zeal and faith, pleases neither gods nor progenitors, if it be looked upon by apostates.†

It is related, that there was, formerly, a king named Śatadhanu, whose wife, Śaibyá, was (a woman) of great virtue. She was devoted to her husband, benevolent, sincere, pure, adorned with every female excellence, with humility, and discretion.‡ The Raja and his wife daily worshipped the god of gods, Janárdana, with pious meditations, oblations to fire, prayers, gifts, fasting, and every other mark of entire faith, and exclusive devotion. On one occasion, when they had fasted on the full moon of Kárttika, and had bathed in the Bhágíráthí, they beheld, as they came up from the water, a heretic approach them, who was the friend of the Raja's military preceptor.§ The Raja, out of respect to the latter, entered into conversation with the heretic; but not so did the princess. Reflecting that she was observing a fast, she turned from him, and cast

\* *Rishi.*

† अश्वावन्निः कृतं यत्नाहिवान्मृतुपितामहान्  
न प्रीक्षयति तच्छ्राद्धं यदेभिरवलोकितम् ॥

‡ पतिव्रता महाभागा सत्त्वशीचदयान्विता ।  
सर्वसत्त्वसंपन्ना विनयेन नयेन च ॥

§ *Chápacharya*; literally, 'archery-master.'

her eyes up to the sun. On their arrival at home, the husband and wife, as usual, performed the worship of Vishnú, agreeably to the ritual. After a time, the Raja, triumphant over his enemies, died; and the princess ascended the funeral-pile of her husband.

In consequence of the fault committed by Śatadhanu, by speaking to an infidel, when he was engaged in a solemn fast, he was born again, as a dog. His wife was born as the daughter of the Raja of Káśí, with a knowledge of the events of her preexistence, accomplished in every science,\* and endowed with every virtue. Her father was anxious to give her, in marriage, to some suitable husband: but she constantly opposed his design; and the king was prevented, by her, from accomplishing her nuptials.† With the eye of divine intelligence, she knew that her own husband had been regenerate as a dog; and, going, once, to the city of Vaidiśá, she saw the dog, and recognized her former lord in him. Knowing that the animal was her husband, she placed upon his neck the bridal garland, accompanying it with the marriage-rites and prayers:‡ but he, eating the delicate food presented to him, expressed his delight, after the fashion of his species. At which she was much ashamed, and, bowing reverently

\* *Vijnána.*

† तां पिता दातुकामोऽभूदराय विनिवारितः ।  
तथैव तन्वा विरतो विवाहारम्भतो नृपः ॥

‡ The original has:

ददौ तस्मै वराहारं सत्कारप्रवणं शुभम् ।

"She bestowed on him excellent cates and kind treatment."

This is instead of "she placed . . . prayers." The cates are referred to just below.

to him, thus spake to her degraded\* spouse: "Recall to memory, illustrious prince, the ill-timed politeness on account of which you have been born as a dog, and are now fawning upon me. In consequence of speaking to a heretic, after bathing in a sacred river, you have been condemned to this abject birth. Do you not remember it?" Thus reminded, the Raja recollected his former condition, and was lost in thought, and felt deep humiliation. With a broken spirit, he went forth from the city, and, falling dead in the desert, was born anew, as a jackal. In the course of the following year, the princess knew what had happened, and went to the mountain Koláhala, to seek for her husband. Finding him there, the lovely daughter of the king of the earth said to her lord, thus disguised as a jackal: "Dost thou not remember, O king, the circumstance of conversing with a heretic, which I called to thy recollection, when thou wast a dog?" The Raja, thus addressed, knew that what the princess had spoken was true, and, thereupon, desisted from food, and died. He then became a wolf; but his blameless wife knew it, and came to him in the lonely forest, and awakened his remembrance of his original state. "No wolf art thou," she said, "but the illustrious sovereign Śatadhanu. Thou wast then a dog, then a jackal, and art now a wolf." Upon this, recollecting himself, the prince abandoned his life, and became a vulture; in which form his lovely queen still found him, and aroused him to a knowledge of the past. "Prince," she exclaimed, "recollect yourself: away with this uncouth form, to which the sin of

---

\* *Kuyonija.*

conversing with a heretic has condemned you!" The Raja was next born as a crow; when the princess, who, through her mystical powers, was aware of it, said to him: "Thou art now, thyself, the eater of tributary grain, to whom, in a prior existence, all the kings of the earth paid tribute."<sup>1</sup> Having abandoned his body, in consequence of the recollections excited by these words, the king next became a peacock, which the princess took to herself, and petted, and fed, constantly, with such food as is agreeable to birds of its class. The king of Kāśī\* instituted, at that time, the solemn sacrifice of a horse. In the ablutions with which it terminated,† the princess caused her peacock to be bathed; bathing, also, herself: and she then reminded Śata-dhanu how he had been successively born as various animals. On recollecting this, he resigned his life. He was, then, born as the son of a person of distinction;‡ and, the princess now assenting to the wishes of her father to see her wedded, the king of Kāśī caused it to be made known, that she would elect a bridegroom from those who should present themselves as suitors

---

<sup>1</sup>. There is a play upon the word Bali, which means 'tribute', or 'fragments of a meal, scattered abroad to the birds', &c.

---

\* The original has जनकी राजा, 'King Janaka'; thus revealing the monarch's name. This Janaka is nowhere else mentioned in the *Vishnu-purāṇa*.

† *Apabhṛitha*. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, XI., 83.

‡ We read, in the Sanskrit:

अग्रे च जनकस्यैव पुत्रोऽसौ सुमहात्मनः ।

"And he was born as son of the very magnanimous Janaka."

Here, then, emerges still another Janaka; unless we suppose the princess to have married her own brother or half-brother..



for her hand.\* When the election took place, the princess made choice of her former lord, who appeared amongst the candidates, and again invested him with the character of her husband. They lived happily together;† and, upon her father's decease, Śatadhanu ruled over the country of Videha.‡ He offered many sacrifices, and gave away (many) gifts, and begot sons, and subdued his enemies in war; and, having duly exercised the sovereign power, and cherished (benignantly,) the earth, he died, as became his warrior-birth,§ in battle. His queen again followed him in death, and, conformably to sacred precepts, once more mounted, cheerfully, his funeral pile. The king, then, along with his princess, ascended beyond the sphere of Indra, to the regions where all desires are for ever gratified, || ob-

\* ततः सा पितरं तन्वी विवाहार्थमचोदयत् ।  
स चापि कारयामास पिता तस्माः स्वयंवरम् ॥

† बुभुजे च तया सार्धं समोगानुपनन्दनः ।

“And the prince, with her, governed Sabhoga.”

Of this country I know of no other notice. There are obvious objections to reading स भोगात्; and I find no lection संभोगात्.

‡ The text seems to point to some close connexion between Kāśī, Vaidīśā, and Videha. For Kāśī, see Vol. II., p. 163, notes 12 and ¶; and, for Videha, *ibid.*, p. 165, notes 9 and ¶.

Vidīśā—perhaps intended by Vaidīśā,—is mentioned in Vol. II., p. 150, note 6. The word Vaidīśā may be due to the confounding, by ignorant or heedless copyists, of the *i* with the *ai* of old MSS. transcribed by them. Every one who has used such MSS., or has had to do with mediæval inscriptions, must have encountered, repeatedly, the particle *वे* so written as to be all but, if not quite, undistinguishable from *वि*, and *vice versa*. Perhaps the unjustifiable Triyāruṇa may now be accounted for: *vide supra*, foot of p. 37. Also see p. 158, note ‡; and Burnouf's *Introduction*, &c., Vol. I., p. 86, note 2, on Viśālā and Vaiśālī.

§ This phrase is an expansion of *dharma*tas.

|| This translates *lokān kāmāduhaḥ*. For the region called by the equivalent name Kāmāduha, *vide supra*, p. 164, Translator's note.

taining ever-during and unequalled happiness in heaven, the perfect felicity that is the rarely realized reward of conjugal fidelity.<sup>1\*</sup>

Such, Maitreya, is the sin of conversing with a heretic, and such are the expiatory effects of bathing after the solemn sacrifice of a horse,† as I have narrated them to you. Let, therefore, a man carefully avoid the discourse or contact of an unbeliever, especially at seasons of devotion, and when engaged in the performance of religious rites preparatory to a sacrifice.‡ If it be necessary that a wise man should look at the sun, after beholding one who has neglected his domestic ceremonies for a month, how much greater need must there be of expiation, after encountering one who has wholly abandoned the Vedas, one who is supported by infidels, or who disputes the doctrines of holy writ? Let not a person treat with even the civility of speech, heretics, those who do forbidden acts, § pretended saints, || scoundrels, sceptics, ¶ and hypocrites. Intercourse with such

---

<sup>1</sup> The legend is peculiar to the Vishnū Purāṇa, although the doctrine it inculcates is to be found elsewhere.

<sup>2</sup> Haitukas, 'causalists;' either the followers of the Nyāya or

---

\* स्वर्गाद्यत्यमृतं दाम्पत्यमतिदुर्लभम् ।  
 प्राप्तं पुण्यफलं प्राप्य संसिद्धिं तां द्विजोत्तम ॥  
 † तथाश्चमेधावभृथस्नानमाहात्म्यमेव च ।  
 ‡ विशेषतः क्रियाकाले यच्चादौ चापि दीक्षितः ।

§ *Vikarmastha*.

|| *Baidālavratika*. The original of "hypocrites" is *bakavṛitti*.

¶ The patrons of the Veda, like their analogues of all times and climes, have a just dread of the exercise of right reason; and *haituka*, or 'rationalist', is, of course, a designation of evil omen to orthodox Hindus. The annexed extract from the *Gīrvāṇapadamanjari* of Varadarāja, or

iniquitous wretches, even at a distance,—all association

‘logical’ philosophy, or Bauddhas; those who take nothing upon authority, and admit nothing that cannot be proved: or it is ex-

Varada Bhaṭṭa,—*vide supra*, p. 136, note \*,—may remind the reader of Sir William Hamilton’s demolition, quotationwise, of the mathematics. One hapless logician, we here read, was cursed to become a jackal; while another was transformed into a ghoul. A person who addicts himself to the Nyāya is to be reckoned a dog; and Śāṅkara Āchārya is said to stigmatize such a one as a bull sans tail and horns. The extract here follows:

किंच तर्कवैशेषिकादीनि कानिचिद्दर्शनानि निषिद्धानि वर्तन्ते ।  
तथा हि । आदिपर्वणि [sl. 4192—6] भीष्मोत्पत्तिकथनानन्तरं पाण्डुः  
कुन्वा आह ।

स वै दीर्घतमा नाम शापाद्विरजायत ।

स पुञ्जयामास गीतमादीन्महायशाः ।

लोभमोहाभिभूतास्तु पुञ्जये गीतमादयः ॥ इति ।

अत एव ह्यशौर्षपञ्चरात्रे ।

कपिलश्चाक्षपादश्च नास्तिको नम एव च ।

अष्टयस्त्रामसा एते शास्त्रमेषां विमोहनम् ॥ इति ।

मोक्षधर्मे [Read *Anuśāsana-parvan*, sl. 2195—6] ।

आन्वीक्षिकीं तर्कविद्यामनुरक्तो निरर्थिकाम् ।

हेतुवादान्मुवन्सत्सु विजेता ब्राह्मणादिषु ॥

यस्त्रेयं फलनिष्पत्तिः शृगालस्त्वं भव द्विज ।

न तर्कशास्त्रदग्धाय न वाच्यं पिशुनाय च ॥ इति ।

दानधर्मे ।

आन्वीक्षिकां सदासक्तं नरं श्वानं च तं विदुः ।

आदित्यपुराणे ।

बौद्धा वैशेषिका जैना भविष्यन्ति कक्षी युगे ।

पद्मपुराणे ।

कणादं गीतमं शाक्तमुपमन्युं च वैमिनिम् ।

अष्टयस्त्रामसा एते शास्त्रमेषां विमोहनम् ।

मच्छ्रयवेष्टितैरेतैरभेदो मम गोपितः ॥ इति ।

रामायणेऽथोष्वाकाण्डे ।

शास्त्रेष्वन्येषु मुख्येषु विद्यमानेषु दुर्बुधाः ।

बुद्धिमान्वीक्षिकीं प्राप्य निरयं प्रतियन्ति ते ॥

with schismatics,—defiles. Let a man, therefore, care-  
plained, those who, by argument, cast a doubt upon the efficacy

भवेत्पण्डितमानी यो ब्राह्मणो वेदनिन्दकः ।  
आन्वीक्षिकीं तर्कविद्यामनुरक्तो निरर्थिकाम् ॥  
हेतुवादान्मृगस्तसु विवेता हेतुवादिकः ।  
क्रोष्टा चामितवक्ता च ब्राह्मणानां सदैव हि ॥  
सर्वापशङ्की मूढश्च बाह्यश्च कटुवानपि ।  
बोद्धव्यस्यामसंज्ञात नरन्त्यानं च तं विदुः ॥  
यथा आभिमतं दुष्टं हनुं विवावसृज्यते ।  
एवं संभाषणार्थाय स हि शास्त्रवधाय च ॥ इति ।

मिताचरायाम् ।

हेतुकाव्यकवृत्तीश्च वाङ्मयिष्यापि नार्थयेत् ।  
तर्काप्रतिष्ठानादिति व्याससूचम् [II., I., 11] । नैषा तर्केण मतिरापनेषा  
इति श्रुतिः [Katha Upanishad, II., 9] । पाप्मे पार्वतीं प्रतीक्षर चाह ।  
मच्छक्त्यावेशितैर्विप्रैः संप्रोक्तानि ततः परम् ।  
कणादेन तु संप्रोक्तं शास्त्रं वैशेषिकं महत् ॥  
गोतमेन तथा न्यायं साङ्ख्यं तु कपिलेन वै ।  
द्विजम्बना क्षेमिनिना पृथं वेदमथार्थतः ॥  
गिरीश्वरेण वादेन कृते शास्त्रं महत्तमम् ॥ इति ।

पराशरोपपुराणे ।

अक्षपादप्रणीते च कणादे साङ्ख्ययोगयोः ।  
त्वाज्यः श्रुतिविद्वांश्च श्रुतिकशरणीर्भूमिः ।  
क्षेमिनीये च वैयासे विद्वांश्चो न कश्चन ॥ इति ।

काशीमाहात्म्ये । तर्कशास्त्रं पठित्वात्वनं परिभाव्य महातार्किको जातः ।  
तदनन्तरमगम्यागमनादिकं कृत्वा मातुलानां भक्षणं कृत्वा स्मितवान् ।  
कदर्यदेशे कलिवृक्षोपरि महापिशाचो भूत्वा बह्मकालपर्यन्तं स्मितः ।  
द्विजवैता नाम कश्चन ब्राह्मण इत्यादि सर्वत्र श्रूयते । अत एव बृहदार-  
ण्यकभाष्ये आचार्यचरणीयतम् । पुच्छविषाखरहितास्त्रार्थिकवक्षी-  
यर्दाः प्रत्यवतिष्ठन्त इति । तस्माद्विशेषिके तर्के चात्वनं न पठनीय-  
मित्येव प्रतीयते ।

Varadarāja's citations and references are careless in the extreme. To the source of the extract which he professes to take from the *Rāmdayana* a clue is indicated by the verses wrongly attributed to the *Moksha-dharma*; and the line which he assigns to the *Mitāksharā* is the very passage of the *Vishnu-purāṇa* to which this note is appended.

fully avoid them.\*

These, Maitreya, are the persons called naked, the meaning of which term you desired to have explained. Their very looks vitiate the performance of an ancestral oblation: speaking to them destroys religious merit for a whole day. These are the unrighteous heretics to whom a man must not give shelter,† and speaking to whom effaces whatever merit he may, that day, have obtained. Men, indeed, fall into hell, as the consequence of only conversing with those who unprofitably‡ assume the twisted hair and shaven crown; with those who feed without offering food to gods, spirits, and guests;§ and those who are excluded from the presentation of cakes and libations of water to the manes.

---

of acts of devotion. ||

---

\* दूरादपासः संपर्कः सहास्यपि च पापिभिः ।

पाषण्डिभिर्दुराचारैस्तस्मात्तान्परिवर्जयेत् ॥

† एते पाषण्डिनः पापा न होतानास्तपेदुधः ।

This is the only reading that I find. Professor Wilson may have read *ātrayet*, for *ālapet*; mistaking its meaning.

‡ *Vṛthā*.

§ मोघाग्निनामखिलशीचनिराकृतानाम् ।

|| This last explanation is the only one given by the commentator,—in a line in the midst of an anonymous metrical quotation:

संदेहश्चेतुभिः सत्कर्मसु स हेतुकः ।

But see the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, XII., 111, and Kullūka's gloss thereon.

In his *Essays, Analytical, &c.*, Vol. I., pp. 5—7, Professor Wilson has given an account of the measures which he took, in India, towards preparing the materials that served as the basis of his Analyses of the Purāṇas, a series of papers ultimately abandoned unfinished. Under his oversight, we read, "indices were drawn up in Sanskrit. To convert

them into English, I employed several native young men, educated in the Hindu College, and well conversant with our language; and to them the Pandits explained the summary which they had compiled. The original and translation were examined by myself, and corrected wherever necessary. When any particular article appeared to promise interest or information, I had that translated in detail, or translated it myself; in the former case, revising the translation with the original."

From among all the works thus dealt with, none was the object of greater care than the *Vishnu-purāṇa*. Of this a very large part was thought worthy of unabridged reproduction in English. Out of the scattered portions left untranslated, the longest occurs in the Book here completed, embracing Chapters VIII.—XVIII.

This being an appropriate place for a general note, and it being of interest to know the relation of the present version to that made in India, I shall here add a few specimens of the latter,—now the property of the India Office Library,—indicating the locality of the corresponding passages in the former.

Vol. I., p. 87, l. 6 *ab infra*.

"As the characteristics of seasons are seen (to be the same and identical in all their returnings), so in that manner they are the same in every beginning of the Yuga, &c. Thus, he creates, again and again, on the commencement of the Kalpas. This (Brahmā) is desirous of creating, has the power of so doing, and is joined with the power of making creations."

Vol. II., p. 223, l. 6.

"He who thinks on Vāsudeva during his prayers, sacrifices, and worship, despises even the state of Mahendra."

Vol. II., p. 241, l. 5.

"In the same manner, O Maitreya, as the sun shines here in the mid-day, so does he shine in the other Dwipas in the midnight. He is always seen opposite, in the time of his setting and rising, (whether seen) from the cardinal points or the corners. Whoever observes the sun from any place, he is rising there; and wherever he disappears, he is setting there. The sun is constantly present, and is neither setting nor rising (in any place, in reality). The ideas of his setting and rising are obtained merely from his being either visible or invisible (in any particular place)."

Vol. II., p. 244, l. 6.

"The rays of the sun and fire, identical with light and heat, pervade, during both day and night, being mingled with each other."

Vol. II., p. 281, note \*.

"Both these waters are productive of virtue and destructive of sin. These waters, O Maitreya, are of the Mandākinī; and it is the bathing in them that is called *Dvayamāna*."

Vol. II., p. 309, l. 4 *ab infra*.

"When the world, being freed from works, is rendered void of defects, pure in its real form, and identical with knowledge, then the tree of desire produces no fruits, and all distinctions of matter are lost."

Vol. II., p. 320, l. 8.

"The earth, feet, legs, buttocks, thighs, belly, &c., are, thus, depending upon one another. In the same manner, therefore, as this palanquin is upon my shoulder, so you do bear a load, also."

Vol. III., p. 17, l. 7.

"In the Raivata Manwantara, he, the Vishnú, who is the superior of all the Devatás, was born in the womb of Sambhúti, with the Rájasa-gańa, under the title of Mánasa."

Vol. III., p. 65, l. 1.

"A fourth Samhítá was written by Romaharshańa, called Romaharshańiká. The essence of these four Samhítás, O Muni, or Maitreya, I have given in this Vishnú Puráńa, which I shall communicate to you."

Further, we have, in Vol. III., "Bhagadheya" for "Nábhanidishťa", p. 13, last line; "twenty-one", p. 23, l. 5; "Medhátithi", p. 25, l. 3; "Savarga", p. 27, l. 2; an omission of "Táras", p. 27, l. 6 and note ||; &c. &c. &c.





# VISHNÚ PURÁÑA.

---

## BOOK IV.

---

### CHAPTER I.

Dynasties of kings. Origin of the solar dynasty from Brahmá. Sons of the Manu Vaivaswata. Transformations of Ilá or Sudyumna. Descendants of the sons of Vivaswat: those of Nedisháha. Greatness of Marutta. Kings of Vaiśáli. Descendants of Śaryāti. Legend of Raivata: his daughter Revati married to Balaráma.

**MAITREYA.**—Venerable preceptor, you have explained to me the perpetual and occasional ceremonies which are to be performed by those righteous individuals who are diligent in their devotions; and you have, also, described to me the duties which devolve upon the several castes, and on the different orders of the human race. I have now to request you will relate to me the dynasties (of the kings who have ruled over the earth).<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The complete series of the different dynasties is found elsewhere only in the Váyu, the Brahmánda (which is the same), the Matsya, and the Bhágavata Puráñas. The Brahma Purána and the Hari Vamśa, the Agni, Linga, Kúrma, and Garúda Puráñas have lists of various extent, but none beyond the families of Pándu and Kíshná. The Márkańdeya contains an account

PARĀŚARA.—I will repeat to you, Maitreya, an account of the family of Manu, commencing with Brahmá, and graced by a number of religious, magnanimous,\* and heroic princes. Of which it is said: "The lineage of him shall never be extinct, who daily calls to mind the race of Manu, originating with Brahmá."<sup>1</sup> Listen, therefore, Maitreya, to the (entire) series† of the princes of this family, by which all sin shall be effaced.

Before (the evolution of) the mundane egg, existed Brahmá, who was Hiraṇyagarbha, the form of (that supreme) Brahma which consists of Vishṇu as identical with the Rig-, Yajur-, and Sāma-‡ (Vedas); the primeval, uncreated cause§ of all worlds. From the right thumb of Brahmá was born the patriarch Daksha:<sup>2</sup> his daughter was Aditi, who was the mother|| of

---

of a few of the kings of the solar dynasty alone; and the Padma, of a part of the solar and lunar princes only, besides accounts of individuals. In the Rāmāyaṇa, Mahābhārata, and in the other Purāṇas, occasional short genealogies and notices of individual princes occur. In general, there is a tolerable conformity: but this is not invariably the case; as we shall have occasion to observe.

<sup>1</sup> In the historical passages of all the Purāṇas in which such occur, and, especially, in the Vishṇu and Vāyu, verses, apparently the fragments of a more ancient narrative, are frequently cited. It may, also, be noticed, as a peculiarity of this part of the Purāṇa, that the narration is in prose.

<sup>2</sup> Daksha is elsewhere said to have been one of the mind-born sons of Brahmá, or to have been the son of the Prachetasas. See Vol. II., p. 9, note 1.

---

\* *Vira*, which the commentator defines by *utsāhavat*, 'energetic'.

† *Āmṣṭīrvi*, 'succession.' ‡ The original adds 'etc.' § *Ādibhūta*.

|| The father being Kaśyapa, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., I., 10.

the Sun.\* The Manu (Vaivaswata) was the son of the celestial luminary; and his sons<sup>1</sup> were Ikshwáku,

<sup>1</sup> According to the nomenclature sometimes followed, and, as we shall have reason to conclude, intended in this place, there are ten sons of Manu. The commentator regards them, however, as but nine; considering Nábhága-nedishtha but one name, or, Nedishtha the father of Nábhága.† The number is generally stated to be nine; although there is some variety in the names, particularly in this name, which occurs Nabhágadishta, Nábhá-gárishta;‡ and also separated, as Nábhága, Nabhaga, or Nabhága; Nedishtha, Dishta, and Arishta: the latter, as in the Kúrma, distinctly stated, नाभागो हरिष्टः । Again, नेदिष्ठः सप्तमः सुतः । Brahma Purána. The commentator on the Hari Vamśa quotes the Vedas for Nábhágadishta: नाभागदिष्टं वै मानवमिति सुतेः ।§ But the name occurs as Nábhánedishtha in the Aitareya Bráhmaña of the Rígveda, where|| a story is told of his being excluded from all share of his inheritance, on the plea of his being wholly devoted to a religious life: नाभागेदिष्टं वै मानवं ब्रह्मचर्यं वसन्तं भातरो निरभजन् । See, also, Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 384.¶ The name, as ordinarily written, Na-bhága, 'no-share,' has, nevertheless, an obvious connexion with the legend. The name of Nfiga is found only in our text, the Padma, and the

\* *Vivaswat*; and so in the next sentence.

For Vivaswat's wives, *vide supra*, p. 20, text and note 1.

† नाभागस्य पिता नेदिष्ठ इत्यर्थः । क्वचिन्नेदिष्ठस्यैव दिष्ट इत्यपि संज्ञा । Dishta is here recognized as a substitute, "somewhere", for Nedishtha. *Vide infra*, p. 240, notes 2, †, ††, and ††.

‡ Corrected from "Nábhágarishtha".

§ This quotation is from Nílakantha on the *Harivamśa*, *sl.* 614. Only I find, invariably, the reading नाभागेदिष्टं, yielding Nábhánedishtha.

|| V., 14. On the Nabánazdista of the ancient Pársis, see Professor R. Roth, *Zeitschrift der Deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, Vol. VI., pp. 243—247.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 25.

Nṛīga,\* Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti,† Narishyanta, Prāmśu, Nābhāga, Nedishṭha,‡ Karūsha,§ and Pṛishadhra.

Bhāgavata: the Vāyu has Najava.|| Prāmśu is, also, the reading of the Vāyu and Agni, but not of the rest,¶ which have Vena, Vanya, Daṇḍa, Kuśanābha, or Kavi, in its place. The Mahābhārata, Ādi Parvan,\*\* p. 113, has: Vena,†† Dhṛishṇu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikshwāku, Karūsha, Śaryāti, Ilā, Pṛishadhra, and Nābhāgarishṭa. The Padma Purāna, in the Pātāla Khaṇḍa, says there were 'ten,'‡‡ and names them Ikshwāku, Nṛīga, Disṭa, Dhṛishṭa, Karūsha, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Pṛishadhra, Nābhāga, and Kavi.

\* Vide *supra*, p. 13, note ††; *et infra*, p. 256, notes \* and §.

† Several MSS. have Śaryāti.

‡ Substituted, here and in numerous instances below, for the unmeaning "Nedisṭha". § In three MSS. I find Kārūsha.

|| This seems to have been mistaken for Nahava, into which one of Professor Wilson's MSS. corrupts Nahusha, itself an error for Nabhaga.

¶ But see note ‡‡, below.

\*\* Śl. 3140—3142. The last person of this group is called, in the text, the tenth; and Nilakanṭha, the commentator, says, of him: चतुर्धा-  
न्नाभागाद्व्योऽयं नाभागारिष्टी दशमः। We are to understand, then, by नाभावेत्ताकुं, not one name, but an irregular combination of two.

†† The commentator Arjuna Miśra here reads Veṇu.

‡‡ And so says the *Bhāgavata-purāna*,—IX., I., 11, 12,—which gives the same names, save Nabhaga for Nābhāga. At VIII., XIII., 2, 3, it has, among ten names, both Nabhaga and Nābhāga, omitting Nṛīga; and it puts Vasumat for Kavi. Vide *supra*, p. 14, note \*.

Like our text at pp. 13, 14, *supra*, the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāna*, LXXIX., 11, 12, says that the Manu had nine sons: Ikshwāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Disṭa, Karūsha, and Pṛishadhra. The Calcutta edition of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāna* has, here, such bad readings as Śarmāti, Kurūsha, and Prushadhru. See, likewise, the same Purāna, CXI., 4, 5.

In the *Harivaṁśa*, 613, 614, the names, in the best MSS., are, substantially, as in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāna*; except that, instead of Nābhāga and Disṭa, we find Prāmśu and Nābhāgarishṭa, with the variant Daṇḍa and Nedishṭha. Further, Dhṛishṇu is a common substitute for its synonym Dhṛishṭa.

Before their birth, the Manu, being desirous of sons, offered a sacrifice\* (for that purpose,) to Mitra and Varuṇa; but, the rite being deranged, through an irregularity of the ministering priest, a daughter, Ilā,† was produced.<sup>1</sup> Through the favour of the two divinities,

<sup>1</sup> तत्रापकृते होतुरपचारादिना नाम कन्या बभूव । “That sacrifice being wrongly offered, through the improper invocations of the Hotri,” &c.‡ It is also read अपहृते, ‘frustrated.’ This is rather a brief and obscure allusion to what appears to be an ancient legend, and one that has undergone various modifications. §

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has two several lists of the sons of the Manu. The first names Ikshwāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṇu, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nabhāga Arishṭa, Karūsha, Pṛishadhra, and Prāmśu; the second, Ikshwāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Prāmśu, Nabhāga Arishṭa, Karūsha, and Pṛishadhra.

As each of these lists distinctly states that it reckons up only ten persons, we are to find but one in नामागोऽरिष्टः, which stands, here, in lieu of the more ordinary नामागारिष्टः.

See the preceding page, note \*\*; also, p. 240, note \*\*, and p. 256, note \*, *infra*.

\* *Ishṭi*.

† See the references in note \* to p. 236, *infra*; also, Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 82, note a.

‡ It is to this effect that the passage is to be understood, if we read अपहृते, which lection the commentator prefers: तस्मिन्कर्मणि मनुपत्न्या कन्यार्थं प्रार्थितस्व होतुरपचारात्कन्यासंकल्परूपात् । अपहृते विकले जाति सति कन्याभूत् । He adds: अपहृतेरिति पाठोऽपहृष्टादोमादितो-रित्यर्थः । I nowhere find Professor Wilson's reading अपहृते.

§ Premising the names of the Manu's ten sons, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., I., 13—16, says, as translated by Burnouf:

“Avant leur naissance, quand le Manu n'avait pas encore d'enfants, le bienheureux Vasichṭha, ce puissant sage, avait célébré le sacrifice de Mitra et de Varuṇa, pour lui donner des fils.

“Alors Craddhā, la femme du Manu, qui s'était soumise au vœu du lait, s'étant rendue auprès de l'officiant, se jeta à ses pieds, et le supplia de lui donner une fille.

“Mais à l'instant où le Brāhmane faisant les fonctions d'officiant,

however, (her sex was changed, and) she became a man, named Sudyumna. At a subsequent period, in con-

---

According to the Matsya, no change of sex took place, in the first instance. . The eldest son of Manu was *Ida* or *Ila* (इडा or इल), whom his father appointed sovereign of the seven *Dwīpas*. In his progress round his dominions, *Ila* came to the forest of *Śāmbhu* or *Śiva*; entering into which, he was changed to a female, *Ilā*, agreeably to a promise made, formerly, by *Śiva* to *Pārvatī*,—who had been, once, unseasonably broken in upon by some sages,\*—that such a transformation should be inflicted on every male who trespassed upon the sacred grove. After a season, the brothers of *Ila* sought for him, and, finding him thus metamorphosed, applied to *Vasishthā*, their father's priest, to know the cause. He explained it to them, and directed them to worship *Śiva* and his bride. They did so, accordingly; and it was announced, by the deities, that, upon the performance of an *Aśwamedha* by *Ikshwāku*, *Ila* should become a *Kīmpurusha*, named *Sudyumna*; and that he should be a male one month, and a female another month, alternately. The *Vāyu*, which is followed by most of the other authorities, states, that, upon Manu's offering their share of the sacrifice to *Mitra* and *Varuṇa*, instead of a boy, a girl was born; according to the *Vedas*: इडा यज्ञे इति स्मृतिः । Manu desired her to follow him:

तमिषेत्यथ होवाच मनुर्दण्डधरः स्मृतेः ।

अनुगच्छामि भद्रं ते तमिस्रा प्रत्युवाच ह ॥

Whence her name *Ilā* (from *ila* or *ida*, 'come'). There, however, Manu propitiates *Mitra* and *Varuṇa*; and the girl *Ilā* is

---

venait de recevoir ses instructions de celui qui récite le *Yadjus*, et tenait entre ses mains l'offrande, l'attention qu'il donnait à la prière de *Ṛaddhā*, lui fit commettre une erreur dans la manière dont il prononça le mot *Vachas*.

"La méprise de l'officiant donna lieu à la naissance d'une fille qui fut nommée *Ilā*."

\* In *Ilāvṛita*, the scholiast says.

sequence of (becoming subject to the effects of) a malediction once pronounced by Śiva,\* Sudyumna was

changed into the boy Ila, or Sudyumna, by their favour: as the Mārkaṇḍeya:†

तथेति ताभ्यामुक्तं तु देवाभ्यां सेव कन्यका ।

इला इलः समभवत्सुसुख इति विद्युतः ॥

Sudyumna's subsequent change to a female again is told much as in the Matsya; but his being alternately male and female is not mentioned in the Vāyu, any more than it is in our text. The Bhāgavata agrees, in that respect, with the Matsya; but it has, evidently, embellished the earlier part of the legend, by the introduction of another character, Śraddhā, the wife of the Manu. It is said, that it was by her instigation,—as she was desirous of having a girl,—that the ministering Brahmans altered the purpose of the rite; in consequence of which a girl, instead of a boy, was born. The similarity of the name has induced the learned author of the Origin of Pagan Idolatry to conceive that he has found the Ila of the Hindus in the Il or Ilus of the Phœnicians. "The Phenician *Il* is the masculine *Ila* of the Hindoos and Indo-Scythæ; and *Ila* was a title of Menu or Buddha, who was preserved in the ark, at the time of the deluge." Vol. I., p. 156. And he thence concludes, that Ila must be Noah; whilst other circumstances in his Phœnician history identify him with Abraham. Vol. I., p. 159. Again: "*Ilus* or *Il* \* \* is a regular Cuthic name of Buddha, which the Phenicians, I have no doubt, brought with them from their settlements on the Erythræan sea: for Buddha or Menu, in the character of Ila, is said to have married his own daughter, Ila, who is described as the offspring of an ancient personage that was preserved in an ark, at the time of the general deluge." Vol. I., p. 223. Now, whatever connexion there may be between the names of Ila, Il, Ilus, Ilium, Ilā 'the earth,' and Ilos 'slime,' there is no very obvious

\* *Ilcara*, in the original.

† CXI., 11, 12.

again transformed to a woman, in the vicinity of the hermitage of Budha, the son of (the deity of) the Moon. Budha saw and espoused her, and had, by her, a son named Purúravas.\* After his birth, the illustrious † Rishis, desirous of restoring Sudyumna to his sex, prayed to the mighty Vishnú,‡ who is the essence of the four Vedas,§ of mind,|| of éverything, and of nothing;¶ and who is in the form of the sacrificial

---

resemblance between the Paurāṇik legends of Ilá and the Mosaic record; nor do the former authorize the particulars of Ila stated by Mr. Faber, on the authority, probably, of Colonel Wilford. The Manu Satyavrata, who was preserved in the ark, is never called Ila; nor is he the father of Ilá. Buddha was not so preserved; nor is Ila ever a title of Buddha. Budha (not Buddha), the husband of Ilá, never appears as her father; nor is he a Manu; nor is she the daughter of any ancient personage preserved in an ark. There is not, therefore, as far as I am aware, any circumstance in the history of Ila or Ilá which can identify him either with Abraham or Noah.

---

\* सागुरागश्च तस्मां बुधः पुरुरवसमात्मजमुत्पादयामास ।

Thus it is indicated, observes the commentator, that the Solarian race sprang from the Lunarian.

For Ilá and Purúravas, see Chapter VI. of this Book. Ilá is dwelt on, in great detail, by Burnouf, in his *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III., Preface, pp. LXX.—XCII.

See, for another version of the original, Dr. Muir's *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 44.

† *Amitatejas*.

‡ In all my MSS., Vishnú is qualified, first of all, as 'identical with sacrifice,' *ishtimaya*.

§ The epithet 'one with the law', *dharmamaya*, here follows, in nearly all my MSS.

|| Here all my best MSS. insert 'identical with intelligence', *jñānamaya*.

¶ This is not in all MSS.



male;\* and, through his favour, Ilá once more became Sudyumna; (in which character) he had three sons, Utkala, Gayá, and Vinata.<sup>1</sup>

In consequence of his having been, formerly, a female, Sudyumna was excluded from any share in his paternal dominions: but his father, at the suggestion of Vasishthá, bestowed upon him the city Pratishtána;<sup>2</sup> and he gave it to Purúravas.†

<sup>1</sup> The Matsya calls the name of the third, Haritáśwa; the Váyu, &c., Vinatáśwa; the Márkaṇḍeya,‡ Vinaya; and the Bhágavata,§ Vimala. All but the last agree in stating that Utkala (Orissa) and Gayá (in Behar) are named after the two first. The Matsya calls the third the sovereign of the east, along with the Kauravas; the Váyu makes him king of the west.|| The Bhágavata calls them, all three, rulers of the south.¶

<sup>2</sup> The authorities agree in this location of Sudyumna. Pratishtána\*\* was situated on the eastern side of the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna, the country between which rivers was the territory of the direct male descendants of Vaivaswata. In the

\* *Yajñapurusha*. See Vol. I., p. 61, note 1; p. 163, note \*; and pp. 180, 181: also, Vol. II., p. 136.

† One MS. has Purushavara.

‡ CXL., 15.

§ IX., I. 41.

|| The *Váyu-purāṇa* says:

उत्कलखोत्कलं राष्ट्रं विनताश्च पश्चिमम् ।

दिक्पूर्वा तस्य राजर्षेर्गयस्य तु गया पुरी ॥

We are, thus, told, that the kingdom of Vinatáśwa lay to the west of Utkala.

With this compare the *Harivamśa*, śl. 632; and the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXV., 27.

¶ दक्षिणापथराजानो बभूवुर्धर्मवत्सलाः ।

*Vide infra*, p. 240, note ||.

\*\* See Burnouf's *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III., Preface, pp. XCVII., XCVIII.

Of the other sons of the Manu, Prīshadhra, in consequence of (the crime of) killing a cow,\* was degraded

Hari Vamśa, † it is said that he reigned in Pratishthāna, having killed Dhṛiṣṭāka, Ambarisha, and Daṇḍa:

सुसुखः कारयामास प्रतिष्ठाने वृषक्रियाम् ।

धृष्टकशाम्बरीषस दण्डयेति हतचयः ॥

M. Langlois had, ‡ no doubt, सुतचयः in his copy; as he renders it: § 'Il donna \* \* \* naissance à trois enfants;' though, as he observes, Hamilton|| had called these the sons of Ikshwāku. The Brahma Purāṇa has not this passage; nor does the commentator on the Hari Vamśa give any explanation: neither does anything of the kind occur elsewhere. We have, however, subsequently, in the text, ¶ Daṇḍa named as a son of Ikshwāku; and, in the Padma Purāṇa, Śrīṣṭī Khaṇḍa, and in the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, we have a detailed narrative of Daṇḍa, the son of Ikshwāku, whose country was laid waste by an imprecation of Bhārgava, whose daughter \*\* that prince had violated. His kingdom became, in consequence, the Daṇḍaka forest. The Mahābhārata, Dāna Dharma, †† alludes to the same story. If, therefore, the preferable reading of the Hari Vamśa be Suta, 'son,' it is at variance with all other authorities. At the same time, it

\* The Sanskrit has 'his teacher's cow'.

† ŚL 437.

‡ Since he puts "Dandaca", a word of three syllables, it is more than probable that he followed some such reading as दण्डकयेति ते चक्रः, which I find to be the most ordinary. In some MSS., दण्डयेति सुतास्त्रयः occurs. The lection हतचयः is of no account. It seems like a corruption of the last syllables of दण्डयेतीह ते चक्रः, which is read in one of Professor Wilson's MSS.

§ Vol. I., p. 54.

|| The fact as to Mr. Hamilton's statement is more correctly expressed in these words: "Fr. Hamilton dit que ce roi, et par conséquent ses frères, étaient fils d'Ikshwācou." See *Genealogies of the Hindus, &c.*, p. 64.

¶ Vide *infra*, p. 259.

\*\* Abjā, by name.

†† A part of the *Sānti-parvan*.

to the condition of a Śúdra.<sup>1</sup> From Karúsha descended the mighty warriors\* termed Kárúshas, (the

---

must be admitted, that the same work is singular in asserting any collision between Dańda and his brothers and Sudyumna; and the passage seems to have grown out of that careless and ignorant compilation which the Hari Vamśa so perpetually presents. It is, not improbably, a gratuitous perversion of this passage in the Matsya:

नाभागस्त्राग्नीषसु धृष्टस्त्र च सुतत्रयम् ।

'Ambarisha was the son of Nábhága;† and Dhṛishṭa had three sons.'‡

<sup>1</sup> This story has been modified, apparently, at different periods, according to a progressive horror of the crime. Our text simply states the fact. The Váyu says he was hungry, and not only killed, but ate, the cow of his spiritual preceptor, Chyavana. In the Mārkańdeya,§ he is described as being out a hunting, and killing the cow of the father of Bábhavya, mistaking it for a Gavaya or Gayal. The Bhágavata,|| as usual, improves upon the story, and says that Prishadhra was appointed, by his Guru, Vasishṭha, to protect his cattle. In the night, a tiger made his way into the fold; and the prince, in his haste, and in the dark, killed the cow upon which he had fastened, instead of the tiger. In all the authorities, the effect is the same; and the imprecation of the offended sage degraded Prishadhra to the caste of a Śúdra. According to the Bhágavata, the prince led a life of devotion, and, perishing in the flame of a forest, obtained final liberation. The obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is, to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor.

---

\* Kshattriya.

† Vide *infra*, p. 257.

‡ For their names, vide *infra*, p. 255, note 2.

§ Ch. CXII.

|| IX., II., 3—14.

sovereigns of the north.)<sup>1\*</sup> The son of Nedishtha, † named Nábhága, became a Vaisya:<sup>2</sup> his son was Bhalan-

<sup>1</sup> The Bhágavata§ also places the Kárúshas in the north: ||

उत्तरापथगोप्तारो ब्रह्मन्सा धर्मवत्सलाः ।

But the country of the Kárúshas is, usually, placed upon the Páripáttra or Vindhya mountains. See Vol. II., p. 158, note 2. ¶

<sup>2</sup> The Váyu has 'Nábhága, the son of Arishtá:' नाभा-  
गोऽरिष्टपुत्रश्च ।\*\* The Márkaṇḍeya†† has 'the son of Dishtha:'  
दिष्टपुत्रश्च नाभागः । The Bhágavata‡‡ also calls him the son of

\* I do not find this parenthesis in the original; nor is it taken from the commentary.

† One MS. has Dishtha. Vide supra, p. 231, note †.

‡ See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 45, 46. § IX., II., 16.

|| By the term *uttarāpatha*, used in the original, the regions to the north of the Vindhya mountains are intended. The regions to the south of those mountains are, similarly, denominated *dakshināpatha*. Vide supra, p. 237, note ¶.

¶ But also see Vol. II., p. 123, text and note 1; p. 133, text and note †.

\*\* The verse, as I find it, runs:

नाभागोऽरिष्टपुत्रश्च विद्वानासीन्नसन्दनः ।

That is to say, Bhalandana is declared to be son of 'Nábhága Arishtá.'

The purport of the verse is, manifestly, to set forth the paternity of Bhalandana. Besides this, not to increase the *Váyu-purāṇa's* tale of the Manu's sons from nine to ten, Nábhága Arishtá must be taken together, as denoting one person. The sense would not be changed, while the grammar would be amended, by reading नाभागारिष्ट\*,—yielding Nábhágárishtá,—which, as we have seen, occurs elsewhere. Vide supra, p. 232, notes \*\* and ‡‡; also, p. 256, note \*, *infra*.

†† CXIII., 2. And so the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 53.

‡‡ IX., II., 23:

नाभागो दिष्टपुत्रोऽन्यः कर्मणा वैश्रतां गतः ।

Śrīdhara remarks, on this: दिष्टस्य पुत्रो नाभागो वक्ष्यमाणनाभा-  
गद्वय इति भ्रान्तिवृत्तासाध्यमनुवादमात्रम् ।

The Nábhága from whom this one is thus discriminated is named in IX., IV., 1, 9, 13; also, in VIII., XIII., 2. Vide supra, p. 14, note \*, and p. 232, note ‡‡.

The commentator on the *Vishnu-purāṇa* says: नेदिष्ठस्य पुत्रो नाभागो वैश्रतां गतः ।

dana;<sup>1</sup> \* whose son was the celebrated Vatsa-

Dishṭa. According to that authority, he became a Vaiśya by his actions. The other Purāṇas generally agree, that the descendants of this person became Vaiśyas; but the Matsya and Vāyu do not notice it. The Mārkaṇḍeya details a story of Nābhāga's carrying off and marrying the daughter of a Vaiśya; in consequence of which he was degraded, it is said, to the same caste, and deprived of his share of the patrimonial sovereignty, which his son and successor recovered. The Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa† assert, that two sons of Nābhāgarishṭa again became Brahmans: but the duties of royalty imply the Kshattriya caste of his posterity; and the commentator on our text observes,‡ that the son of Nābhāga was born before his father's degradation, and, consequently, the race continued Kshattriya;—an assertion unsupported by any authority: and it must, therefore, appear, that a race of Vaiśya princes was recognized by early traditions.

<sup>1</sup> Bhanandana: § Bhāgavata.

नाभागो दिष्टपुत्रोऽन्यः कर्मणा वैश्यातां गतः ।

इति शुकीतिः । तस्य च पुत्रोत्पत्तेरन्तरकालमेव वैश्यत्वप्राप्त्या तत्पुत्रस्य भलन्दस्य चत्त्रियत्वमविरुद्धमेव । अत एव तदन्वयस्य भलन्तस्य चक्रवर्तित्वं संगच्छते । This imports, that it was not till after the birth of Bhalandana, that Nābhāga was turned into a Vaiśya; and hence it is that his descendants were, like himself in his original dignity of birth, Kshattriyas.

We meet with other Nābhāgas, at pp. 256 and 303, *infra*.

\* In two MSS. I find Bhanandana, for which see note §, below.

† नाभागारिष्टपुत्री द्वी वैश्या ब्राह्मण्यातां गती ।

So read my best MSS.; the Calcutta edition being defective here. Some MSS. have Nābhāgadishṭa for the name; and, in one, I find Nābhāga:

नाभागस्य तु पुत्री द्वी वैश्या ब्राह्मण्यातां गती ।

M. Langlois must have had before him a still different lection, one much like that in the Bombay edition; for he translates: "Les fils de Nābhāgarishṭa, Kshattriyas d'origine, devinrent Vēśyas."

‡ See note † in the preceding page.

§ This looks like a Bengal corruption of Bhalandana, the reading in all my best MSS. of the *Bhāgavata*. See note \* in the next page.

prī:<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Prāmśu;† whose son was Prajāni;<sup>2</sup> whose son was Khanitra;<sup>3</sup> whose son was the very valiant Kshupa;<sup>4</sup> ‡ whose son was Viṁśa;<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vatsapriti: Bhāgavata. Vatsaśrī: Mārkaṇḍeya. § The latter has a story of the destruction of the Daitya Kujāmbha by Vidúratha, the father of Sunandā, the wife of Vatsaśrī. The Vāyu has Saṁsārī. ||

<sup>2</sup> Pramati: Bhāgavata. ¶

<sup>3</sup> According to the Mārkaṇḍeya, the priests of the royal family conspired against this prince, and were put to death by his ministers.

<sup>4</sup> Chākshusha: Bhāgavata. \*\*

<sup>5</sup> Vira: Mārkaṇḍeya. ††

\* All my best MSS. give Vatsapriti once, or twice, several having both Vatsapriti and Vatsapri; for the name is repeated, in the original, in connexion with Prāmśu. Vatsapri, and as son of Bhalandana, is mentioned several times in the *Anukramanikā* to the *Rigveda*.

† Where (for a single instance out of several,) Prāmśu—p. 232, *supra*, —is called one of the “sons” of Manu, are we to understand, by “sons”, “descendants”? Or is the Prāmśu here spoken of a second person of that name? He was one of twelve sons of Vatsapri, according to the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, CXVIII., 1, 2.

According to the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Prāmśu was son of Bhalandana:

भलन्दनस्य पुत्रोऽभूत्प्रांशुर्नाम महाबलः ।

‡ My MSS. read, without exception: ततश्च खनिचः । तस्याश्च सुपः । सुपाश्चातिबलपराक्रमो विंशोऽभवत् । Professor Wilson, mistaking the particle *cha*, ‘and’, for part of the name, printed “Chakshupa”, which I have altered as above.

See note § in the next page. That the name is Kshupa is, further, evident from several passages of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*; as CXX., 1:

सुपः खनिचपुत्रसु प्राप्य राज्यं यथा पिता ।

§ My best MSS. of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have, like the Calcutta edition, Vatsapri.

|| In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as known to me, there is no name at all here. See the line quoted in note †, above.

¶ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* and the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have Prajāti.

\*\* Pretty certainly, there is, here, a gross mistake in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*. See note ‡, above. †† CXX., 13.

whose son was Vivimśati,<sup>1\*</sup> whose son was Khaninetra;† whose son was the powerful, wealthy, and valiant Karandhama;<sup>2</sup> whose son was Avikshi (or Avikshit);<sup>3</sup> whose son was the mighty Marutta,§ of whom this well-known verse|| is recited:

<sup>1</sup> Rambha precedes Vivimśati: Bhāgavata. ¶

<sup>2</sup> Balāśwa, \*\* or Balakāśwa, or Subalāśwa, according to the Mārkaṇḍeya, which explains his name Karandhama to denote his creation of an army,—when besieged by his revolted tributaries,—by breathing on his hands (करं + धमः).

<sup>3</sup> Both forms occur, as the commentator observes: चविचेरेव क्वचिद्विचिदित्यपि नाम । The Mārkaṇḍeya has a long story of this prince's carrying off the daughter of Viśāla, king of Vaidiśa ††. Being attacked and captured by his confederated rivals, he was rescued by his father, but was so much mortified by his disgrace, that he vowed never to marry nor reign. The princess, also be-

\* I find no reading but Vivimśa, if Viṁśa—which is, of course, a mere clerical inadvertence,—is left out of account. Vivimśa is, also, the lection of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, CXX., 14, 15: and see note §, below. For this word, as denoting a caste, see Vol. II., p. 193.

† Nearly all my MSS., including every one of the best, here interpose Ativibhūti, or else Vibhūti, as son of Khaninetra and sire of Karandhama.

‡ In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* I find Avikshita; and he is named immediately after Khanitra, as if his son. But, almost certainly, there is, here, a hiatus in my MSS.

Avikshita is, also, the reading of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, Ch. CXXIII.

§ In the *Mahābhārata*, *Āśvamedhika-parvan*, Chap. IV., we find the following genealogy, referred to the *Kṛita-yuga*: Manu, Prasadhi, Kshupa, Ikshvāku, Viṁśa (one of a hundred sons, all kings), Vivimśa, Khaninetra (one of fifteen sons), Karandhama, Avikshit, Marutta.

|| I find “two stanzas”: यस्मेमावयापि ह्यौ गीयेते । And two stanzas are immediately afterwards quoted.

¶ In my MSS., Rambha follows Vivimśati; and Viṁśa is omitted.

\*\* This appears to be the true reading of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*.

†† From the original, वैदिशाधिपतेः, it is safest, pending the production of explicit proof that there is such a name as “Vaidiśa,” to infer, in preference, Vaidiśā. *Vide supra*, p. 221, note ‡.

"There never was beheld, on earth, a sacrifice equal to the sacrifice of Marutta. All the implements and utensils\* were made of gold. Indra was intoxicated† with the libations of Soma-juice; and the Brahmans were enraptured with the magnificent donations they received. The winds of heaven encompassed the rite, as guards; and the assembled gods attended, to behold it."<sup>1</sup> Marutta was a Chakravartin (or universal

coming an ascetic, met with him in the woods; and they were, finally, espoused: but Avikshit kept his other vow, and relinquished his succession in favour of his son, who succeeded to the kingdoms of both Karandhama and Viśála.

<sup>1</sup> Most of our authorities quote the same words, with, or without, addition. § The Vāyu || adds, that the sacrifice was conducted by Saṁvarta, whom the Bhāgavata terms a Yogin, the

\* "Implements and utensils" is to render *vastu*.

† The commentary explains अमाद्यत् by अतितृप्या दृष्टो बभूव ।

‡ अमाद्यदिन्द्रः सोमेन दक्षिणाभिर्द्विजातयः ।

मरुतः परिवेष्टारः सदस्याश्च दिवीकसः ॥

According to the scholiast, the Maruts purveyed food, &c., on the occasion: मरुतो देवाः । परिवेष्टार अन्नादिपरिवेष्टकाः ।

§ Whence the first of these stanzas was derived I am unable to say; but we probably have the prototype of part of the second in the following quotation in the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, VIII., 21:

मरुतः परिवेष्टारो मरुत्तस्यावसन्तुहे ।

आविशितस्य काममेर्विधे देवाः सभासदः ॥

See, also, the *Satapatha-brāhmaṇa*, XIII, V., IV., 6; and compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 27, 28.

|| Its words are:

संवर्तेन दिवं गीतः समुहसह बान्धवैः ।

विवादोऽत्र महानासीत्संवर्तस्य बृहस्पतिः ॥

अग्निं दृष्ट्वा तु यज्ञस्य क्रुद्धस्य बृहस्पतिः ।

संवर्तेन हुते यज्ञे चुकोप सुभृशं तदा ।

लोकानां स हि नाशाय देवतेर्हि प्रसादितः ॥



monarch): he had a son named Narishyanta;<sup>1</sup> his son was Dama;<sup>2</sup> his son was Rájyavardhana;\* his son was Sudhṛiti; his son was Nara; his son was Kevala; his son was Bandhumat; his son was Vegavat; his son was Budha;<sup>3</sup> his son was Trínabindu, who had a daughter

son of Angiras; and that Bṛihaspati was so jealous of the splendour of the rite, that a great quarrel ensued between him and Saṁvarta. How it involved the king is not told; but, apparently, in consequence, Marutta, with his kindred and friends, was taken, by Saṁvarta, to heaven. According to the Márkaṇḍeya,† Marutta was so named from the paternal benediction, 'May the winds be thine,' or 'be propitious to thee' (मरुत्तव शिवायास्तु). He reigned, agreeably to that record, 85000 years.

<sup>1</sup> Omitted in the Bhágavata.

<sup>2</sup> A rather chivalric and curious story is told of Dama, in the Márkaṇḍeya.‡ His bride, Sumaná, daughter of the king Daśárha,§ was rescued, by him, from his rivals. One of them, Vapushmat, afterwards killed Marutta, who had retired into the woods, after relinquishing his crown to his son. Dama, in retaliation, killed Vapushmat, and made the Piṇḍa (or obsequial offering) to his father, of his flesh: with the remainder he fed the Brahmans of Rákshasa origin: such were the kings of the solar race.

वपुष्मतश्च मसिन् पिण्डदानं चकार ह ।

ब्राह्मणान्जीवयामास रक्षःकुलसमुद्भवान् ।

एवंविधा हि राजानो बभूवुः सूर्यवंशजाः ॥

<sup>3</sup> The Bhágavata has Bandhavat, Oghavat, and Bandha.¶

\* The *Váyu-purána* has Ráshṭravardhana.

† CXXVIII., 33.

‡ Ch. CXXXIV.

§ I find सुता दशार्थाधिपतेः, "daughter of the king of Daśárna". See Vol. II., p. 160, note †; p. 178, note \*.

¶ *Márkaṇḍeya-purána*, Calcutta edition, pp. 657, 658.

¶ I find, in all the MSS. I have examined, Bandhumat and Vegavat; while the prevailing reading of the third name is Bandhu, of which Bandha and Budha are variants. The *Váyu-purána* agrees, as to all three names, with the *Vishnu-purána*.

named Ilavilā.<sup>1\*</sup> The celestial nymph† Alambushā, becoming enamoured of Trīṇabindu, bore him a son named Viśālā, by whom the city Vaiśālī was founded.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu‡ and Bhāgavata both add, that she was the wife of Viśravas, and mother of Kubera. § In the Linga Purāṇa, she is said to have been the wife of Pulastya, and mother of Viśravas. The weight of authority is in favour of the former statement. See Vol. I., p. 154, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata names three sons, Viśālā, Śūnyabandhu, and Dhūmaketu. || Vaiśālī is a city of considerable renown in Indian tradition; but its site is a subject of some uncertainty. Part of the difficulty arises from confounding it with Viśālā, another name of Ujjayinī:

उज्जयिनी स्थाद्विशालावन्ती पुष्पकरणिनी ।

Hemachandra. ¶ Also, in the Megha Dūta: \*\*

प्राप्तावन्तीमुदयनकथाकोविदयामवृद्धां

पूर्वोद्दिष्टामनुसर पुरीं श्रीविशालां विशालाम् ।

‘Having arrived at Avanti, \* \* \* proceed to the illustrious city before indicated, Viśālā.’ विशालाभिधानामुज्जयिनीं पुरीम् ।

‘To the city Ujjayinī, named Viśālā.’ Comment. Vaiśālī††, however, appears to be very differently situated. According to the Buddhists, amongst whom it is celebrated as a chief seat of the labours of Śākyas‡‡ and his first disciples, it is the same as Prayāga,

\* Only one of my MSS. has this name; one has Ilirilā; and all the rest have Ilivilā. Also see note ‡, below.

The Bhāgavata-purāṇa, IX., II., 31, represents Idavidā as daughter of Trīṇabindu and Alambushā. † Apsaras.

‡ The Vāyu-purāṇa has Ividā, and calls her mother of Viśravas:

कथा तु तस्य इविडा माता विश्रवसो हि सा ।

§ Called Dhanada, in the Bhāgavata-purāṇa.

|| I find Dhūmraketu.

¶ Abhidhāna-chintāmaṇi, IV., 42.

\*\* Śl. 32, Prof. Wilson’s second edition.

†† The genuine Rāmāyaṇa has Viśālā; the Bengal recension, Vaiśālī. The latter name, Burnouf maintains, is that which was known to the Buddhists. Introduction à l’Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien, Vol. I., p. 86, note 2.

‡‡ Corrected from “Śākya.”

The son of the first king of Vaisálí was Hemachandra; his son was Suchandra; his son was Dhúmráswa; his son was Srinjaya;<sup>1</sup> his son was Sahadeva;<sup>2</sup> his son was Kṛiśáswa; his son was Somadatta, who celebrated, ten times, the sacrifice of a horse; his son was Janamejaya; and his son was Sumati.<sup>3\*</sup> These were the

or Allahabad;† but the Rámáyāna (I., 45) places it much lower down, on the north bank of the Ganges, nearly opposite to the mouth of the Sone; and it was, therefore, in the modern district of Sāran, as Hamilton (Genealogies of the Hindus‡) conjectured. In the fourth century, it was known, to the Chinese traveller Fa-hian, as Phi-she-li, on the right bank of the Gandak, not far from its confluence with the Ganges.§ Account of the Foe-kúe-ki: || Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. V., p. 128.

<sup>1</sup> Dhúmráksha and Saṁyama: Bhágavata. ¶

<sup>2</sup> The text is clear enough; सुजयात्सहदेवः । ततः कृशाश्वः । But, as elsewhere noticed (Hindu Theatre, Vol. II., p. 296), the commentator on the Bhágavata\*\* interprets the parallel passage,

तत्पुत्रात्संयमादासीत्कृशाश्वः सहदेवजः ।

very differently, or: सहदेवजः । देवजेन सहितः । †† 'Kṛiśáswa with Devaja,' or, as some copies read, Devaka, or Daivata, as if there were two sons of Saṁyama.

<sup>3</sup> The Bhágavata changes the order of these two, making Janamejaya the son of Sumati: or Pramati; Váyu. Sumati, king

\* Four of my MSS. have Swamati.

† Burnouf, where referred to in note †† in the preceding page, shows this opinion to be groundless. ‡ Pp. 37, 38.

§ General Cunningham, with others, thinks it is now represented by Basádh, a village twenty-seven miles nearly north from Patna. *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1863, Supplementary Number, p. lii.

|| The article referred to was written by Professor Wilson.

¶ The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 34, makes Hemachandra father of Dhúmráksha, father of Saṁyama, father of Kṛiśáswa and Devaja.

\*\* IX., II., 34.

†† The commentator adds: पाठाकारे नामान्वत्प्रमाणम् । अर्धसु स एव ।

kings of Vaiśālī;\* of whom it is said:† “By the favour of Trīṇabindu, all the monarchs of Vaiśālī‡ were long-lived, magnanimous, equitable, and valiant.”

Saryāti (the fourth son of the Manu,)§ had a daughter named Sukanyā, who was married to the holy sage Chyavana:¹|| he had, also, a righteous son called Ānarta.

of Vaiśālī, is made contemporary with Rāma: Rāmāyaṇa, I., 47. 17. The dynasty of Vaiśāla kings is found only in our text, the Vāyu, and Bhāgavata. Hamilton ¶ places them from 1920 to 1240 B. C.; but the latter is incompatible with the date he assigns to Rāma, of 1700 B. C.\*\* The contemporary existence of Sumati and Rāma, however, is rather unintelligible; as, according to our lists, the former is the thirty-fourth, and the latter, the sixtieth, from Vaivaswata Manu.

¹ The circumstance of their marriage, of Chyavana's appropriating a share of offerings to the Āśvini Kumāras, and of his quarrel with Indra, in consequence, are told, in detail, in the Bhāgavata and Padma Purāṇas.

\* Expressed by *vaiśālaka*.

† होकीऽप्यत्र गीयते । And what follows is a stanza. It occurs in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as well, but not as if a quotation.

‡ *Vaiśālaka*.

§ The *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, IV., 32, and VIII., 21, speaks of Śaryāta, son of Manu. The *Rigveda*, also, has Śaryāta. Perhaps this name is here a metronym.

|| “The Rishi Chyavana married his [Vaivaswata's] daughter; and a solemn sacrifice was held on the occasion, at which Indra and the Āświns were present. Chyavana appropriated to himself the share of the oblation intended for the Āświns, at which Indra was very angry; and, to appease him, a fresh offering was prepared. The Scholiast quotes this story from the *Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa*.” Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 139, note a.

¶ *Genealogies of the Hindus, &c.*, p. 38.

\*\* ?

The son of the latter was Revata,<sup>1</sup> who ruled over the country (called, after his father,) Ánarta, and dwelt at the capital, (denominated) Kuśasthalí.<sup>2</sup> The son of this prince was Raivata, or Kakudmin, the eldest of a hundred brethren. He had a very lovely daughter;\* and (not finding any one worthy of her hand,) he repaired, with her, to the region of Brahmá, to consult the god where a fit bridegroom was to be met with. When he arrived, the quiristers† Háhá, Húhú, and others were singing: before Brahmá; and Raivata,§ waiting till they had finished, imagined the ages that elapsed during their

<sup>1</sup> In most of the other Purāṇas, Reva, or Raiva. || The Linga and Matsya insert a Rochamāna before him; and the Bhāgavata ¶ adds, to Ánarta, Uttānabarhis and Bhūrisheṇa.

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata\*\* ascribes the foundation of Kuśasthalí to Revata, who built it, it is said, within the sea. The subsequent legend shows, that it was the same, or on the same spot, as Dwá-raká; and Ánarta was, therefore, part of Cutch or Gujerat. See Vol. II., p. 171, note 4. ††

\* The reading of my MSS. is तस्य च रेवती नाम कन्या, "and he had a daughter, Revatí."

† *Gandharva*. For Háhá and Húhú, see Vol. II., pp. 286, *et seq.*

‡ क्षतितानं नाम दिव्यं गान्धर्वमगीयत । The piece of music which they were executing was an *atitāna*,—a certain song, according to the commentary. A variant for *gandharvam* is *gāndhāram*, qualifying *atitānam*. The scholiast takes note of it.

§ The original has Raivataka, here and below.

|| My MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* have these two readings, and Rava, as well.

¶ XI., III., 27.

\*\* IX., III., 28:

सोऽस्य समुद्रे नगरीं विनिर्माय कुशस्थलीम् ।

†† Also see Vol. II., p. 172, note 2.

performance to be but as a moment.\* At the end of their singing, Raivata prostrated himself† before Brahmá;‡ and explained his errand. “Whom should you wish for a son-in-law?” demanded Brahmá; and the king mentioned to him various persons with whom he could be well pleased.§ Nodding his head gently, and (graciously) smiling, Brahmá said to him: “Of those whom you have named the third or fourth generation|| no longer survives; for many successions of ages¶ have passed away, whilst you were listening to our songsters.\*\* Now, upon earth, the twenty-eighth great age of the present Manu is nearly finished, and the Kali period is at hand.†† You must, therefore, bestow this virgin gem‡‡ upon some other husband: for you are, now, alone; and your friends, your ministers, ser-

\* *Muhūrta*. The Sanskrit is: तावच्च विमार्गपरिवर्तिरेकयुगपरिवृत्ति तिष्ठन्नपि रैवतकः शुक्लशुद्धर्तमिव मेने । *Trimūrga* is here a musical technicality.

† *Prañamya*.

‡ Here, and just above, and also below, designated by his epithet of *abjayoni*, ‘lotus-born.’

§ And he further solicited Brahmá’s advice as to a choice: क एषां भगवतोऽभिमतः । कस्यै कन्यामिमां प्रयच्छामीति ।

|| The Sanskrit is अपत्यापत्यसंततिः ।

¶ *Chaturyuga*.

\*\* Literally, ‘this music’, *etad gāndhārvam*.

†† साम्प्रतं भूतस्य ऽष्टाविंशतितममस्य मनीषतुर्गुणमतीतप्रायम् । आसन्नो हि तत्कलिः । Comment: अस्य रैवतस्य मनीषरष्टाविंशतितमं चतुर्गुणं गतप्रायम् ।

What is meant is, that, in the meantime, twenty-eight four-*yuga* cycles of the *manvantara* or patriarchate then current had nearly elapsed, &c.

Compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., III., 33.

For the length of a *manvantara*, see Vol. I., pp. 50—52.

‡‡ *Kāmyā-ratna*.

vants, wife, kinsmen, armies,\* and treasures have long since† been swept away by (the hand of) time." Overcome with astonishment and alarm,‡ the Raja then said to Brahmá: "Since I am thus circumstanced, do thou, lord, tell me unto whom the maiden shall be given." And the creator of the world,§ whose throne is the lotos,|| (thus benignantly) replied to the prince, as he stood bowed and humble¶ before him:\*\* "The being of whose commencement, course,†† and termination we are ignorant; the unborn and omnipresent‡‡ essence§§ (of all things); he whose real and infinite||| nature and essence¶¶ (we do not know), is the supreme Vishnú.\*\*\* He is time, made up of moments, and hours, and years;††† whose influence‡‡‡ is the source of (perpetual) change. He is the universal form of all things, from birth to death.§§§ He is eternal, without name or shape. Through the favour of that imperishable||| (being) am

\* *Bala.*

† *Atyanta*, 'entirely.'

‡ The two substantives are to render *sádhvasa*.

§ *Sapta-loka-guru.*

|| *Abjayoni.*

¶ *Kṛitānjali-bhūta.*

\*\* All the rest of this chapter is in verse.

†† *Madhya.*

‡‡ *Sarvagata.*

§§ *Dhātu.*

||| *Para.*

¶¶ *Sāra.*

\*\*\* "Supreme Vishnú" corresponds to *paramēhvara*.

††† *Kālmukhīrīdī.*

‡‡‡ *Vibhūti.*

§§§ I find *अव्ययनाशस्तमसमूर्तेरनामरूपस्तज्जातमस्त*। According to this, he is said to be 'unborn and indestructible,' &c. &c.

||| *Achyuta.* See Vol. I., p. 15, note 3.

I the agent of his power in creation; through his anger is Rudra the destroyer (of the world); and the cause of preservation, Purusha, proceeds, also, from him. The unborn, having assumed my person,\* creates (the world); in his own essence,† he provides for its duration; in the form of Rudra, he devours all things; and, with the body of Ananta, he upholds them. Impersonated as Indra‡ and the other gods, he is the guardian of mankind;§ and, as the sun and moon, he disperses darkness. Taking upon himself the nature of fire, he bestows warmth and maturity, and, in the condition of the earth, nourishes all beings.|| As one with air,¶ he gives activity to existence;\*\* and, as one with water, he satisfies (all wants); whilst, in the state of ether, associated with universal aggregation, he furnishes space for all objects.†† He is at once the creator, and that which is created; the preserver, and that which is preserved; the destroyer, and, as one with all things, that which is destroyed: and, as the indestructible,‡‡ he is distinct from these three vicissitudes. In him is the world; he is the world; and he, the primeval self-

\* *Rūpa.*

† *Purusha-swarūpin.*

‡ Śakra, in the original.

§ *Viśva.*

॥ पाकाय योऽपित्वमुपेत्य लोका-  
न्विभर्ति पृथ्वीवपुरव्ययात्मा ।

¶ *Śvasana*, 'breath.'

\*\* *Loka.*

†† ददाति विश्वस्थितिसंस्थितसु  
सर्वावकाशं च नभःस्वरूपी ।

‡‡ *Ayayātman.* See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.



born, is again present in the world.\* That (mighty) Vishnú, who is paramount over all beings, is now, in a portion of himself, upon the earth. That (city) Kuśasthalí, which was, formerly, your capital, and rivalled the city of the immortals,† is now (known as) Dwáraká;‡ and there reigns a portion of that divine being,§ in the person of Baladeva. To him, who appears as a man, present her, as a wife. He is a worthy bridegroom for this excellent damsel; and she is a suitable bride for him.”§

Being thus instructed by the lotos-born (divinity), Raivata returned (with his daughter,) to earth, where he found the race of men dwindled in stature, reduced in vigour, and enfeebled in intellect. Repairing to the city of Kuśasthalí, which he found (much) altered,|| the wise monarch bestowed his (unequalled) daughter on the wielder of the ploughshare,¶ whose breast was

---

\* So called from its many Dwáras, or gateways:

ऊता द्वारवती नाम बह्वद्वारां मनोरमाम् ।

Váyu.

---

\* Compare the *Bhagavad-gītā*, Chapter IX., *passim*.

† The Sanskrit has *amarāvattva*, “like Amarāvati.” For this city, see Vol. I., p. 137; and Vol. II., p. 240, text and notes.

‡ Kéśava, in the original.

§ तस्यै खमेनां तनयां वरेच्छ  
प्रयच्छ मायामनुजाय जायाम् ।  
स्नाधो वरोऽसौ तनया तवेयं  
स्त्रीरत्नभूता सदृशो हि योगः ॥

|| Because, says the commentator, Kṛishná had reclaimed from the sea a shire of country measuring twelve *yojanas* in circumference, and, with the aid of Viśwakarma, had renovated the city. For Dwáraká, *vide infra*, Book V., Chapters XXIII. and XXVIII.

¶ *Sira-dhwaja*, ‘plough-bannered’.

as fair and radiant as crystal.\* Beholding the damsel of excessively lofty height, the chief whose banner is a palm-tree† shortened her with the end of his plough-share, and she became his wife. Balarāma‡ having espoused, agreeably to the ritual, Revatī, the daughter of Raivata, the king retired to the mountain Himālaya,§ (and ended his days) in devout austerities.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The object of this legend, which is told by most of the authorities, is, obviously, to account for the anachronism of making Balarāma contemporary with Raivata; the one, early in the Tretā age, and the other, at the close of the Dwāpara.

---

\* *Sphaṭikāchalābha*, "brilliant as a mountain of crystal."

† *Tālaketu*.

‡ Indicated, in the Sanskrit, by his epithet *śirāyudha*.

§ Himāchala, in the original.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Dispersion of Revata's descendants: those of Dhṛishṭa: those of Nábhaga. Birth of Ikshwáku, the son of Vaivaswata; his sons. Line of Vikukshi. Legend of Kakutstha; of Dhundhumára; of Yuvanáswa; of Mándhátī: his daughters married to Saubhari.

PARÁŚARA.—Whilst Kakudmin, surnamed Raivata, was absent on his visit to the region of Brahmá, the (evil spirits or) Rákshasas named Puńyajanas\* destroyed his capital, Kuśasthalí. His hundred brothers, through dread of these foes, fled in different directions; and the Kshattriyas, their descendants, settled in many countries.<sup>1†</sup>

From Dhṛishṭa, the son of the Manu, sprang the Kshattriya race‡ of Dhárshṭaka.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> According to the Váyu, the brothers of Raivata founded a celebrated race called Śáryáta, from Śáryáti. The Brahma Purána says, they took refuge in secret places (gahana); for which the Hari Vamśa substitutes (parvata gańa) mountains. The Váyu has neither, and says, merely, that they were renowned in all regions: विष्णुता दिवु सवासु ।

<sup>2</sup> So the Váyu, Linga, Agni, Brahma, and Hari Vamśa. § The Matsya names three sons of Dhṛishṭa,—Dhṛishṭaketu, Chitránátha, and Rańadhṛishṭa. The Bhágavata|| adds, that the sons of Dhṛi-

\* *Puńyajana* is usually considered as synonymous with *yaksha*. For the Yakshas, see Vol. I., p. 83; Vol. II., p. 75.

† सर्वदित्सभवन् ।

‡ *Kshattria*, in the original.

§ Śl. 642. The Calcutta edition has Dhṛishṭu and Dhárshṭaka. Also *vide supra*, p. 232, note ††.

|| IX., II., 17. Also *vide infra*, p. 280, note 2.

The son of Nabhāga\* was Nābhāga;<sup>1</sup> his son was

shā obtained Brahmanhood upon earth, though born Kshattriyas:

धृष्टाक्षार्धमभूत्सं ब्रह्मभूय गतं चितौ । †

<sup>1</sup> But who is Nabhāga? For, as above observed, (p. 231, note 1,) the son of the Manu is Nabhāga-nedishtha;‡ and there is, in that case, no such person as Nabhāga.§ On the other hand, if Nabhāga and Nedishtha|| be distinct names, we have ten sons of Vaisvata, as in the Bhāgavata.¶ The descendants of Nedishtha, through his son Nabhāga, have been already specified; and, after all, therefore, we must consider the text as intending a distinct

\* This is the ordinary reading of my MSS., of which three, however, give Nābhāga. It will contribute to harmonize the *Vishnu-purāṇa* with itself, if we surmise,—*vide supra*, p. 13,—that there is, here, an error for Nabhaga. So Ambarisha's grandfather is called in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IV., 1; though the person there meant is, as the context evidences, identified with Nābhānedishtha of the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*. The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, likewise, in every MS. to which I have access, irregularly derives Nābhāga from Nabhaga:

नभगस्य च दायादो नाभानो नाम वीर्यवान् ।

Those Purāṇas which speak of Nedishtha (or Dishta, &c.) preceded by Nābhāga, in composition or apart, and also speak of Nabhaga (or Nabhāga), recounting, of the latter, the story told in note 1, above, have explicitly misrepresented ancient tradition, inasmuch as this story relates to Nābhānedishtha (नेदिष्ठ preceded by नाभा = नाभौ), in whose name we have the source of Nābhāgedishtha and numerous other corruptions previously particularized. There seems to be no authority, older than epic and Paurāṇik, for such a person as Nedishtha, or Dishta, or Arishtha, father of a Nābhāga.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has:

धृष्टस्य धार्ष्टकं सप्तं रणधृष्टं बभूव ह ।

चित्राक्षं तु स गणः चित्रियाणां महात्मनाम् ॥

‡ This should be Nābhāga-nedishtha.

§ See the conjecture ventured in note \*, above. Also *vide supra*, p. 232, text and note \*; and the Translator's last note on Chapter V. of the present Book. But the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 17, 18, gives an irreconcilable account of the offspring of Nṛga.

|| Changed, here and just below, from "Nedishtha." Also read Nābhāga, and so further on. ¶ *Vide supra*, p. 14, note \*; p. 232, note ‡.

Ambarīsha;<sup>1</sup> his son was Virúpa;<sup>2\*</sup> his son was Pri-

person by the name Nabhága; and such a name does occur, in the lists of the Agni, Kúrma, Matsya, and Bhágavata, unquestionably distinct from that with which it is also sometimes compounded. The Bhágavata repeats the legend of the Aitareya Bráhmaṇa,† with some additions, and says, that, Nabhága having protracted his period of study beyond the usual age, his brothers appropriated his share of the patrimony. On his applying for his portion, they consigned their father to him, by whose advice he assisted the descendants of Angiras in a sacrifice, and they presented him with all the wealth that was left at its termination. Rudra claimed it as his; and, Nabhága acquiescing, the god confirmed the gift, by which he became possessed of an equivalent for the loss of territory. Most of the authorities recognize but one name here, variously read either Nabhága or Nábhága, the father of Ambarīsha. The Váyú, as well as the Bhágavata, concurs with the text.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Bhágavata§ considers Ambarīsha as a king who reigned, apparently, on the banks of the Yamuná. He is more celebrated as a devout worshipper of Vishnú, whose discus protected him from the wrath of Durvásas, and humbled that choleric saint, who was a portion of Śiva:—a legend which, possibly, records a struggle between two sects, in which the votaries of Vishnú, headed by Ambarīsha, triumphed.

<sup>2</sup> The Agni, Brahma, and Matsya stop with Ambarīsha. The Váyú and Bhágavata proceed as in the text; only the latter|| adds, to Virúpa, Ketumat and Śámbhu.

---

\* See Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 122, note a. One MS. of the *Vishnú-purána* has Viśwarúpa.

† V., 14. For Nábhānedishtha, there mentioned, see, further, the *Rigveda*, X., LXI. and LXII.; and the *Taittirīya-saṃhitā* of the *Yajurveda*, III., I., IX., 4.

‡ It does not appear so from my MSS. See note • in the preceding page. § IX., IV., 13, 30. || IX., VI., 1.

shadaśwa; his son was Rathítara,\* of whom it is sung: "These, who were Kshattriyas by birth, the heads of the family of Rathítara, were called Angirasas (or sons of Angiras), and were Brahmans as well as Kshattriyas."<sup>1</sup>†

<sup>1</sup> The same verse is cited in the Váyu, and affords an instance of a mixture of character, of which several similar cases occur subsequently. ‡ Kshattriyas by birth become Brahmans by profession; and such persons are usually considered as Angirasas, followers or descendants of Angiras, who may have founded a school of warrior-priests. This is the obvious purport of the legend of Nabhága's assisting the sons of Angiras to complete their sacrifice, referred to in a former note;§ although the same authority has devised a different explanation. Rathínara|| (or Rathítara, as read in some copies, as well as by the Bhága-vata¶ and Váyu,) being childless, Angiras begot on his wife sons

\* The "Rathinara" of the former edition I have altered, here and below, being convinced that it is merely a clerical error of a very few MSS.

† एते चक्षप्रसूता वै पुनश्चाङ्गिरसः स्मृताः ।

रथीतराणां प्रवराः चक्षोपेता दिवातयः ॥

"These were born in a Kshattria or Kshattriya race, and were subsequently known as Angirasas. They were the chief of the Rathitaras,—Bráhmans possessing the rank of Kshattras."

One of my MSS. gives पभवाः for प्रवराः.

Commentary: एते रथीतरस्त्र प्रवरा गोचराः । चक्षप्रसूताः चक्षिया चक्षस्त्र रथीतरस्त्र भार्यायामङ्गिरसा जातत्वात् । तथापि तद्योर्ध्वी-गात्पुनरङ्गिरसो ब्राह्मणाः स्मृताः । अतः चक्षोपेता दिवातयः । इत्यन्वयः । This explanation I have not accepted in full.

See Dr. Muir's remarks on this passage, in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 46, 47.

‡ Vide *infra*, p. 280, note 2.

§ Note 1 in p. 256, *supra*.

|| See note \*, above.

¶ IX., VI., 2, 3:

रथीतरस्त्राग्रजस्त्र भार्यायां तन्मवेऽर्चितः ।

अङ्गिरा जनयामास ब्रह्मवर्चस्विनः सुतान् ॥

Ikshwáku was born from the nostril of the Manu, as he happened to sneeze.<sup>1</sup> He had a hundred\* sons, of whom the three most distinguished† were Vikukshi, Nimi, and Dańda. Fifty (of the rest), under Śakuni,‡ were the protectors of the northern countries. Forty-eight were the princes of the south.<sup>2</sup>

---

radiant with divine glory, who, as the sons of the monarch by his wife, were Kshattriyas, but were Brahmans through their actual father. This, however, is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text.

<sup>1</sup> So the Bhágavata: §

सुवतसु मनीर्वक्षे इक्ष्वाकुर्जायतः सुतः ।

<sup>2</sup> The Matsya says, that Indra (Devaráj) was born as Vikukshi, and that Ikshwáku had one hundred and fourteen other sons who were kings of the countries south of Meru, and as many who reigned north of that mountain. The Váyu and most of the other authorities agree in the number of one hundred, of whom

---

एते चेचप्रसूता वै पुनस्त्वाङ्गिरसाः सुताः ।

रथीतराणां प्रवराः चक्षोपेता द्विजातयः ॥

These stanzas are thus rendered by Burnouf:

"Rathítara n'eut pas d'enfants; c'est pourquoi il pria Angiras de lui donner des successeurs, et Angiras eut de la femme du prince des fils brillants de l'éclat du Vêda.

"Quoique nés de la femme de Rathítara, ces fils d'Angiras n'en sont pas moins reconnus comme Angirasides; ils sont pour les Rathítaras les ancêtres, auteurs de leur race, et ils appartiennent aux deux tribus des Kshattriyas et des Bráhmanes."

\* The scholiast considers that 'a hundred' is here used, as a round number, instead of 'a hundred and one.'

† *Pravara*. In the *Váyu-purána* and *Bhágavata-purána*, the word is *jyeshtha*, 'eldest'.

‡ *सकुनिप्रमुखाः*. Read, therefore, for "under Śakuni," "Śakuni and others".

§ IX., VI., 4.

Upon one of the days called *Ashtakā*,<sup>1</sup> *Ikshwāku* (being desirous of celebrating ancestral obsequies,) ordered *Vikukshi* to bring him flesh suitable for the offering. The prince, accordingly, went into the forest, and killed many deer and other wild animals,\* (for the celebration). Being weary (with the chase), and being hungered, he (sat down and) ate a hare, after which, (being refreshed), he carried the rest of the game to his father. *Vasishtha*,† the family-priest‡ of the house of *Ikshwāku*, was summoned to consecrate the food;§

---

fifty, with *Śakuni* at their head,|| are placed in the north; and forty-eight in the south,—according to the *Vāyu*,—of whom *Vimati*¶ was the chief. The same authority specifies, also, *Nimi* and *Dāṇḍa*, as sons of *Ikshwāku*, as does the *Bhāgavata*,\*\* with the addition of their reigning in the central regions.†† The distribution of the rest, in that work,‡‡ is, twenty-five in the west, as many in the east, and the rest elsewhere,—that is, the commentator adds, north and south. It seems very probable, that, by these sons of *Ikshwāku*, we are to understand colonies or settlers in various parts of India.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 168, 169, *supra*.

---

\* The original has only *mtiga*.

† Several of my MSS. omit this name.

‡ *Kulāchārya*.

§ This is expressed by the term *prokshandya*, 'for aspersion.'

|| The reading is as in note ‡ in the preceding page.

¶ The name appears to be *Vimśati*: *विंशतिप्रसूता*, "Vimśati and others." Different MSS. of the *Harivamśa* give, in *sl.* 664, *Vasāti*, *Vasāti*, and *Śasāda*.

\*\* *Vikukshi*, *Nimi*, and *Dāṇḍaka*. IX., VI., 4.

†† That is to say, between the *Himālayas* and the *Vindhyas*. So explains the commentator *Śrīdhara*.

‡‡ IX., VI., 5:

तेषां पुरस्तादभवन्नार्यावर्ते नृपा नृप ।

पञ्चविंशतिः पश्चाच्च त्रयो मध्येऽपरेऽन्ततः ॥



but he declared that it was impure, in consequence of Vikukshi's having eaten a hare from amongst it; (making it, thus, as it were, the residue of his meal). Vikukshi was, in consequence, abandoned by his offended father; and the epithet Śaśáda (hare-eater) was affixed to him by the Guru.\* On the death of Ikshwáku, the dominion of the earth descended to Śaśáda,<sup>1</sup> who was succeeded by his son Puranjaya.†

In the Tretá age, a violent war<sup>2</sup> broke out between the gods and the Asuras, in which the former were vanquished. They, consequently, had recourse to

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu states, that he was king of Ayodhyá, after the death of Ikshwáku.‡ The story occurs in all the authorities, more or less in detail.

<sup>2</sup> The Váyu§ says, it was in the war of the starling and the stork (आडीबके युद्धे), a conflict between Vasishtha and Viśwámitra, metamorphosed into birds, according to the Bhágavata:|| but that work assigns it to a different period, or the reign of Hariśchandra. If the tradition have any import, it may refer to the ensigns of the contending parties; for banners with armorial devices were, as we learn from the Mahábhárata, invariably borne by princes and leaders.

\* ग्राह । असमनेनामधेनामिवेण । दुरात्मनानेन ते पुत्रेणित्वांसमुपहतं यतोऽनेन शत्रुको भवितः । ततस्त्रासौ विकुशिर्मुदणीवमुक्तः शत्रादसंज्ञामवाप पित्रापि च परित्यक्तः ।

† Paranjaya is a variant of common occurrence, and the name sanctioned by the scholiast. *Vide infra*, p. 263, note 1.

‡ इक्ष्वाकी संखिते तस्मिन्शत्रास पृथिवीमिमाम् ॥

ग्राहः परमधर्मात्मासवायोध्याधिपोऽभवत् ॥

§ And so the *Harivamśa*, *śl.* 668.

|| IX., VII., 6. Also *vide infra*, p. 287, note 1.

Vishnú, for assistance, and propitiated him (by their adorations). The eternal ruler of the universe, Nárāyaṇa, had compassion upon them, and said:\* "What you desire is known unto me. Hear how your wishes shall be fulfilled. There is an illustrious prince† named Puranjaya, the son of a royal sage:‡ into his person I will infuse a portion of myself; and, having descended upon earth, I will, in his person, subdue all your enemies. Do you, therefore, endeavour to secure the aid of Puranjaya, for the destruction of your foes."§ Acknowledging, with reverence, the kindness of the deity, the immortals quitted his presence, and repaired to Puranjaya, whom they thus addressed: "Most renowned Kshattriya, we have come to thee, to solicit thy alliance against our enemies: it will not become thee to disappoint our hopes."|| The prince replied: "Let this your Indra, the monarch of the spheres, (the god) of a hundred sacrifices, consent to carry me upon his shoulders, and I will wage battle with your adversaries, as your ally." The gods and Indra readily answered: "So be it"; and, the latter assuming the shape of a bull, the prince mounted upon his shoulder. Being then filled with delight, and invigorated by the power of the eternal¶ ruler of all movable and immovable

\* प्रसन्नश्च देवानामनादिनिधनः सकलजगत्परायणो नारायणः प्राह ।

† Kshattriya.

‡ Rājārshi. And the Sanskrit adds 'Śaśāda.'

§ तच्छरीरेऽहमंग्रे स्वयमेवावतीर्य तान्शेषानसुरान्निह्निष्यामि । तन्नवम्लिः पुरंजयोऽसुरवधार्थायेह कार्योद्योगः कार्यः ।

|| Prāñaya.

¶ Achyuta. See Vol. I., p. 15, note 8.

things, he destroyed, in the battle that ensued, all the enemies of the gods; and, because he annihilated the demon-host, whilst seated upon the shoulder (or the hump, *Kakud*.) of the bull, he, thence, obtained the appellation *Kakutstha* (seated on the hump).<sup>1</sup>

The son of *Kakutstha* was *Anenas*<sup>2</sup> whose son was *Prithu*, whose son was *Viśwagaśwa*,<sup>3\*</sup> whose son was *Ádra*,<sup>4†</sup> whose son was *Yuvanášwa*,<sup>‡</sup> whose son was *Śrávasta*, by whom the city of *Śrávastí*<sup>5</sup> was founded.

<sup>1</sup> The *Bhágavata* adds, that he captured the city of the *Asuras*, § situated in the west; whence his name *Puranjaya*, 'victor of the city.' He is, also, termed *Paranjaya*, 'vanquisher of foes:' he is, also, called *Indraváha*, 'borne by Indra.' ||

<sup>2</sup> *Suyodhana*: *Matsya*, *Agni*, *Kúrma*. ¶

<sup>3</sup> *Viśwaka*: *Linga*. *Viśwagandhi*: *Bhágavata*. \*\* *Viśhárasáwa*: *Brahma Purána* and *Hari Vamśa*. ††

<sup>4</sup> *Ándhra*: *Váyu*. *Áyu*: *Agni*. *Chandra*: *Bhágavata*. ‡‡

<sup>5</sup> *Śávasta* and *Śávastí*: *Bhágavata*. §§ *Śrávastí*: ||| *Matsya*, *Linga*, ¶¶ and *Kúrma*; which also say, that *Śrávasti* was in the country of *Gauda*, which is eastern Bengal. \*\*\* But it is, more usually,

\* One MS. has *Viśwaga*; another, *Viśwagata*. The *Váyu-purána* seems to give *Dřishadaśwa*.

† Two MSS. have *Chándra*. The *Linga-purána*, Prior Section, LXV., 33, has *Ádraka*.

‡ *Yavanášwa* seems to be the reading of the *Váyu-purána*.

§ *Daityas*, in the original. || IX., VI., 12—16.

¶ And so the *Linga-purána*. \*\* IX., VI., 20.

†† *Śl.* 669. ‡‡ IX., VI., 20. §§ IX., VI., 21.

||| So reads the *Váyu-purána*.

¶¶ Prior Section, LXV., 34. I find *Śávastí*, also: and the king is there called *Śávastí*.

\*\*\* The term *Gauda* has not only this signification, but a much wider. See the references and quotations in Messrs. *Böhtlingk* and *Roth's Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*.

The son of Śrávasta was Bríhadaśwa,\* whose son was Kuvalayáśwa.† This prince, inspired with the spirit of Vishnú, destroyed the Asura Dhundhu, who had harassed the pious sage‡ Uttanka;§ and he was, thence, entitled Dhundhumára.<sup>1</sup> In his conflict with the demon,

---

placed in Kośala, || by which a part of Oude is commonly understood. In my Dictionary I have inserted Śrávantí, upon the authority of the Trikánda Śesha; ¶ but it is, no doubt, an error for Śrávastí. It is, there, also called Dharmapattana, being a city of some sanctity, in the estimation of the Buddhists. It is termed, by Fa-Hian, She-wei; by Hwan Tsang, She-lo-va-si-ti; and placed, by both, nearly in the site of Fyzabad in Oude. Account of the Foe-kúe-ki. \*\*

<sup>1</sup> This legend is told, in much more detail, in the Váyu and Brahma Purāṇas. Dhundhu hid himself beneath a sea of sand, which Kuvalayáśwa and his sons dug up,—undeterred by the flames which checked their progress,—and finally destroyed most of them. The legend originates, probably, in the occurrence of some physical phenomenon, as an earthquake, or volcano.

---

\* According to the *Váyu-purāṇa*, like our text, he had a most numerous family:

बृहदशस्य पुत्राणां सहस्राख्यैकविंशतिः ।

† The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Kuvaláśwa:

बृहदशसुतस्यापि कुवलाश्व इति श्रुतिः ।

And from several passages that follow this it is evident that the name is Kuvaláśwa. The *Harivamśa*, śl. 671, etc., likewise has Kuvaláśwa; and so has the *Linga-purāṇa*. ‡ *Maharshi*.

§ In two MSS. I find Utanka, the lection of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 22. The *Harivamśa*, śl. 676, has, in different MSS., Utanka and Uttanka. The *Váyu-purāṇa* gives, in my MSS., Uttanka.

|| See Vol. II., p. 172, notes 2, etc.

¶ II., I., 13.

\*\* By Professor Wilson; in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. V., pp. 122, 123.

Also see M. Vivien de Saint-Martin's *Mémoire Analytique*, etc., p. 105; and General Cunningham, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1865, pp. 250—267.

the king was attended by his sons, to the number of twenty-one thousand; and all these, with the exception of only three, perished in the engagement, consumed by the fiery breath of Dhundhu. The three who survived were Dīdhāśwa, Chandráśwa,\* and Kapilāśwa;† and the son and successor of the elder of these‡ was Haryaśwa:§ his son was Nikumbha; his son was Saṁhataśwa;|| his son was Kṛiśāśwa; his son was Prasenajit; and his son was (another) Yuvanāśwa.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The series of names agrees very well to Saṁhataśwa, called Barhaṇāśwa in the Bhāgavata.¶ We have, there, some variations, and some details not noticed in our text. The Vāyu, Brahma, Agni, Linga, Matsya, and Kūrma ascribe two sons to Saṁhataśwa, whom the two first name Kṛiśāśwa and Akṛiśāśwa, and the rest, Kṛiśāśwa and Rañāśwa.\*\* Senajit†† or Prasenajit‡‡ is, generally, though not always, termed the son of the younger brother; but the commentator§§ on the Hari Vaṁśa calls him the son of Saṁhataśwa, whilst the Matsya, Agni, Linga, and Kūrma omit him, and make Māndhātī the son of Rañāśwa.||| The mother of Prasenajit and the wife of Akṛiśāśwa or Saṁhataśwa,—according to the different interpretations,—was the daughter of Himavat,

\* In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* the name is Bhadrāśwa.

† The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 24, has Dīdhāśwa, Kapilāśwa, and Bhadrāśwa.

‡ The original here again names Dīdhāśwa, but says nothing of his seniority: **दृढाश्वर्यः ।**

§ The *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXV., 37, interposes Pramoda between Dīdhāśwa and Haryaśwa.

|| One MS. has Hitāśwa; another, Saṁhitāśwa. The latter is the reading of some MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*; others giving Saṁhataśwa.

¶ IX., VI., 25.

\*\* The *Linga-purāṇa* distinctly calls Yuvanāśwa son of Rañāśwa.

†† *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 25.

‡‡ So reads the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

§§ Nilakaṁṭha, on *śl.* 709. Arjuna Miśra comments to the like effect.

||| The *Linga-purāṇa* represents Māndhātī to be son of Yuvanāśwa.

Yuvanāśwa had no son, at which he was deeply grieved. Whilst residing in the vicinage of the holy Munis, he inspired them with pity (for his childless condition); and they instituted a religious rite, to pro-

known as Dṛishadwatī, the river so termed\* (Vol. II., p. 142, note 4). The wife of Yuvanāśwa, according to the Vāyu, or of Prasenajit, according to the Brahma, was Gaurī, the daughter of Rantinara,† who, incurring the imprecation of her husband, became the Bāhudā river (Vol. II., p. 142, note 3). The Brahma and Hari Vamśa‡ call Yuvanāśwa her son; but, in another place,§ the Hari Vamśa contradicts itself, calling Gaurī the daughter of Matināra,|| of the race of Puru, the mother of Māndhātṛī; here following, apparently, the Matsya, in which it is so stated. The Brahma Purāṇa is not guilty of the inconsistency. The Vāyu of course gives the title to Māndhātṛī, with the addition, that he was called Gaurika, after his mother:

तस्मात्तु गौरिकः पुत्रश्चक्रवर्ती बभूव ह ।

मान्धाता यौवनाश्वो वै वैशोक्स्वविजयी नृपः ॥

Māndhātṛī's birth from Gaurī is the more remarkable, as it is incompatible with the usual legend, given in our text and in the Bhāgavata, which seems, therefore, to have been of subsequent origin, suggested by the etymology of the name. In the Bhāgavata,¶ Māndhātṛī is also named Trasaddasyu, or "the terrifier of thieves."

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa states:

ऊग्रान्धश्चाऊग्रान्धश्च संहतान्सुतापुत्री ।

तस्य पत्नी हेमवती सतां मान्धा कृषदती ॥

Compare the *Harivamśa*, śl. 708, 709.

† I have much doubt as to the correctness of this name.

‡ Śl. 709.

§ Śl. 1715, 1716.

|| Erroneously printed, in the former edition, "Matimara."

¶ IX., VI., 33:

वसहसुरितीन्द्रोऽङ्ग विदधे नाम तस्य वै ।

यस्यामसन्नि मुदिभा दस्यो रावणादयः ॥

cure him progeny. One night, during its performance, the sages, having placed a vessel of consecrated water upon the altar, had retired to repose. It was past midnight, when the king awoke, exceedingly thirsty; and, unwilling to disturb any of the holy inmates of the dwelling, he looked about for something to drink. In his search, he came to the water in the jar, which had been sanctified and endowed with prolific efficacy\* by sacred texts, and he drank it. When the Munis† rose, and found that the water had been drunk, they inquired who had taken it, and said: "The queen‡ that has drunk this water shall give birth to a mighty and valiant son." "It was I," exclaimed the Raja, "who unwittingly drank the water:" and, accordingly, in the belly of Yuvanáswa was conceived a child. And it grew; and in, due time, it ripped open the right side of the Raja, and was born: and the Raja did not die. Upon the birth of the child, "Who will be its nurse?" said the Munis; when (Indra,) the king of the gods appeared, and said, "He shall have me for his nurse" (mám ayañ dhásyati); and, hence, the boy was named Mándhátí. Indra put his fore-finger into the mouth of the infant, who sucked it, and drew from it (heavenly) nectar.§ And he grew up, and became a mighty monarch,|| and reduced the seven continental zones under his dominion. And here a verse is recited: "From the rising to the going down of the sun, all that is irra-

---

\* *Aparimeya-máhátmya.*

† *Rishi*, in the original.

‡ The original has: राज्ञोऽस्य युवनाश्वस्य पत्नी ।

§ *Amrita.*

|| *Chakravartin.*

diated by his light is the land of Mándhātrī, the son of Yuvanásśwa."<sup>1</sup>

Mándhātrī married Bindumatī,\* the daughter of Śaśabindu,† and had, by her, three sons, Purukutsa,‡ Ambarīsha, and Muchukunda:§ he had, also, fifty daughters.<sup>2</sup>

The (devout) sage|| Saubhari, learned in the Vedas,¶ had spent twelve years immersed in a piece of water; the sovereign of the fish in which, named Sāmmada,

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu cites this same verse, and another, with the remark, that they were uttered by those acquainted with the Purāṇas and with genealogies:

अचाप्युदाहरन्तीमौ श्लोकौ पीरायिका द्विजाः ।  
 यावत्सूर्यस्य उदयो यावदक्षमनं भवेत् ।\*\*  
 सर्वत्र यौवनाश्वस्य माध्वातुः श्वेचमुच्यते ॥  
 अचाप्युदाहरन्तीमं श्लोकं वंशविदो जनाः ।  
 यौवनाश्वं महात्मानं राजानममिति जसम् ।  
 माध्वातारं तनुं विष्णोः पुराणज्ञाः प्रचक्षते ॥

<sup>2</sup> The Brahma and Agni omit Ambarīsha, for whom the Matsya substitutes Dharmasena. The following legend of Saubhari occurs, elsewhere, only in the Bhāgavata,†† and there, less in detail.

\* A Bindumatī is spoken of, in the *Harshacharita*, as having slain Vidūratha. See my *Vāsavadattā*, Preface, p. 53.

† Compare the *Harivamśa*, śl. 712.

‡ One MS. has Purushakutsa, a reading of no value; the like of which I often pass by unnoticed. The Purukutsa of the *Rigveda*—see IV., XLII., 8, 9,—is called son of Durgaha, who is again named in the same work, VIII., LIV, 12.

§ The *Linga-purāṇa* seems to read Muchakunda.

|| *Rishi*.

¶ *Bahurīcha*. Vide *supra*, p. 50, note ‡.

\*\* In the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* this verse is read thus:

यावत्सूर्य उदेति स यावच्च प्रतितिष्ठति ।

†† IX., VI., 39—55.



of large bulk, had a very numerous progeny. His children and his grandchildren\* were wont to frolic around him, in all directions;† and he lived amongst them happily, playing with them night and day. Saubhari, the sage, being disturbed, in his devotions, by their sports, contemplated the patriarchal felicity of the monarch of the lake, and reflected: "How enviable is this creature, who, although born in a degraded state of being, is ever thus sporting cheerfully amongst his offspring and their young! Of a truth, he awakens, in my mind, the wish to taste such pleasure; and I, also, will make merry amidst my children."‡ Having thus resolved, the Muni came up, hastily, from the water, and, desirous of entering upon the condition of a householder, went to Mándhatri, to demand one of his daughters as his wife. As soon as he was informed of the arrival of the sage, the king rose up from his throne, offered him the customary libation,§ and treated him with the most profound respect. Having taken a seat, Saubharisaid to the Raja: "I have determined to marry. Do you, king, give me one of your daughters, as a wife. Disappoint not my affection.|| It is not the practice of the princes of the race of Kakutstha to turn away from compliance with the wishes of those who come to them for succour. There are, O monarch, other kings of the

\* पीवदीहिवाः, "sons' sons and daughters' sons."

† The original says that they "frolicked at his sides, in front of him, on his back, and over his breast, tail, and head": पाञ्चतोऽयतः पृष्ठतो वचःपुच्छशिरसां चोपरि भ्रमन्तः ।

‡ The translation, hereabouts, is greatly compressed.

§ *Arghya*.

|| *Prataya*.

earth to whom daughters have been born; but your family is, above all, renowned for observance of liberality in your donations to those who ask your bounty. You have, O prince, fifty daughters. Give one of them to me; that so I may be relieved from the anxiety I suffer through fear that my suit may be denied."

When Mándhātṛi heard this request, and looked upon the person of the sage, emaciated by (austerity and) old age, he felt disposed to refuse his consent: but, dreading to incur the anger and imprecation of the holy man, he was much perplexed, and, declining his head, was lost awhile in thought. The Ṛishi, observing his hesitation, said: "On what, O Raja, do you meditate? I have asked for nothing which may not be readily accorded. And what is there that shall be unattainable to you, if my desires be gratified by the damsel whom you must needs give unto me?" To this, the king, apprehensive of his displeasure,\* answered and said: "Grave sir, it is the established usage of our house to wed our daughters to such persons only as they shall, themselves, select from suitors of fitting rank; and, since this your request is not yet made known to my maidens, it is impossible to say whether it may be equally agreeable to them as it is to me. This is the occasion of my perplexity; and I am at a loss what to do." This answer of the king was fully understood by the Ṛishi, who said to himself: "This is merely a device of the Raja, to evade compliance with my suit. He has reflected that I am an old man, having no attractions for women, and not likely to be accepted by any of

---

\* *Śāpa*, 'curse'.

his daughters.\* Even be it so: I will be a match for him." And he then spake aloud, and said: "Since such is the custom, mighty prince, give orders that I be admitted into the interior of the palace.† Should any of the maidens, your daughters, be willing to take me for a bridegroom, I will have her for my bride. If no one be willing, then let the blame attach alone to the years that I have numbered."‡ Having thus spoken, he was silent.

Mándhātri, unwilling to provoke the indignation§ of the Muni, was, accordingly, obliged to command the eunuch to lead the sage into the inner chambers; who, as he entered the apartments, put on a form and features of beauty far exceeding the personal charms of mortals, or even of heavenly spirits.|| His conductor, addressing the princesses, said to them: "Your father, young ladies, sends you this pious sage, ¶ who has demanded of him a bride; and the Raja has promised him, that he will not refuse him any one of you who shall choose him for her husband."\*\* When the damsels heard this, and looked upon the person of the Rishi, they were equally inspired with passion and desire, and, like a troop of female elephants disputing

\* वृद्धोऽयमनभिमतः स्त्रीणां किमुत कन्यानामित्यमुना संचित्वैवमभिहितम् ।

† सन्नैवं तदादिक्षतामन्त्राकं प्रवेशाय कन्यासुःपुरवर्षधरः ।

‡ अन्वष्टा चेत्तद्वत्सलाकमेतेनातीतकालारब्धेय ।

§ Śāpa.

|| Siddha and gandharva, in the original.

¶ Brahmārāhi.

\*\* मया चास्य प्रतिज्ञातं यद्यस्मत्कन्या काचिन्नवन् वरयति तत्कन्याधारक्ये नाहं परिपन्वानं करिष्यामि ।

the favours of the master of the herd, they all contended for the choice.\* “Away, away, sister!” said each to the other: “this is my election; he is my choice; he is not a meet bridegroom for you; he has been created, by Brahmá, on purpose for me, as I have been created in order to become his wife; he has been chosen, by me, before you; you have no right to prevent his becoming my husband.” In this way arose a violent quarrel amongst the daughters of the king, each insisting upon the exclusive election of the Řishi; and, as the blameless sage was thus contended for by the rival princesses, the superintendent of the inner apartments, with a downcast look, reported to the king what had occurred.† Perplexed, more than ever, by this information, the Raja exclaimed: “What is all this? And what am I to do now? What is it that I have said? And, at last, although with extreme reluctance, he was obliged to agree that the Řishi should marry all his daughters.

Having then wedded, agreeably to law, all the princesses, the sage took them home to his habitation, where he employed the chief of architects, Viśwakarma,—equal, in taste and skill, to Brahmá himself;—to construct separate palaces for each of his wives: he ordered him to provide each building with elegant couches, and seats, and furniture, and to attach to them gardens and groves, with reservoirs of water, where the wild-duck and the swan should sport amidst beds

---

\* करेणैव इवेभयूषपतिं तमृषिमहमहमिकया वरयाम्भुवुः ।

† Hereabouts the rendering is rather freer than usual.

‡ विधातारमिवान्वम् ।

of lotos-flowers. The divine artist\* obeyed his injunctions, and constructed splendid apartments for the wives of the Rishi; in which, by command of Saubhari, the inexhaustible† and divine treasure called Nanda<sup>1</sup> took up his‡ permanent abode; and the princesses entertained all their guests and dependants with abundant viands of every description and the choicest quality.§

After some period had elapsed, the heart of King Mándhātī yearned for his daughters; and he felt solicitous to know whether they were happily circumstanced. Setting off, therefore, on a visit to the hermitage of Saubhari, he beheld, upon his arrival, a row of beautiful crystal palaces, shining as brilliantly as the rays of the sun, and situated amidst lovely gardens and reservoirs of pellucid water. Entering into one of these magnificent palaces, he found and embraced a daughter, and said to her, as the tears of affection and delight trembled in his eyes: "Dear child, tell me how it is with you. Are you happy here, or not? Does the great sage treat you with tenderness? Or do you revert, with regret, to your early home?" The princess replied: "You behold, my father, how delightful a mansion I inhabit,—surrounded by lovely gardens and lakes,

<sup>1</sup> The great Nidhi. A Nidhi is a treasure, of which there are several belonging to Kubera. Each has its guardian spirit, or is personified.

\* *Twashtī*.

† *Anapāyin*.

‡ It is not clear why Professor Wilson here personifies *nanda*, as if this Purāṇa were a Tantra. In his *Essays, Analytical, &c.*, Vol. II., pp. 379, 380, there is a valuable note on the nine *nidhis* of Kubera.

§ The translation of this paragraph is not very close; and the same may be said of the remainder of the chapter.

where the lotos blooms, and the wild swans murmur. Here I have delicious viands, fragrant unguents, costly ornaments, splendid raiment, \* soft beds, and every enjoyment that affluence can procure. Why, then, should I call to memory the place of my birth?† To your favour am I indebted for all that I possess. I have only one cause of anxiety, which is this: my husband is never absent from my dwelling; solely attached to me, he is always at my side; he never goes near my sisters; and I am concerned to think that they must feel mortified by his neglect: this is the only circumstance that gives me uneasiness."

Proceeding to visit another of his daughters, the king, after embracing her, and sitting down, made the same inquiry, and received the same account of the enjoyments with which the princess was provided. There was, also, the same complaint, that the Rishi was wholly devoted to her, and paid no attention to her sisters. In every palace Mándhātṛi heard the same story, from each of his daughters, in reply to his questions; and, with a heart overflowing with wonder and delight, he repaired to the wise Saubhari, whom he found alone, and, after paying homage to him, thus addressed him: "Holy sage, I have witnessed this thy marvellous power. The like miraculous faculties I have never known any other to possess. How great is the reward of thy devout austerities!" Having thus saluted the sage, and

---

\* The original here supplies but one epithet, *manomukula*, to four substantives.

† The question of the princess rather implies, that, in spite of this very luxury, she cannot forget her early home: तद्यापि केन वा जगन्मुनिर्न स्मर्यते ।

been received, by him, with respect, the Raja resided with him for some time, partaking of the pleasures of the place, and then returned to his capital.

In the course of time, the daughters of Mándhatri bore to Saubhari a hundred and fifty sons; and, day by day, his affection for his children became more intense, and his heart was wholly occupied with the sentiment of self.<sup>1</sup> "These my sons," he loved to think, "will charm me with their infant prattle; then they will learn to walk; they will, then, grow up to youth, and to manhood; I shall see them married, and they will have children; and I may behold the children of those children." By these and similar reflections, however, he perceived that his anticipations every day outstripped the course of time; and, at last, he exclaimed:\* "What exceeding folly is mine!† There is no end to my desires. Though all I hope should come to pass for ten thousand or a hundred thousand years, still new wishes would spring up. When I have seen my infants walk; when I have beheld their youth, their manhood, their marriage, their progeny; still my expectations are unsatisfied, and my soul yearns to behold the de-

---

<sup>1</sup> Of Mamatá, 'mineness' (ममता); the notion that wives, children, wealth, belong to an individual, and are essential to his happiness.

---

\* एवमादिमनोरथमनुदिनकालसंपत्तिवृत्तिमवेक्षितस्त्वं चिन्तयामास ।  
"Having discovered that some such desire kept pace with the daily increase of time, he took thought as follows."

So the commentary explains this passage, and very naturally: अनुदिनं कालस्य संपत्तिराधिक्यं तस्या वृत्तिरनुवर्तनं यच्च मनोरथे तमवेक्ष्य त्रासा अचिन्तयत् । एतद्वक्ष्यमाणम् ।

† The rest of the chapter, from this point, is in verse.

scendants of their descendants. Shall I even see them, some other wish will be engendered; and, when that is accomplished, how is the birth of fresh desires to be prevented? I have, at last, discovered, that there is no end to hope, until it terminates in death; and that the mind which is perpetually engrossed by expectation can never be attached to the supreme spirit. My mental devotions, whilst immersed in water, were interrupted by attachment to my friend the fish. The result of that connexion was my marriage; and insatiable desires are the consequences of my married life. The pain attendant upon the birth of my single body is now augmented by the cares attached to fifty others, and is further multiplied by the numerous children whom the princesses have borne to me.\* The sources of affliction will be repeatedly renewed by their children, and by their espousals, and by their progeny, and will be infinitely increased: a married life is a mine of individual anxiety.† My devotions, first disturbed by the fish of the pool, have since been obstructed by temporal indulgence; and I have been beguiled by that desire for progeny which was communicated to me by association with Sāmmada.‡ Separation from the world

\* दुःखं यदेवैकशरीरजन्यं  
शतार्थसंख्यं तदिदं प्रसूतम् ।  
परिग्रहेण चित्तिपात्रजातां  
सुतेरनेकैर्बलीकृतं तत् ॥

† "Individual anxiety" is to render *mamata*, for which see the Translator's note in the preceding page.

‡ चीर्यं तपो यत्तु जलाशयेण  
तस्मिन्निरेषा तपसोऽनाराधः ।  
मत्स्यस्य संग्राहभवच्च यो मे  
सुतादिरागो मुषितोऽस्मि तेन ॥



is the only path of the sage to final liberation: from commerce with mankind innumerable errors proceed. The ascetic who has accomplished a course of self-denial falls from perfection, by contracting worldly attachments. How much more likely should one so fall, whose observances are incomplete!\* My intellect has been a prey to the desire of married happiness: but I will, now, so exert myself, for the salvation of my soul, that, exempt from human imperfections, I may be exonerated from human sufferings.† To that end, I will propitiate, by arduous penance, Vishnú, the creator of the universe, whose form is inscrutable, who is smaller than the smallest, larger than the largest, the source of darkness and of light, the sovereign god of gods.: On his everlasting body, which is both discrete and indiscrete substance, illimitably mighty, and identical with the universe, may my mind, wholly free from sin, be ever steadily intent, so that I may be born no more! To him I fly for refuge; to that Vishnú who is the teacher of teachers, who is one with all beings, the

---

\* निःसंगता मुक्तिपदं यतीनां  
संगादशेषाः प्रभवन्ति दोषाः ।  
आरूढयोगोऽपि निपात्यतेऽधः  
संगेन योगी किमुताप्यसिद्धिः ॥  
† अहं त्वरिष्यामि तथात्मनोऽर्थे  
परिग्रहमाहङ्गहीतबुद्धिः ।  
यथा हि भूयः परिहीनदोषो  
जनस्व दुःखिर्भविता न दुःखी ॥  
: सर्वस्व धातारमचिन्त्यरूप-  
मखोरणीयांसमतिप्रमाणम् ।  
सितासितं चेश्वरमीश्वराणा-  
माराधयिष्ये तपसैव विष्णुम् ॥

pure eternal lord of all, without beginning, middle, or end, and besides whom is nothing.”\*

---

• तस्मिन्नेषीजसि सर्वरूपि-  
 क्षय्यत्तविसृष्टतनावर्तते ।  
 ममावर्त्तं चित्तमपेतदोषं  
 सदास्तु विष्णवभवाय भूयः ॥  
 समस्तभूतात्मसादनन्ता-  
 त्सर्वेश्वराद्व्यदनादिमध्यात् ।  
 यस्मान्न किंचित्तमहं गुरुणां  
 परं गुरुं संश्रयमेति विष्णुम् ॥

---

### CHAPTER III.

Saubhar and his wives adopt an ascetic life. Descendants of Mándhātī. Legend of Narmadā and Purukutsa. Legend of Trisanku. Báhu driven from his kingdom by the Haihayas and Tálajanghas. Birth of Sagara : he conquers the barbarians, imposes upon them distinguishing usages, and excludes them from offerings to fire and the study of the Vedas.

HAVING thus communed with himself, Saubhari abandoned his children, his home, and all his splendour, and, accompanied by his wives, entered the forest, where he daily practised the observances followed by the ascetics termed Vaikhánasas\* (or anchorets having families), until he had cleansed himself from all sin. When his intellect had attained maturity, he concentrated in his spirit the (sacramental) fires,<sup>1</sup> and became a religious mendicant.† Then, having consigned all his acts to the supreme,‡ he obtained the condition of Achyuta, which knows no change, and is not subject to the vicissitudes of birth, transmigration,§ or death. Whoever reads, or hears, or remembers, or understands|| this legend of Saubhari and his espousal of the daugh-

---

<sup>1</sup> So Manu; "Having repositied, as the law directs, the holy fires in his breast," &c. VI., 25. ¶

---

\* The *vaikhánasa* is the same as the *vánaprastha*, for a detail of whose duties, and of those of the *bhikshu*, vide *supra*, pp. 94—97.

† *Bhikshu*.

‡ *Bhagavat*.

§ *Avikāra*.

|| *Avadhārdyati*.

¶ असींचात्मनि वेतानास्तमारोप्य यथाविधि ।

अनपिरनिक्षेपः स्नायुनिर्मूलफलाशनः ॥

ters of Mándhātří shall never, for eight successive births, be addicted to evil thoughts; nor shall he act unrighteously, nor shall his mind dwell upon improper objects, nor shall he be influenced by selfish attachments. The line of Mándhātří is now resumed.

The son of Ambarísha, the son of Mándhātří, was Yuvanáswa:\* his son was Harita,<sup>†</sup> from whom the Angirasa Hárítas‡ were descended.<sup>‡</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu, Linga, Kúrma, and Bhágavata§ agree in this series: the others omit it.

<sup>2</sup> The words of the text are: तस्माच्चरितो यतोऽङ्गिरसो हारिताः । And the commentator explains the phrase: 'The Angirasa Brahmans, of whom the Hárita family was the chief.' || The Linga¶ reads:

हरितो युवनाश्वस्य हारिता यत आत्मजाः ।

एते ह्यङ्गिरसः पञ्चे चक्षोपेता द्विजातयः ॥

'Harita was the son of Yuvanáswa, whose sons were the Hárítas. They were on the part (or followers) of Angiras, and were Brahmans with the properties of Kshattriyas.' The Váyu has:

हरितो युवनाश्वस्य हारीता भूरयः स्यूताः ।

एते ह्यङ्गिरसः पुत्राः चक्षोपेता द्विजातयः ॥\*\*

'Harita was the son of Yuvanáswa, from whom were many

---

\* The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 1, has Yauvanáswa. See the next page, note ‡.

† Some MSS. have Hárita, like the *Bhágavata*.

‡ All my best MSS., supported by the commentary, yield 'Hárítas'.

§ But see note ‡ in the page next following.

|| I find: चक्षुरीशस्य युवनाश्वः प्रपितामहसनामा यतो हरिता-  
जारीता चङ्गिरसो द्विजा हरितगोचप्रवराः । अथ हरितानामर्षेया  
आङ्गिरसाम्बरीषयौवनाश्वेति प्रवरपाठात् ।

¶ Prior Section, LXV., 40, 41.

\*\* My MSS. differ, as to this stanza, from those followed by Professor Wilson. *Vide infra*, p. 283, note ¶.

In the regions below the earth,\* the Gandharvas called Mauneyas† (or, sons of the Muni Kaśyapa), who

called Hárītas. They were sons of Angirāś, and Brahmans with the properties of Kshattriyas. The Bhāgavata‡ has only: **मान्वा-  
तुम्वरा इमे ।** These (Ambarisha, Purukutsa, and Harita,) were, according to Śrīdhara Swāmin's comment, the chiefs of Māndhātī's descendants; being founders of three several branches: or it may mean, he says, merely that they had Māndhātī for their progenitor; Māndhātī being, by some, also named Angirāś, according to Āśwalāyana.§ It may be questioned if the compilers of the Purāṇas, or their annotators, knew exactly what to make of this and similar phrases, || although they were, probably, intended to intimate, that some persons of Kshattriya origin became the disciples of certain Brahmans, particularly of Angirāś, and, afterwards, founders of schools of religious instruction, themselves. Māndhātī himself is the author of a hymn in the R̥g-veda. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 385.¶ Hárīta is the name of an individual

\* *Rasātala*. See Vol. II., p. 209, note 1.

† The commentator says they were Chitrasena and others: see Vol. II., p. 285, note †. The term seems to be a general epithet of the Gandharvas, derived from their mother, Muni: see the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, śl. 2552; *Harivamśa*, śl. 11553. In Vol. II., p. 75, it is the Apsaras that spring from Kaśyapa and Muni; the Gandharvas being the offspring of Kaśyapa and Arishtā.

‡ IX., VII., 1. Subjoined are the original and Burnouf's translation:

**माधातुः पुत्रप्रवरो योऽम्बरीषः प्रकीर्तितः ।**

**पितामहेन प्रवृत्तो यौवनाश्वश्च तत्पुतः ।**

**हारीतश्च पुत्रोऽभूत्माधातुप्रवरा इमे ॥**

"Le fils aîné de Māndhātī qui est célèbre sous le nom d'Ambarīsha, fut adopté par son grand-père Yuvanāçva; c'est pourquoi le fils d'Ambarīsha est nommé Yāuvanāçva. Ce dernier prince eut pour fils Hārīta; ces [trois] personnages (Ambarīsha, Yāuvanāçva et Hārīta) ont pour auteur commun Māndhātī."

§ ? See Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 383. || *Vide supra*, p. 255, note 2; p. 258, note 1.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 25.

were sixty millions in number, had defeated the tribes of the Nágas (or snake-gods), and seized upon their most precious jewels, and usurped their dominion. Deprived of their power by the Gandharvas, the serpent-chiefs addressed the god of the gods, as he awoke from his slumbers; and the blossoms of his lotos-eyes opened, while listening to their hymns.\* They said: "Lord, how shall we be delivered from this great fear?" Then replied the first of males,† who is without beginning: "I will enter into the person of Purukutsa, the son of Mándhātí, the son of Yuvanáswa; and in him will I quiet these iniquitous Gandharvas." On hearing these words, the snake-gods bowed and withdrew, and, returning to their country, despatched Narmadá, to solicit the aid of Purukutsa.<sup>1</sup>

Narmadá accordingly went to Purukutsa, and conducted him to the regions below the earth,‡ where, being filled with the might of the deity, he destroyed the Gandharvas. He then returned to his own palace; and the snake-gods, in acknowledgement of Narmadá's services, conferred upon her, as a blessing, that, who-

---

sage, considered as the son of Chyavana, and to whom a work on law is attributed. It is, probably, rather that of a school, however, than of an individual.

<sup>1</sup> Narmadá, the personified Nerbudda river, was, according to the Bhágavata,§ the sister of the Nágas.||

---

\* The rendering here is somewhat lax.

† *Purushottama*. See Vol. I., p. 16, note ‡.

‡ *Rashtala*.

§ IX., VII., 2.

|| For another origin of her, *vide supra*, p. 162, note ||; p. 165, note ‡.

soever should think of her, and invoke her name, should never have any dread of the venom of snakes.\* This is the invocation: "Salutation be to Narmadā in the morning; salutation be to Narmadā at night; salutation be to thee, O Narmadā! Defend me from the serpent's poison."† Whoever repeats this, day and night, shall never be bitten by a snake, in the dark, or in entering a chamber; nor shall he who calls it to mind, when he eats, suffer any injury from poison, though it be mixed with his food. To Purukutsa, also, the snake-gods announced, that the series of his descendants should never be cut off.

Purukutsa had a son, by Narmadā, named Trasadasyu,‡ whose son was Saṁbhūta,<sup>1</sup>§ whose son was

---

<sup>1</sup> We have some varieties here. Instead of Trasadasyu, the Matsya has Dussaha, whom it makes the husband of Narmadā, and father of Saṁbhūti, the father of Tridhanwan. The Bhāgavata|| omits Saṁbhūti; the Linga¶ makes him the brother of Trasadasyu; and the Agni has, in his place, Sudhanwan.

---

\* For सर्पविषभयं there is a variant, सर्वविषभयं, "dread of any poison."

† नर्मदायै नमः प्रातर्नर्मदायै नमो निशि ।

नमोऽस्तु नर्मदे शुभं रक्ष मां विषसर्पतः ॥

‡ Some MSS. read, like the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Trasadasyu. *Vide supra*, p. 266, note ¶, for this word as an epithet.

§ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads, in my MSS.:

नर्मदायां समुत्पन्नः संभूतस्तस्य चात्मजः ।

It seems, then,—*vide supra*, p. 165, Sanskrit extract in note †,—that Trasadasyu and Saṁbhūta are one, unless they are brothers.

|| IX., VII., 3. It says that Anarāya was son of Trasadasyu.

¶ Prior Section, LXV., 41, 42. Then follows:

विष्णुवृद्धः सुतस्तस्य विष्णुवृद्धा यतः सुताः ।

एते ह्यङ्घ्रिरसः पथे च त्रयोपताः समाश्रिताः ।

संभूतिरपरं पुत्रमनरक्षमजीवन्त ॥

Anaraṇya, who was slain by Rāvaṇa, in his triumphant progress through the nations.\* The son of Anaraṇya was Prishadaśwa;† his son was Haryaśwa; his son was Sumanas;‡ his son was Tridhanwan; his son was Trayyāruṇa:§ and his son was Satyavrata, who obtained the appellation of Trisanku,§ and was degraded to the

\* Brishadaśwa: Vāyu. || The Matsya, Agni, and Brahma omit all between Sambhūta and Tridhanwan. ¶ The Bhāgavata \*\* has a rather different series, or, Anaraṇya, Haryaśwa, Aruṇa, Tribandhana, Trisanku. As Anaraṇya is famous in Hindu story, †† and Trayyāruṇa:‡‡ is a contributor to the Ṛig-veda, their omission shows careless compilation.

Sambhūti is, thus, provided with two sons, Vishnūvridha—founder of the Vishnūvridhas,—and Anaraṇya.

The first two of these lines—only with the substitution of पुत्रः for पत्नि—occur in the Vāyu-purāṇa, likewise. Vide supra, p. 280, note \* .

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa distinctly says, in my MSS., that he slew Rāvaṇa: रावणो निहतो येन विश्वोक्त्विति पुरा ।

† Brishadaśwa. Linga-purāṇa. And so, I think, the Vāyu-purāṇa is intended to read.

‡ One MS. has Trayyāruṇi.

§ Vide infra, p. 286, note †.

|| There, as in the Linga-purāṇa, Prior Section, LXV., 45, I find Vasumanas, with Dfishadwati—which name seems to have been misread Brishadaśwa—for his mother:

हर्यश्वात्तु वृषदत्तां जज्ञे वसुमना नृपः ।

Vasumanas, son of Rohidaśwa, is mentioned in the Anukramanikā to the Ṛigveda, X., 179.

¶ The Harivahśa, II. 715, 716, has, also, Sambhūta, Sudhanwan, Tridhanwan.

\*\* IX., VII., 4.

†† Particularly in the Rāmāyaṇa.

‡‡ Read "Tryaruṇa." Vide supra, p. 36, note †. In the Ṛigveda, V., XXVII., 3, Tryaruṇa and Trasadasyu are mentioned as if contemporaries.



condition of a Chāṇḍāla (or outcaste).<sup>1\*</sup> During a twelve years' famine,† Trisanku provided the flesh of deer, for the nourishment of the wife and children of Viśwāmitra; suspending it upon a (spreading) fig-tree‡ on the borders of the Ganges,§ that he might not subject them to the indignity of receiving presents from an outcaste.|| On this account, Viśwāmitra, being highly

---

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu states, he was banished, by his father, for his wickedness (Adharma). The Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Varṇa¶ detail his iniquity at length; and it is told more concisely in the Linga. He carried off the betrothed wife of another man;—one of the citizens, according to the two former; of Vidarbha, according to the latter. For this, his father, by the advice of Vasishṭha, banished him; and he took refuge with Śwapākas. The Rāmāyaṇa\*\* has a different story, and ascribes Trisanku's degradation to the curse of the sons of Vasishṭha, to whom the king had applied to conduct his sacrifice, after their father had refused to do so. Before that, he is described†† as a pious prince (सत्त्व-वादी जितेन्द्रियः); and the object of his sacrifice was to ascend to heaven.

---

\* For Trisanku, a Chāṇḍāla king known to Buddhist tradition, and probably the same person, see Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., pp. 207, *et seq.*

† Literally, 'drought,' *anāvṛishṭi*.

‡ *Nyagrodha*.

§ Jāhnavī, in the original.

|| An expansion of चण्डालप्रतियहपरिहारणाय ।

¶ *Śl.* 717, *et seq.*

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LVIII.

†† *Ibid.*, LVII., 10.

pleased with him, elevated him, in his living body, to heaven.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The occurrence of the famine, and Satyavrata's care of the wife and family of Viśwámitra, are told, with some variations, in the Váyu, which has been followed by the Brahma and Hari Varṇśa.\* During the famine, when game fails, he kills the cow of Vasishṭha; and, for the three crimes of displeasing his father, killing a cow, and eating flesh not previously consecrated, he acquires the name of Triśanku (tri, 'three', śanku, 'sin').† Vasishṭha refusing to perform his regal inauguration, Viśwámitra celebrates the rites, and, on his death, elevates the king, in his mortal body, to heaven. The Rámáyāṇa relates the same circumstance, but assigns to it a different motive,—Viśwámitra's resentment of the refusal of the gods to attend Triśanku's sacrifice. That work also describes the attempt of the gods to cast the king down upon earth, and the compromise between them and Viśwámitra, by which Triśanku was left suspended, head downwards, in mid-air, forming a constellation in the southern hemisphere, along with other new planets and stars formed by Viśwámitra. The Bhágavata‡ has an allusion to this legend, saying that Triśanku is still visible in heaven:

\* Śl. 724, et seq. See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 86—88.

† Triśanku—"he of three delinquencies,"—was so called, according to the commentator on the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*, because he ate what was unhallowed, slew his spiritual teacher's cow, and disobeyed his father's commands: अग्रोचितमद्यगुदधेगुवधपिचाक्ष्णक्ष्णस्त्रिभिः शङ्कुभिरिव हृदिव्यथाहेतुमिस्त्रिशङ्कुसंज्ञामवाप । Then follows a quotation of the *Harivamśa*, śl. 748, 749:

पितृसापरितोषेण गुरोर्दोर्ग्रीवधेव च ।

अग्रोचितोपयोगाच्च चिविधस्ते व्यतिक्रमः ॥

एवं त्रीन्शङ्कुशङ्कुनि तानि दृष्ट्वा महायशः ।

चिशङ्कुरिति होवाच चिशङ्कुसेन स स्मृतः ॥

Also see Śrīdhara on the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 5.

‡ IX., VII., 5.

The son of Trisanku was Hariśchandra;<sup>1\*</sup> his son

सशरीरो गतः स्वर्गमवापि दिवि वृश्चते ।

The Vāyu furnishes some further information, from an older source:

अवाप्युदाहरन्तीमी श्लोकी पीरायिका जनाः ।

विश्वामित्रप्रसादिन विशङ्खुर्दिवि राजते ।

देवैः सार्धं महतिजानुयहात्तस्य धीमतः ॥

शनीयाति -- रम्या हेमन्ते चन्द्रमण्डिता ।†

अचङ्कता चिभिर्यमिस्त्रिशङ्खुग्रहभूषिता ॥

Both my copies leave a blank, where it is marked; and a similar passage does not elsewhere occur: but the word should, probably, be निशा; and the whole may be thus rendered: "Men acquainted with the Purāṇas recite these two stanzas: 'By the favour of Viśwāmitra, the illustrious Trisanku shines in heaven, along with the gods, through the kindness of that sage. Slowly passes the lovely night in winter, embellished by the moon, decorated with three watches, and ornamented with the constellation Trisanku.' " This legend is, therefore, clearly astronomical, and alludes, possibly, to some reformation of the sphere by Viśwāmitra, under the patronage of Trisanku, and in opposition to a more ancient system advocated by the school of Vasishṭha. It might be no very rash conjecture, perhaps, to identify Trisanku with Orion, the three bright stars of whose belt may have suggested the three Śankus (stakes or pins) which form his name.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Paurāṇik lists generally dismiss Hariśchandra very summarily; but he makes a conspicuous figure in legends of an apparently later date. In the Mahābhārata, Sabhā Parvan, § it is

\* According to the *Harivamśa*, sl. 754, he married Satyarathā, of the Kaikaya family. And so says the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† The MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* used by me, and to which the Translator had access, read this line thus:

शनीयाखयसा रम्या हेमन्ते चन्द्रमण्डिता ।

The missing word is, then, अयसा, 'a woman.' In the next verse, my MSS. have भवैः, instead of यमैः.

‡ The reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as now restored, militates against this conjecture.

was Rohitāswa;<sup>1</sup> his son was Harita;<sup>2</sup> his son was

---

stated, that he resides in the court of Indra, to which he was elevated for his performance of the Rājasūya sacrifice, and for his unbounded liberality. This seems to have served as the groundwork of the tale told in the Márkaṇḍeya\* and Padma Purāṇas, of his having given his whole country, his wife and son, and, finally, himself, to Viśwámitra, in satisfaction of his demands for Dakshiṇá. In consequence, he was elevated, with his subjects, to heaven, from whence, having been insidiously led, by Nárada, to boast of his merits, he was again precipitated. His repentance of his pride, however, arrested his downward descent; and he and his train paused in mid-air. The city of Hariśchandra is popularly believed to be, at times, still visible in the skies. The indignation of Vasishtha at Viśwámitra's insatiableness produced a quarrel, in which their mutual imprecations changed them to two birds, the Śaráli (a sort of Turdus,) and the Baka (or crane). In these forms they fought for a considerable term, until Brahmá interposed, and reconciled them. The Bhágavata alludes to this story, in its notice of Hariśchandra; but the Váyu refers the conflict to the reign of a different prince: *vide supra*, p. 261, note 2. According to the Śiva Purāṇa, Hariśchandra was an especial worshipper of that deity; and his wife Satyavati was a form of Jayá, one of Durgá's handmaids.

<sup>1</sup> Also read Rohita. † Traces of his name appear in the strongholds of Rotas, in Behar‡ and in the Punjab. The Bhágavata has a legend of his having been devoted to Varuṇa, before his birth, by his father, who, having, on various pleas, deferred

---

\* Chapter VIII.

† In the *Váyu-purāṇa*; in the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 8; in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 11, 12; and in the *Harivamśa*, *śl.* 756.

‡ The *Harivamśa* states that he founded Rohitapura.

"Harishchandra was a very great conqueror; and his son Rohita or Rohitāswa founded, and is said to have resided at, the fortress which, from him, is called Rohitās, a name corrupted, in our maps, to Rotās." Hamilton's *Genealogies of the Hindus*, &c., p. 32.

Chunchu,<sup>1\*</sup> who had two sons, named Vijaya and Sudeva. † Ruruka<sup>2</sup> was the son of Vijaya, and his own son was Vrika, ‡ whose son was Báhu (or Báhuka§). This prince was vanquished by the tribes of Haihayas and Tálajanghas,<sup>3</sup> || and his country was overrun by them;

offering his son, as promised, was afflicted by a dropsy. Rohita, at last, purchased Śunahśepha, ¶ who was offered, as a victim, in his stead: see hereafter, note on Śunahśepha. \*\*

<sup>1</sup> Omitted: Agni, Linga, †† and Matsya.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Agni. Dhundhu: Linga ‡‡ and Kúrma. Champa, founder of Champamálini: §§ Bhágavata. ||| But all other authorities make Champa a different person, a descendant of Anga: see family of Anu, of the lunar race. ¶¶

<sup>3</sup> Kuruka: Linga \*\*\* and Kúrma. Bharuka: Bhágavata. †††

<sup>\*</sup> Descendants of Yadu. The first springs from a prince who

\* Several MSS. give Chanchu; and other Purāṇas, and also the *Hari-vamśa*, exhibit the same variety.

† Vijaya was son of Sudeva, according to the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 1. Instead of Sudeva, the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 12, has Sntejas.

‡ One MS. has Vřisha. The *Váyu-purāṇa* reads, in different MSS., Vřitaka and Dhřitaka.

§ I find this, the longer, form only in the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 2.

|| These are said to be a branch of the Haihayas. See the Translator's last note on Chapter XI. of this Book.

¶ Corrected, here and just below, from "Śunahśephas." See the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 19, 22.

\*\* Chapter VII. of this Book.

†† I find Harita, followed by Dhundhu, in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 12:

हरितो रोहितस्त्राय धुम्बुर्हारित उच्यते ।

‡‡ See the preceding note.

§§ I find Champápuri.

||| IX., VIII., 1.

¶¶ Chapter XVIII. of this Book.

\*\*\* This Purāṇa has Ruchaka, in some MSS.

††† IX., VIII., 2.

in consequence of which, he fled into the forests, with his wives. One of these was pregnant; and, being an object of jealousy\* to a rival queen, the latter gave her poison, to prevent her delivery. The poison had the effect of confining the child in the womb for seven years. Báhu, having waxed old, died in the neighbourhood of the residence† of (the Muni) Aurva. His queen, having constructed his pile, ascended it, with the determination of accompanying him in death; but the sage‡ Aurva, who knew all things, past, present, and to come, issued forth from his hermitage, and forbade her, saying: "Hold! hold! This is unrighteous. A valiant prince, the monarch of many realms,§ the offerer of many sacrifices, the destroyer of his foes, a universal emperor,|| is in thy womb. Think not of committing so desperate an act!" Accordingly, in obedience to his injunctions, she relinquished her intention. The sage then conducted her to his abode, and, after some time, a very splendid boy was there born. Along with

---

is the twelfth, and the second, from one who is the eighteenth, in the lunar line; and both are, thus, contemporary with a prince who is the thirty-fifth of the solar dynasty. The Váyu adds, that they were assisted by Śakas, Yavanas, Kámbojas, Páradas, ¶ and Pahlavas.

---

\* This is an inference. The original runs: तस्माच्च सपत्न्यः गर्भसंभवाय गरो दत्तः ।

† Ásrama.

‡ Bhagavat.

§ अखिलभूमण्डलपतिरतिवीर्यपराक्रमः ।

|| Chakravartin.

¶ Corrected from "Páravas,"—a typographical error, presumably.

him, the poison that had been given to his mother was expelled; and Aurva, after performing the ceremonies required at birth,\* gave him (on that account) the name of Sagara (from Sa, 'with', and Gara, 'poison'). The same holy sage celebrated his investiture with the cord of his class, instructed him (fully) in the Vedas,† and taught him the use of arms, especially those of fire, called after Bhárgava.‡

When the boy (had grown up, and) was capable of reflection, he said to his mother, (one day): "Why are we dwelling in this hermitage? Where is my father? And who is he?" His mother, in reply, related to him all (that had happened); upon hearing which, he was highly incensed, and vowed to recover his patrimonial kingdom, and exterminate the Haihayas and Tálajanghas,§ by whom it had been overrun. Accordingly, (when he became a man), he put nearly the whole of the Haihayas to death, and would have, also, destroyed the Śakas, the Yavanas, Kámbojas, Páradas, and Pahlavas,<sup>1</sup> but that they applied to Vasishtha, the family-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Haihayas || we shall have further occasion to notice. The

---

\* ज्ञातवर्मादिकां क्रियां निष्ठाद्य । The *jāta-karmān* is described as "a ceremony ordained on the birth of a male, before the section of the navel-string, and which consists in making him taste clarified butter out of a golden spoon." Colebrooke's *Digest*, &c., Vol. III., p. 104, note †.

† Insert 'and all sciences', शास्त्राख्यशेषाणि ।

‡ Read "called after Bhṛigu": अस्त्रं चापेयं भार्गवास्त्रम् । The *Vāyu-purāna* alleges that Sagara's instructor in the use of such arms was Bhṛigu himself. For Hindu fiery weapons, *vide supra*, p. 81, note \*.

§ Add "and others," *adī*.

|| For mention of this race in a medieval inscription, see the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1862, p. 117, line 1.

priest\* (of Sagara), for protection. Vasishtha, regarding them as annihilated (or deprived of power), though

Śakas† are, no doubt, the Sacæ or Sakai of the classical geographers,—Scythians and Indo-Scythians, Turk or Tartar tribes, who established themselves, about a century and a half before our era, along the western districts of India, and who are, not improbably, connected with our Saxon forefathers. The Yavanas‡ are the Ionians or Greeks. The Kámbojas§ were a people on the northwest of India, of whom it is said, that they were remarkable for a capital breed of horses. There is an apparent trace of their name in the Caumojees of Kaferistán, who may have retreated to the mountains before the advance of the Turk tribes. (Elphinstone's Account of the Kingdom of Caubul, &c., 1st ed., p. 619: see, also, Vol. II., p. 182, note 1). The Páradas|| and Pahlavas¶ or Pahnavas may designate other bordering tribes in the same direction, or on the confines of Persia. Along with these, in the legend that follows, the Bhágavata\*\* enumerates Barbaras.†† The Váyu adds Máhishikas,‡‡ Dárvas,§§ Chaulas,||| and Khaśas;¶¶ the two former

\* *Kula-guru.*

† See Vol. II., p. 165, note 8.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 181, note 6.

§ See Vol. II., p. 182, notes 1, etc.; p. 183, note 3, and annotations thereon.

|| See Vol. II., p. 182, note 4; p. 183, note ‡.

¶ This, undoubtedly, is the right word; and, on the authority of all my best MSS., I have amended the text accordingly, in the preceding page, and in p. 294, *infra*. See Vol. II., p. 187, note §. At p. 339 of that volume, I have silently corrected the statement previously made at p. 168, note ||, that the Pahlavas are not named in the genuine *Rāmāyaṇa*.

\*\* IX., VIII., 5. Along with the Barbaras are there named only the Tálajanghas, Yavanas, Śakas, and Haihayas.

†† See Vol. II., p. 176, notes 8 and \*\*; p. 178, note §.

‡‡ See Vol. II., p. 166, notes 8, etc.

§§ See Vol. II., p. 178, text and notes † and ††.

||| Identified, here, with the Cholas, for whom see Vol. II., p. 178, note 13. The *Harivamśa*, in the corresponding passage, has Cholas.

¶¶ See Vol. II., p. 186, note 5.



living,\* thus spake to Sagara: "Enough, enough, my

of which are people on the Malabar and Coromandel coasts; the two latter are, usually, placed amongst the mountaineers of the Hindu Kush. The *Brahma Purāṇa* lengthens the list with the Kolas (the forest races of eastern Gondwana), the Sarpas,† and the Keralas,‡ (who are the people of Malabar). The *Hari Vamśa*§ still further extends the enumeration with the Tushāras or To-khāras|| (the Turks of Tokharestān), the Chīnas¶ (Chinese), the Madras\*\* (people in the Punjab), the Kishkindhas†† (in Mysore), Kauntalas‡‡ (along the Nerbudda), Bangas§§ (Bengalis), Śālwas||| (people in western India), and the Konkaṇas¶¶ (or inhabitants of the Concan). It is evident, from the locality of most of the additions of the last authority, that its compiler, or corrupter, has been a native of the Dekhin.

\* *Jīvanmṛitaka*. The scholiast hereupon quotes the following stanza from some unnamed *Smṛiti*:

यः स्वधर्मात्परिधृष्टो विप्रैरेव बहिष्कृतः ।

स जीवन्नेव लोकेऽस्मिन्नुत इत्यभिधीयते ॥

"He who has fallen away from his duty, and is cast out by Brāhmanas, though living in this world, is declared to be dead."

† In the corresponding passage of the *Harivamśa*,—namely, at *sl.* 782,—I find, much more frequently than कोलसर्पाः,—yielding Kolas and Sarpas, or else Kolasarpas,—कोलिसर्पाः, कोलिसर्पाः, &c. All these, I strongly suspect, are corruptions of कलिसर्पाः, an epithet which the *Vāyu-purāṇa*—see a few lines before, in Professor Wilson's foot-note,—applies to the Māhishikas.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 178, notes 1 and §.

§ *Sl.* 782—784.

|| See Vol. II., p. 186, notes 5, etc.

¶ See Vol. II., p. 181, note 7.

\*\* See Vol. II., p. 163, notes 11, etc.

†† Tradition places the Kishkindhas in Odra, or Orissa. See the *Śab-dakalpadruma*, *sub voce*; also, Vol. II., p. 177, note 3.

‡‡ Some MSS. have Kontalas. And see Vol. II., p. 157, notes 9, etc. I know not on what authority M. Langlois asserts, that these people, "aux longs cheveux étaient près des Tchinas."

§§ "Vangas", in Vol. II., p. 166.

||| See Vol. II., pp. 133—135; p. 156, note \*.

¶¶ See Vol. II., p. 178, notes 14 and §.

son! Pursue no further these objects of your wrath, whom you may look upon as no more.\* In order to fulfil your vow,† I have separated them from affinity to the regenerate tribes, and from the duties of their castes." Sagara, in compliance with the injunctions of his spiritual guide, contented himself, therefore, with imposing upon the vanquished nations peculiar distinguishing marks.‡ He made the Yavanas<sup>1</sup> shave their heads entirely;§ the Śakas he compelled to shave (the upper) half of their heads; the Páradas wore their hair long; and the Pahlavas let their beards grow; in obedience to his commands.<sup>2</sup> Them, also, and other

<sup>1</sup> And Kámbojas: Váyu.

<sup>2</sup> The Asiatic nations generally shave the head, either wholly, or in part. Amongst the Greeks, it was common to shave the fore part of the head; a custom introduced, according to Plutarch, by the Abantes,—whom Homer|| calls Ὀπιδεν κομῳῶντες,—and followed, according to Xenophon, by the Lacedæmonians. It may be doubted, however, if the Greeks or Ionians ever shaved the head completely. The practice prevails amongst the Moham-medans; but it is not universal. The Śakas (Scythians, or Tartars) shave the fore part of the head, gathering the hair at the back into a long tail, as do the Chinese. The mountaineers of the Himálaya shave the crown of the head, as do the people of Kaferistán, with exception of a single tuft. What oriental people wore their hair long, except at the back of the head, is questionable; and the usage would be characteristic rather of the Teutonic and Gothic nations. The ancient Persians had long bushy

\* अक्षमेभिरतिजीवन्मुक्तकैरनुसृतेः ।

† *Pratijñá.*

‡ *Vesānyatva.*

§ *Mundāta-śiras.*

|| *Iliad. II., 542.*

Kshattriya races, he deprived of the established usages of oblations to fire\* and the study of the Vedas; and, thus separated from religious rites,† and abandoned by the Brahmans, these different tribes became Mlechchhas. Sagara, after the recovery of his kingdom, reigned over the seven-zoned earth, with undisputed dominion.‡

beards, as the Persepolitan sculptures demonstrate. In Chardin's time, they were out of fashion; but they were again in vogue, in that country, in the reign of the last king, Fath Sháh.

<sup>1</sup> So the Váyú, &c.; and a similar statement is given in Manu, X., 44, where, § to the Śakas, Yavanas, Kámbojas, Páradas, and Pahlavas, || are added the Pauándrakas ¶ (people of western Bengal), Odras\*\* (those of Orissa), Dravidas †† (of the Coromandel coast), Chínas (Chinese), Kirátas (mountaineers), and Daradas ‡‡ (Durds of the Hindu Kush). From this passage, and a similar one in the Rámáyana, in which the Chínas §§ are mentioned, the late Mr. Klaproth inferred those works to be not older than the third century B. C., when the reigning dynasty of Thsin first gave that

\* *Vashatkára*. See Vol. II., p. 29, note §.

† *Dharma*.

‡ सगरोऽपि स्वमधिष्ठानमागम्यास्त्वलितचक्रः सप्तद्वीपवतीभिर्मासुर्वी प्रशशास ।

§ See Vol. II., p. 183, note 3, and annotations thereon.

|| Corrected from "Pahnavas." The Translator has Pahlavas in Vol. II., p. 183, note 3. *Vide supra*, p. 292, note ¶.

¶ Professor Wilson had "Pauándras," which I do not find in the original. For the Pauándrikas, see Vol. II., p. 177, note ††.

\*\* This is, perhaps, to be altered. See Vol. II., p. 184, note †; p. 177, notes 3 and \*\*.

†† Elsewhere read Drávidas. See Vol. II., p. 177, text and note 5.

‡‡ See Vol. II., p. 185, notes 3, etc.

§§ It is only in the Bengal recension of the *Rámáyana* that the Chínas are mentioned. See Vol. II., p. 176, note \*\*.

name to China (see, also, Vol. II., p. 131, note 7). It was probable, he supposed, that the Hindus became acquainted with the Chinese only about 200 B. C., when their arms extended to the Oxus: but it is difficult to reconcile this date with the difference of style between the Rāmāyaṇa, particularly, and the works of the era of Vikramāditya. It would seem more likely, that the later appellations were interpolated. It must have been a period of some antiquity, when all the nations from Bengal to the Coromandel coast were considered as Mlechchhas and outcasts.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

The progeny of Sagara: their wickedness: he performs an Aśwamedha: the horse stolen by Kapila: found by Sagara's sons, who are all destroyed by the sage: the horse recovered by Amśumat: his descendants. Legend of Mitrasaha or Kalmáshapáda, the son of Sudása. Legend of Khatwánga. Birth of Ráma and the other sons of Daśaratha. Epitome of the history of Ráma: his descendants, and those of his brothers. Line of Kuśa. Bṛíhadbala, the last, killed in the Great War.

SUMATI, the daughter of Kaśyapa, and Keśiní,\* the daughter of Raja Vidarbha,† were the two wives of Sagara.‡ Being without progeny, the king solicited

‘ So the Rámáyāna. § Sumati is called the daughter of Arish-tanemi: || the Mahábhárata ¶ calls her Śaibyá. The story of Sa-

\* This was the elder wife, the *Váyu-purána* alleges.

† In the *Váyu-purána* and *Harivamśa*, he is called simply Vidarbha.

‡ The following genealogy is given in the *Rámáyāna*, *Bála-kánda*, LXX., 19—37: Brahmá, Marichi, Kaśyapa, Vivaswat, Manu, Ikshwáku (first king of Ayodhyá), Kukshi, Vikukshi, Bána, Anaráya, Pṛithu, Trisanku, Dhundhumára, Yuvanáswa, Mándhátṛi, Susandhi, Dhruvasandhi (with Prasenajit), Bharata, Asita, Sagara. The same detail is found in the *Ayodhyá-kánda*, CX., 5—24.

In the Bengal recension of the *Rámáyāna*, *Ádi-kánda*, LXXII., Angiras and Prachetas intervene between Kaśyapa and Manu, Vivaswat being omitted; as is Kukshi, also.

The *Ayodhyá-kánda*, CXIX., in the same recension, names, somewhat discrepantly: Brahmá, Marichi, Kaśyapa,—and then, a break being announced,—Vivaswat, Manu, Ikshwáku, Kukshi, Vikukshi, Reṇu, Pushya, Anaráya, Pṛithu, Trisanku, Dhundhumára, Yuvanáswa, Mándhátṛi, Susandhi, Dhṛitasandhi (with Prasenajit), Bharata, Asita, Sagara.

Most of this is very different from what we meet with in the Puráṇas.

§ *Bála-kánda*, XXXVIII., 3, 4.

|| This is another name of Kaśyapa. See Vol. II., p. 28, note 2. For the stanza there cited from the *Mahábhárata*, see the *Sánti-parvan*, *śl.* 7574.

¶ *Vana-parvan*, *śl.* 8833.

the aid of the sage Aurva, with great earnestness; \* and the Muni pronounced this boon, that one wife should bear one son, the upholder of his race, and the other should give birth to sixty thousand sons; and he left it to them to make their election. Keśinī chose to have the single son; Sumati, the multitude: and † it came to pass, in a short time, that the former bore Asamanjas, † a prince through whom the dynasty continued; and the daughter of Vinatā, ‡ Sumati, had sixty thousand sons. The son of Asamanjas was Amśumat.

Asamanjas was, from his boyhood, of very irregular conduct. § His father hoped, that, as he grew up to manhood, he would reform; but, finding that he continued guilty of the same immorality, Sagara abandoned him. The sixty thousand sons of Sagara followed the example of their brother Asamanjas. The path of virtue and piety being obstructed, in the world, by the sons of Sagara, || the gods repaired to the Muni ¶

---

gara and his descendants is told at length in the Rāmāyaṇa, First Book; and in the Mahābhārata, Vana Parvan, III., 106, et seq.; as well as in most of the Purāṇas.

† Or Panchajana: \*\* Brahma. ††

---

\* *Samādhi*, = *chittakāgrya*, the scholiast says.

† Insert "the Rishi having pronounced 'So be it'": तथेति च ऋषि-  
याभिहिते ।

‡ See Vol. II., pp. 26 and 73.

§ *Apavṛtta*.

|| सागरेरपध्वस्यजादिसन्ताने जनति ।

¶ Substituted for Rishi.

\*\* This is an epithet of Asamanjas, in the *Harivaṃśa*, ii. 302, et seq.

†† Asamanja: *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and *Linga-purāṇa*. *Asamanjasa*: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 14.

Kapila, who was a portion of Vishnu,\* free from fault, and endowed with all (true) wisdom. Having approached him with respect, they said: "O lord, what will become of the world, if these sons of Sagara are permitted to go on in the evil ways which they have learned from Asamanjas! Do thou, then, assume a visible form,† for the protection of the afflicted universe." "Be satisfied", replied the sage: "in a brief time, the sons of Sagara shall be, all, destroyed."

At that period, Sagara commenced the (performance of the solemn) sacrifice of a horse, who was guarded by his own sons: nevertheless, some one stole the animal, and carried it off into a chasm in the earth. Sagara commanded his sons to search for the steed; and they, tracing him by the impressions of his hoofs, followed his course, with perseverance, until, coming to the chasm where he had entered, they proceeded to enlarge it, and dug downwards, each, for a league.‡ Coming to Pátála, they beheld the horse wandering freely about; and, at no great distance from him, they saw the Rishi Kapila sitting, with his head declined in meditation,§ and illuminating the surrounding space with radiance as bright as the splendours of the autumnal sun shining in an unclouded sky.|| Exclaiming "This

\* Purneshottama, in the original.

† "Visible form" is to render *śarīra*, 'body'.

‡ वसुधातलमेवैको योजनं योजनमवनेष्टवान् ।

§ This specification does not appear in the original. See the next note.

|| भगवन्मपघर्णे श्रुत्वालेऽर्कमिव तेजोभिरनवरतमूर्ध्वमधश्चाशे-  
षा दिशश्चोन्नासयमानं कपिलं विमपञ्चन् । Commentary: अपघर्णे । अप-  
मत्तमेवे ।

is the villain who has maliciously interrupted our sacrifice, and stolen the horse: kill him! kill him!" they ran towards him, with uplifted weapons. The Muni slowly raised his eyes,\* and, for an instant, looked upon them; and they were reduced to ashes by the (sacred) flame that darted from his person.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata† has, for a Purāṇa, some curious remarks on this part of the story, flatly denying its truth:

न साधुवाद्गो मुनिर्कोपमर्षिता  
 नृपेक्षपुत्रा इति सत्त्वधामनि ।  
 कथं तमो रोषमयं विभावते  
 जगत्पवित्रात्मनि खे रजो भुवः ॥  
 यत्क्षेरिता साङ्ख्यमयी वृद्धे नौ-  
 र्यया मुमुक्षुसरति दुरात्मयम् ।  
 भवाक्षयं मुमुक्षुषं विपश्चितः  
 परात्मभूतस्य कथं पृथक्प्रतिः ॥

"The report is not true, that the sons of the king were scorched by the wrath of the sage. For how can the quality of darkness, made up of anger, exist in a world-purifying nature, consisting of the quality of goodness;—the dust of earth, as it were, in the sky? How should mental perturbation distract that sage, who was one with the Supreme, and who has promulgated that Sāṅkhya philosophy which is a strong vessel by which he who is desirous of liberation passes over the dangerous ocean of the world, by the path of death?"‡

\* The original, परिवर्तितलोचनेन, implies that he cast his eyes about.  
 † IX., VIII., 12, 13.

‡ Burnouf's more exact translation of this passage is as follows:

"Elle n'est pas vraie la tradition qui prétend que les fils du roi furent détruits par la colère du sage; comment en effet les Ténèbres que produit la colère eussent-elles pu exister chez un sage, dont la Bonté était le corps, et qui purifiait le monde? c'est comme si l'on voulait attribuer au ciel la poussière née de la terre.

"Comment eût-il pu croire à des distinctions [comme elles d'amour et



When Sagara learned that his sons whom he had sent in pursuit of the (sacrificial) steed had been destroyed by the might of the great Rishi Kapila, he despatched Amśumat, the son of Asamanjas, to effect the animal's recovery. The youth, proceeding by the (deep) path which the princes had dug, arrived where Kapila was, and, bowing respectfully,\* prayed† to him, (and so propitiated him), that the saint said: "Go, (my son), deliver the horse to your grandfather; and demand a boon. Thy grandson shall bring down the river of heaven‡ (on the earth)." Amśumat requested, as a boon, that his uncles§ who had perished through the sage's displeasure|| might, although unworthy of it, be raised to heaven, through his favour. "I have told you," replied Kapila, "that your grandson shall bring down upon earth the Ganges (of the gods); and, when her waters shall wash the bones and ashes of thy grand-

d'ennemi], ce sage identifié avec l'Esprit suprême, qui dirigea ici-bas le solide vaisseau de la doctrine Sāṅkhya, à l'aide duquel l'homme désireux de se sauver traverse le redoutable océan de l'existence, ce chemin de la mort?"

A tolerably full account of Kapila will be found in my edition of the *Sāṅkhya-sāra*, Preface, pp. 13—21. Several things, however, are to be corrected there; as the work was sent out, by the Asiatic Society of Bengal, without my authority, and while I was known to be still employed on what would have made ten or twelve pages of additional matter, including various readings of MSS. collated since I left India, besides minute indexes and numerous emendations. The copies of the *Dasa-rūpa* in circulation are similarly unamended and imperfect.

\* *Bhakti-namra*.

† *Tushtāva*, 'lauded'.

‡ "River of heaven" is for Gangā, the word in the Sanskrit.

§ Amśumat rather strangely calls them *pitrī*, 'fathers'. The scholiast explains that the term is used for *pitrīva*.

|| The original has ब्रह्मदण्डहताम्, "smitten by the punishment of a Brāhman."

father's sons,\* they shall be raised to Swarga. Such is the efficacy of the stream that flows from the toe of Vishnu, that it confers heaven upon all who bathe in it designedly, or who even become accidentally immersed in it: those, even, shall obtain Swarga, whose bones, skin, fibres, hair, or any other part, shall be left, after death, upon the earth which is contiguous to the Ganges." Having acknowledged, reverentially, the kindness of the sage, Amśumat returned to his grandfather, and delivered to him the horse.† Sagara, on recovering the steed, completed his sacrifice, and, in affectionate memory of his sons, denominated Ságara the chasm which they had dug.<sup>1</sup>‡

---

<sup>1</sup> Ságara is still the name of the ocean, and, especially, of the Bay of Bengal, at the mouth of the Ganges. On the shore of the island called by the same name, tradition places a Kapilásrama, or hermitage of Kapila, which is still the scene of an annual pilgrimage. Other legends assign a very different situation for the abode of the ascetic, or, the foot of the Himálaya, where the Ganges descends to the plains.§ There would be no incompatibility, however, in the two sites, could we imagine the tra-

---

\* "Thy grandfather's sons" is an expansion of the word for 'them'.

† खननादाय पितामह्यज्ञमाजगाम ।

‡ सागरं चात्मजप्रीत्या पुत्रत्वे कल्पयामास; "and, from love of his sons, he set up the ocean as a son."

Ságara, the word here used for 'ocean', is, in form, patronymic of Sagara. The commentator says: सागरं सगरसुतेः खननादधिष्ठितम् । अत एवात्मजप्रीत्या पुत्रत्वे कल्पयामास स्थापयामास । तस्मिन्पुत्रदुर्धि कृतवानित्यर्थः ।

§ In the *Padma-purāṇa*, Kapila is said to have dwelt in the village of Indraprastha.

The son of Amśumat was Dilīpa;<sup>1</sup> his son was Bhagīratha, who brought Gangā down to earth; whence she is called Bhāgīrathī.\* The son of Bhagīratha was Śruta;<sup>2</sup>† his son was Nābhāga;<sup>3</sup> his son was Ambarīsha; his son was Sindhudwīpa;‡ his son was Ayutāśwa;<sup>4</sup>§ his son was Rituparṇa,|| the friend¶ of Nala, skilled profoundly in dice.<sup>5</sup> The son of Rituparṇa was

dition referred to a period when the ocean washed, as it appears once to have done, the base of the Himālaya, and Saugor (Sāgara) was at Haridwāra.

<sup>1</sup> Or Khaṭwānga: Brahma and Hari Vamśa:\*\* but this is, apparently, an error. *Vide infra*, p. 311, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Matsya and Agni. Viśruta:†† Linga.

<sup>3</sup> Nābha:‡‡ Bhāgavata.

<sup>4</sup> Ayutāyus:§§ Vāyu, Linga, and Kūrma. Śrutāyus: Agni. Ayutājīit:|||| Brahma.

<sup>5</sup> खण्डद्वयः, 'knowing the heart of the dice.' The same epi-

\* The *Vāyu-purāṇa* hereupon gives the following quotation:

अथाप्युदाहरन्तीमौ श्लोकौ पौराणिका जनाः ।  
भगीरथस्तु तां गंगामानयामास कर्मभिः ।  
तस्मान्नागीरथी गंगा कथ्यते वंशवित्तमैः ॥

Two stanzas are here promised; but only one is cited.

† A single MS. has Suhotra.

‡ According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 16, he was son of Nābha; Ambarīsha being there omitted.

§ In two MSS. the name is Ayutāyus.

|| The *Harivaṃśa* has Rituparṇa, and gives the patronym Ārtaparṇa to Sudāsa.

¶ *Sahāya*.

\*\* *Śl.* 808. *Khaṭwānga* is given there as Dilīpa's surname. Khaṭwānga, as the name of a royal sage, appears in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, II., I., 13.

†† I find Śruta.

‡‡ Corrected from "Nābhīa".

§§ So, too, reads the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

|||| This is the reading of the *Harivaṃśa*, also.

Sarvakāma;¹\* his son was Sudāsa; his son was Sau-

thet, as well as that of 'friend of Nala,' is given him in the Vāyu, Bhāgavata, and Brahma Purāṇas, and in the Hari Vamśa, and leaves no doubt of their referring to the hero of the story told in the Mahābhārata. Nala, however, as we shall hereafter see, is some twenty generations later than Rītuparṇa, in the same family; and the Vāyu, therefore, thinks it necessary to observe, that two Nalas are noticed in the Purāṇas, and the one here adverted to is the son of Vīrasena:

नलो द्वाविति विख्यातो पुराणेषु दृढव्रती ।  
वीरसेनात्मजश्च यश्चेत्साकुमुजोदहः ॥

whilst the other belongs to the family of Ikshwāku. The same passage occurs in the Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa;† and the commentator‡ on the latter observes: निषधात्मजो नलो वीरसेनसुतात्मजादयः । 'Nala the son of Nishadha is different from Nala the son of Vīrasena.' It is, also, to be observed, that the Nala of the tale is king of Nishadha, and his friend Rītuparṇa is king of Ayodhyā. The Nala of the race of Ikshwāku is king of Ayodhyā; he is the son of Nishadha, however; and there is, evidently, some confusion between the two. We do not find Vīrasena, or his son, in any of the lists. *Vide infra*, p. 320, note 1.

¹ There is considerable variety in this part of the lists; but the Vayu and Bhāgavata agree with our text. The Matsya and others make Kalmāshapāda the son or grandson of Rītuparṇa,

\* Sārvaḥma: *Linga-purāṇa*.

† *Sl.* 831, 832:

नलो द्वावेव विख्यातो पुराणे भरतर्षभ ।  
वीरसेनात्मजश्च यश्चेत्साकुमुजोदहः ॥

We read, too, in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 24, 25:

नलो द्वावेव विख्यातो पुराणेषु दृढव्रती ।  
वीरसेनसुतात्मजो यश्चेत्साकुमुजोदहः ॥

‡ Nilakaṇṭha.

dása, named, also, Mitrasaha.<sup>1\*</sup>

and place Sarvakáma, or Sarvakarman, after him.† See further on.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu, Agni, Brahma, and Hari Vamśa read Amitrasaha, 'foe-enduring'; § but the commentator on our text explains it Mitra, a name of Vasishtha, Saha, 'able to bear' the imprecation of; || as in the following legend, which is similarly related in the Bhágavata. ¶ It is not detailed in the Váyu. A full account occurs

---

\* The *Bhágavata-purána*, IX., IX., 18, says that he was called Kalmáshanghri, also. This is a synonym of Kalmáshapáda, for which epithet *vide infra*, p. 308.

† In the *Harivamśa*, *śl.* 817, Sarvakarman appears as son of Mitrasaha. In the next two stanzas, the names of his successors are: Anarańya, Nighna, Anamitra (and Raghu, his brother), Duliduha, Dilípa.

‡ *Vide infra*, p. 313, note 1.

§ The first and fourth works named have—as has, also, the *Linga-purána*, Prior Section, LXVI., 27,—नास्त्रा मित्रसहः; the second and third, रात्रा मित्रसहः. The words of our text are सौदासो मित्रसहनामः; and here, but for the commentary, there is just as good reason as there is in the other instances, to infer that the name is Amitrasaha. The momentary indignation of Saudása against Vasishtha justifies but ill the supposition that the term *amitra*, 'enemy', was applied to the latter. The *Bhágavata-purána*, IX., IX., 18, in its चाङ्गमित्रसहं चं, reads Mitrasaha, unmistakably; and so does the *Mahábhárata*, *Ádi-parvan*, *śl.* 6720; *Átvaamedhika-parvan*, *śl.* 1690.

In Dr. Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary* there is, however, an article चमित्रसह, which word there points to our king, "also called Saudása: according to the *Váyu*-, *Agni*-, *Brahma-Pur.* and the *Harivamśa*; the *Vishnu-Pur.* calls him Mitrasaha." Were not these particulars taken from the note under annotation? Even a reference to so accessible a work as the *Harivamśa* should have suggested a doubt of there being such a name as Amitrasaha.

|| The commentator's words are: मित्रं वसिष्ठं प्रतिशत्रुं समर्चोऽपि सहते स्म। तेन मित्रसहनाम। This imports, that Mitrasaha was so called, because, though he had it in his power to retaliate, in kind, the curse of his friend (*mitra*), namely, Vasishtha, he forbore (*sahate sma*, from *sah*).

¶ IX., IX., 19—39.

The son of Sudāsa, having gone into the woods to hunt, fell in with a couple of tigers, by whom the forest had been cleared of the deer.\* The king slew one of these tigers with an arrow. At the moment of expiring, the form of the animal was changed, and it became that of a fiend† of fearful figure and hideous aspect.

---

in the Mahābhārata, Ādi Parvan, s. 176, but with many and important variations. Kalmāshapāda, whilst hunting, encountered Śakti,‡ the son of Vasishṭha, in the woods, and, on his refusing to make way, struck the sage with his whip. Śakti cursed the king to become a cannibal; and Viśwāmītra, who had a quarrel with Vasishṭha, seized the opportunity to direct a Rākshasa to take possession of the king, that he might become the instrument of destroying the family of the rival saint. Whilst thus influenced, Mitrasaha, a Brahman, applied to Kalmāshapāda for food; and the king commanded his cook to dress human flesh, and give it to the Brahman, who, knowing what it was, repeated the curse of Śakti, that the king should become a cannibal; which taking effect with double force, Kalmāshapāda began to eat men. One of his first victims was Śakti, whom he slew and ate, and then killed and devoured, under the secret impulse of Viśwāmītra's demon, all the other sons of Vasishṭha. Vasishṭha, however, liberated him from the Rākshasa who possessed him, and restored him to his natural character. The imprecation of the Brahman's wife, and its consequences, are told, in the Mahābhārata, as in the text; but the story of the water falling on his feet appears to have grown out of the etymology of his name, which might have referred to some disease of the lower extremities; the prince's designation being, at length, Mitrasaha Saudāsa Kalmāshapāda, or, 'Mitrasaha, son of Sudāsa, with the swelled feet.'

---

\* *Apamṛga.*

† *Rākshasa.*

‡ On the correct name, Śakti, *vide supra*, p. 35, note ††.

Its companion, threatening the prince with its vengeance, disappeared.

After some interval, Saudása celebrated a sacrifice, (which was conducted by Vasishtha). At the close of the rite, Vasishtha went out; when the Rákshasa, the fellow of the one that had been killed in the figure of a tiger, assumed the semblance of Vasishtha, and (came and) said (to the king): "Now that the sacrifice is ended, you must give me flesh to eat. Let it be cooked; and I will presently return." Having said this, he withdrew, and, transforming himself into the shape of the cook, dressed some human flesh, which he brought to the king, who, receiving it on a plate of gold, awaited the reappearance of Vasishtha. As soon as the Muni returned, the king offered to him the dish. Vasishtha, surprised at such want of propriety\* in the king, as his offering him meat to eat, considered what it should be that was so presented, and, by the efficacy of his meditations, discovered that it was human flesh. His mind being agitated with wrath, he denounced a curse upon the Raja, saying: "Inasmuch as you have insulted all such holy men† as we are, by giving me what is not to be eaten, your appetite shall, henceforth, be excited by similar food."

"It was yourself," replied the Raja to the (indignant) sage, "who commanded (this food to be prepared)." "By me!" exclaimed Vasishtha. "How could that have been?" And, again having recourse to meditation,‡

\* *Daukṣīlya.*

† *Tapaswin.*

‡ *Samādhi.*

he detected the whole truth. Foregoing, then, all displeasure towards the king,\* he said: "The food (to which I have sentenced you) shall not be your sustenance for ever: it shall (only) be so for twelve years." The king, who had taken up water in the palms of his hands, and was prepared to curse the Muni, now considered that Vasishtha was his spiritual guide,† and, being reminded,‡ by Madayanti, his queen, that it ill became him to denounce an imprecation upon a holy teacher who was the guardian divinity of his race,§ abandoned his intention. || Unwilling to cast the water upon the earth, lest it should wither up the grain,—for it was impregnated with his malediction,—and equally reluctant to throw it up into the air, lest it should blast the clouds, and dry up their contents, he threw it upon his own feet.¶ Scalded by the heat which the water had derived from his angry imprecation, the feet of the Raja became spotted black and white;\*\* and he, thence, obtained the name of Kalmásha-páda, or he with the spotted (kalmásha) feet (páda).††

\* अस्मानुग्रहं चकार ।

† In the original, this consideration is suggested by Madayanti.

‡ Prasáddita, 'appeased.'

§ कुलदेवताभूतमाचार्यम् ।

|| This, though implied, is not expressed in the Sanskrit.

¶ सस्त्रामुदरवार्यं तच्छापायु नोर्वां नाकाग्ने विषेप तेनैव स्वपादौ सिषेच । "That water for cursing he threw neither on the earth nor into the air, for sustenance of the grain or of the clouds; but he sprinkled his own feet with it."

\*\* This is borrowed from the scholiast, who says: कल्पापतां कृष्णपाण्डुताम् ।

†† तेन क्रोधश्रुतेनाश्रसा दग्धच्छायौ तत्पादौ कल्पापतामुपवती । ततश्च स कल्पापतादसंज्ञामवाप ।



In consequence of the curse of Vasishthā, the Raja became a cannibal\* every sixth watch of the day, † (for twelve years), and, in that state, wandered through the forests, and devoured multitudes of men. On one occasion, he beheld a holy person ‡ engaged in dalliance with his wife. As soon as they saw his terrific form, they were frightened, and endeavoured to escape; but the (regal) Rākshasa (overtook and) seized the husband. The wife of the Brahman, then, also desisted from flight, and earnestly entreated the savage § (to spare her lord), exclaiming: "Thou, Mitrasaha, art the pride || of the (royal) house of Ikshwāku,—not a (malignant) fiend. ¶ It is not in thy nature, who knowest the characters of women, to carry off and devour my husband."\*\* But all was in vain; and, regardless of her reiterated supplications, he ate the Brahman, as a tiger devours a deer. †† The Brahman's wife, furious with wrath, then addressed the Raja, and said: "Since you have barbarously disturbed the joys of a wedded pair, and killed my husband, your death shall be the conse-

\* राक्षसभावमुपेत ।

† Read "every sixth meal-time;" i. e., at the close of every third day. The original is षष्ठे काले, on which the comment is: षष्ठे षष्ठे काले तृतीयदिनान्ते ।

‡ Muni.

§ Bahu-sasta.

|| Tilaka.

¶ Rākshasa.

\*\* नाहंस्मि स्त्रीधर्मसुखाभिन्नो मन्त्रकृतार्थायामिमं मन्त्रार्तरमन्तुम् ।

Comment: स्त्रीधर्मो मैशुनं तत्सुखाभिन्नः ।

†† I find *pashu*.

quence of your associating with your queen."\* So saying, she entered the flames.

At the expiration of the period of his curse, Saudāsa returned home. Being reminded of the imprecation of the Brahmani, by his wife, Madayantī, he abstained from conjugal intercourse, and was, in consequence, childless; but, having solicited the interposition of Vasishtha, Madayantī became pregnant.† The child, however, was not born for seven years, when the queen, (becoming impatient), divided the womb with a (sharp) stone, and was thereby delivered. The child was, thence, called Āsmaka (from Āsman, 'a stone'). The son of Āsmaka was Mūlaka, who, when the warrior tribe was extirpated upon earth, was surrounded and concealed by a number of females;‡ whence he was denominated Nārikavacha (having women for armour).<sup>1</sup> The son of Mūlaka was Daśaratha; his son

<sup>1</sup> His name, Mūlaka, or 'the root', refers, also, to his being the stem whence the Kshatriya races again proceeded. § It may be doubted if the purport of his title Nārikavacha is accurately explained by the text. ||

\* यस्मादेवं मय्यतृप्तायां त्वयायं मत्पतिर्भक्षितस्त्वस्मात्त्वमत्यन्तमवल्लोपभोगप्रवृत्तौ प्रास्वसि ।

† Hereabouts the rendering is free.

‡ Rather, "surrounded and guarded by garmentless women:" स्त्रीभिर्विवस्त्राभिः परिवार्य रक्षितः । I find no other reading than this.

§ See the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 40, and Śrīdhara's supplementation thereof.

|| The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reports, as follows, on the origin of Mūlaka's epithet:

was Ilavila;\* his son was Viśwasaha;† his son was Khatwānga;‡ (called, also,) Dilīpa,<sup>1</sup> who, in a battle between the gods and the Asuras, being called, by the former, to their succour, killed (a number of) the latter. Having, thus, acquired the friendship of the deities in heaven, they desired him to demand a boon. He said to them: "If a boon is to be accepted by me, then tell me, as a favour, what is the duration of my life." "The length of your life is but an hour,"§ the gods replied. On which, Khatwānga, who was swift of motion,|| de-

---

<sup>1</sup> This prince is confounded with an earlier Dilīpa by the Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa. ¶

---

अथाप्युदाहरन्तीमं मूलकं वि नृपं प्रति ।  
 स हि रामभवाद्वाजा स्त्रीभिः परिवृतोऽवसत् ।  
 विवस्त्रस्त्रीणामिच्छन् नारीकवचमीश्वरः ॥

Paraśurāma is here intended, according to Śrīdhara, in his comment on the parallel passage in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—IX., IX., 40. Two verses, which, it may be conjectured, closely correspond, in a correct reading, to the stanza quoted in the preceding extract, appear in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 29.

\* Not one of my MSS. has this name. Four give Ilivila; others, Idavila and Ahavila. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads, in different MSS., Idavīda, Idīvidā, and Aīdivīda; the *Linga-purāṇa*, Ilavila; the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Aidavīda. Compare the variants noticed in p. 246, note \*, *supra*.

† The *Linga-purāṇa* interpolates Vīddhaśarman before Viśvasaha.

‡ This name is frequently and variously corrupted, especially into Katwānga and Khatwanga. It does not seem necessary to dwell on these depravations.

§ *Muhūrta*.

|| *Laghima-guṇa*, "endowed with lightness." *Laghiman* is "the faculty of assuming levity," illustrated by "rising along a sunbeam, to the solar orb." It must be equally easy to the adept to travel a ray downwards. See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 250.

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 303, note 1; p. 305, note †.

scended, in his easy-gliding chariot, to the world of mortals. Arrived there, he prayed, and said: "If my own soul has never been dearer to me than (the sacred) Brahman; if I have never deviated from (the discharge of) my duty; if I have never regarded gods, men, animals, vegetables, all created things,\* as different from the imperishable;† then may I, with unswerving step, attain to that divine being on whom holy sages meditate!" Having thus spoken, he was united with that supreme being,‡ who is Vāsudeva; with that elder§ of all the gods, who is abstract existence,|| and whose form cannot be described. Thus he obtained absorption, according to this stanza, which was repeated, formerly, by the seven Rishis: "Like unto Khatwāṅga will be no one upon earth, who, having come from heaven, and dwelt an hour amongst men, became united with the three worlds, by his liberality and knowledge of truth."<sup>1</sup> ¶

---

<sup>1</sup> The term for his obtaining final liberation is rather unusual; चयोऽभिसंहिता लोकाः, 'By whom the three worlds were affected,

---

\* *Vṛikshādika.*

† *Achryuta.*

‡ *Paramātmān.*

§ *Guru.*

|| *Sattā-mātrātmān.*

¶ खट्वाङ्गेन समो नान्यः कश्चिदुर्वी भविष्यति ।

येन स्वर्गादिहागम्य मुहूर्तं प्राप्य जीवितम् ।

चयोऽभिसंहिता लोका बुद्ध्या दागेन चैव हि ॥

Comment: मुहूर्तं जीवित प्राप्य ज्ञात्वा । बुद्ध्या वासुदेवः सर्वमिति ज्ञानेन । यद्वा न समर्पणं खण्डनमिति वा प्रविशायनमिति यावन्तेनाभिसंहिता विषयीकृतास्त्रयो लोकाः । विष्णौ प्रविशायिता इत्यर्थः । According to this, partially accepted, the last two lines may be ren-

The son of Khatwānga was Dīrghabáhu; his son was Raghu; his son was Aja; \* his son was Daśaratha.<sup>1</sup>

or beloved:† विषयीकृताः,‡ the three worlds being identified with their source, or the Supreme. The text says, of this stanza, व्युपते; and the Vāyu, citing§ it, says, इति श्रुतिः. || The legend is, therefore, from the Vedas.

\* The lists here differ very materially, as the following comparison will best show:

Vishnú.	Matsya. ¶	Rámáyāna.**
Kalmáshapáda	Kalmáshapáda.	Kalmáshapáda

dered: "by whom, arrived here *below* from paradise, having obtained an hour's *prolongation* of life, the three worlds were mastered through wisdom and self-surrender."

The scholiast puts much more of Vedántism into these verses than it is likely they were intended to convey.

Compare the *Harivamśa*, *sl.* 809. The ordinary reading, there, in the last line, is अगुसंधिताः.

\* The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., X., 1, has Raghu, Píthusravas, Aja.

† अभिसंहित can scarcely bear either of these meanings. Its most probable signification, here, is 'contemplate thoroughly'.

‡ This means 'experienced', i. e., recognized as vanity.'

§ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has only the last two verses, and does not call them a citation. It reads सखेन for दग्नेन.

|| The *Vāyu-purāṇa* uses this expression in connexion with something else:

दिक्षीपस्त्वस्व पुनोऽभूत्स्वङ्गाङ्गद इति श्रुतिः ।

Khatwāngada is, moreover, the form here presented.

¶ Whether the names particularized here, as in many other lists throughout this work, are correctly represented, or not, I do not pretend to pronounce. To this point I have already adverted; giving the reason why we must, at present, look with distrust, in most cases, upon any express or implied claim to punctual accuracy as regards Paurāṇik minutiae: see Vol. I., p. 153, note ‡. In annotating these volumes, all that, as a rule, I have undertaken to do, touching the numerous works referred to in the Translator's commentary, has been, to restrict myself to the most important and most accessible of them, and to collate these, in such manuscripts as are within my reach, and in the printed editions, with my best diligence.

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 40—43; *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*, CX., 29—34.

The god from whose navel the lotos springs became fourfold, as the four sons of Daśaratha,—Rāma, Laksh-

---

Vishnú.	Matsya.	Rámáyāna.
Aśmaka	Sarvakarman	Śankhaña *
Múlaka	Anaraña	Sudarśana
Daśaratha	Nighna	Agnivarña
Ilavila	Anamitra	Śighraga
Viśwasaha	Raghu	Maru
Dilípa	Dilípa	Prasúruka †
Dírhaháhu	Aja	Ambarisha
Raghu	Dírhaháhu	Nahusha
Aja	Ajapála	Yayāti ‡
Daśaratha	Daśaratha	Nábhaga
		Aja
		Daśaratha.

---

The Váyu, Bhágavata, § Kúrma, and Linga agree with our text, except in the reading of a few names: as, Śataratha, || for Daśaratha the first; Vairivira, for Ilavila; and Kṛitaśarman, Vṛiddhaśarman, or Vṛiddhakarman, for Viśwasaha. ¶ The Agni and Brahma and Hari Vamśa agree with the second series, with similar occasional exceptions; \*\* showing that the Purāṇas admit two series, differing in name, but agreeing in number. The Rámáyāna, however, differs from both, in a very extraordinary manner; and the variation is not limited to the cases specified; as it begins with Bhagíratha, as follows:

---

\* Corrected from "Śankana." The Bengal recension of the *Rámáyāna* has, in the *Ādi-kāṇḍa*, Śankhaña; in the *Ayodhyá-kāṇḍa*, Khanitra.

† For the Paurāṇik son of Maru, *vide infra*, p. 325, l. 6.

‡ Both the genuine *Rámáyāna* and the Bengal recension omit Yayāti in the *Ayodhyá-kāṇḍa*.

§ The readings of this Purāṇa I have detailed, as will have been seen.

|| So read the *Váyu-purāṇa* and the *Linga-purāṇa*.

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 311, note †.

\*\* All these, so far as the *Harivamśa* is concerned, have been specified in my annotations.

maña, Bharata, and Śatrughna,\*—for the protection† of the world. Rāma, whilst yet a boy, accompanied Viśwāmitra, to protect his sacrifice, and slew Tāḍakā. He afterwards killed Mārīcha with his resistless shafts;‡

---

Purāṇas.	Rāmāyaṇa. §
Bhagīratha	Bhagīratha
Śruta	Kakutstha
Nābhāga	Raghu
Ambarisha	Kalmāshapāda
Sindhudwīpa	
Ayutāswa ¶	
Āituparṇā	
Sarvakāma	
Sudāsa	
Kalmāshapāda	

---

The entire Paurāṇik series comprises twenty descents; and that of the Rāmāyaṇa, sixteen. Some of the last names of the poem

---

\* Insert 'as parts of himself,' चात्मशिन.

† *Sthiti*, 'stability'.

‡ यज्ञे च मारीचमिषुवाताहतं दूरं चिषेय । "And, at the sacrifice, he hurled to a distance Mārīcha, struck by the blast of his shaft."

We read, in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, XXX., 16—18:

इत्युक्त्वा वचनं रामश्चपि संधाय वेगवान् ।

मानवं परमोदारमस्त्रं परमभास्वरम् ।

चिषेय परमकुञ्जो मारीचोरसि राघवः ॥

स तेन परमास्त्रेण मानवेन समाहतः ।

संपूर्वेन योजनशतं क्षिप्तः सागरसंज्ञवे ॥

It appears, from this, that Mārīcha, struck, in the breast, by the weapon Mānava, discharged from Rāma's bow, was projected, by the impact, a hundred *yojanas*, into the sea.

The story of the death of Mārīcha, in the guise of a golden deer, at the hands of Rāma, is told in the same poem, *Aranya-kāṇḍa*, XLIV.

§ *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 39, 40; *Ayodhya-kāṇḍa*, CX., 28, 29.

|| 'Corrected from the impossible "Kakutstha."

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 303, notes 4, §, §§, and |||.

and Subáhu and others fell by his arms. He removed the guilt of Ahalyá, by merely looking upon her. In the palace of Janaka, he broke, with ease, the mighty bow of Maheśwara, and received the hand of Sítá, the daughter of the king, self-born from the earth,\* as the prize of his prowess.† He humbled the pride of Paraśuráma, who vaunted his triumphs over the race of Haihaya,‡ and his repeated slaughters of the Kshattriya tribe. Obedient to the commands of his father, and cherishing no regret for the loss of sovereignty,§ he entered the forest, accompanied by his brother (Lakshmaña) and by his wife, where he killed, in conflict, Virádha, Khara, Dúshaña,||and other Rákshasas, (the headless giant) Kabandha, and Bálin ¶ (the monkey monarch).

---

occur amongst the first of those of the Purāṇas; but there is an irreconcilable difference in much of the nomenclature. The Agni, under the particular account of the descent of Ráma, has, for his immediate predecessors, Raghu, Aja, Daśaratha, as in our text; and the author of the Raghu Vaṁśa agrees with the Purāṇas,\*\* from Dilípa downwards.

---

\* *Ayonijá.*

† *Vírya-bulká.*

‡ *अश्वमेधहयकुलकेतुभूतम् ।*

§ *अगणितराज्याभिजायः ।*

|| Corrected from "Kharadúshana". The original is *विराधखरदुष-खादीन्* । For Khara and Dúshaña, see the *Rámáyana*, I., I., 47; the *Raghuvamśa*, XII., 42, 46; the *Bhágavata-purāṇa*; IX., X., 9; &c. &c.

¶ *कबन्धबाहिनी* । Hence I have altered "Bali", which, however, is a form that occurs elsewhere.

\*\* With which of them, except the *Agni-purāṇa*? In the *Raghuvamśa*, VI., 74—78, we find Dilípa, Raghu, Aja, and then, in VIII., 29, Daśa-ratha.



Having built a bridge across the ocean,\* and destroyed the whole Rákshasa nation, he recovered (his bride,) Sítá, whom their ten-headed (king, Rávaṇa,) had carried off, and returned to Ayodhyá, with her, after she had been purified, by the fiery ordeal, from the soil contracted (by her captivity), and had been honoured by the assembled gods, (who bore witness to her virtue).<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This is an epitome of the Rámáyana, the heroic poem of Válmíki, on the subject of Ráma's exploits. A part of the Rámáyana was published, with a translation, by Messrs. Carey and Marshman, several years since; but a much more correct edition of the text of the two first books, with a Latin translation of the first and part of the second, have been more recently published by Professor Schlegel,—a work worthy of his illustrious name.† A summary of the story may be found in Sir William Jones's Works, Maurice's Hindustan, Moor's Pantheon, &c. It is, also, the subject of the Uttara Ráma Charitra, in the Hindu Theatre; in the introduction to which an outline of the whole is given. The story is, therefore, no doubt, sufficiently familiar, even to English readers. It seems to be founded on historical fact; and the traditions of the south of India uniformly ascribe its civilization,

---

\* बद्धा चाक्षोणिधिम् ।

† For Signor Gorresio's edition of the spurious *Rámáyana*, see Vol. II., p. 190, note \*. The genuine *Rámáyana*—which Professor Wilson does not seem to have known, save in Schlegel's composite edition of the first two books,—has been lithographed at Calcutta and Bombay. For some idea of the difference between the two, the reader is referred to the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., pp. 303—308, and to Dr. Muir's *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part IV., pp. 377—418. I have seen, in India, no less than seven different commentaries on the real *Rámáyana*; a copy of one of which, accompanying the text, was transcribed nearly five hundred years ago.

Bharata made himself master of the country of the Gandharvas, after destroying vast numbers of them;\* and Śatrughna, having killed the Rākshasa chief, Lavaña, the son of Madhu, took possession of his capital, Mathurá.† .

Having, thus, by their unequalled valour and might, rescued the whole world from the dominion of malignant fiends, Rāma, Lakshmaña, Bharata, and Śatrughna reascended to heaven, and were followed by those of the people of Kośala: who were fervently devoted to these incarnate portions of the supreme (Vishnú). §

Rāma (and his brothers) had (each,) two sons. Kuśa and Lava were the sons of Rāma; those of Lakshmaña were Angada and Chandraketu;|| the sons of Bharata

---

the subjugation or dispersion of its forest tribes of barbarians, and the settlement of civilized Hindus, to the conquest of Lanká by Rāma.

---

\* The original says that he destroyed thirty millions of terrible *gandharvas*: उद्यमन्वर्षकोटीसिद्धो जघान ।

† Rather, "founded Mathurá"; the Sanskrit being *nivṛtita*. Moreover, the original has nothing corresponding to "his capital".

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads:

माधवं सवर्णं हत्वा गत्वा मधुवनं च तत् ।

शत्रुघ्नेन पुरी तच्च मधुरा संनिवेशिता ॥

And the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* says, at IX., XI., 14:

शत्रुघ्नस्य मधोः पुत्रं सवर्णं नाम राक्षसम् ।

हत्वा मधुवनं चक्रे मधुरां नाम वै पुरीम् ॥

Three of my copies of the *Vishnú-purāṇa*, and two of the *Vāyu*, have Madhurá, instead of Mathurá. It is not altogether certain that Madhurá was not the original name, and even that heard by Hiouen Tshang.

‡ Strictly, "people of the city of Kośala," कोशसनगरजनपदाः ।

§ This sentence is very freely rendered.

|| A Chandraketu, prince of the city of Chakora, who was killed by an emissary of King Śúdraka, is mentioned in the *Harshacharita*. See my edition of the *Vásavadattá*, Preface, p. 53.

were Taksha\* and Pushkara;† and Subáhu and Śúrasena‡ were the sons of Śatrughna.

\* The Váyu specifies the countries or cities over which they reigned. Angada and Chitraketu§—as the Váyu terms the latter, —governed countries near the Himálaya, the capitals of which were Ángadí and Chandravaktrá.|| Taksha and Pushkara were sovereigns of Gandhára, residing at Takshaśilá¶ and Pushkarávatí.\*\* Subáhu and Śúrasena reigned at Mathurá; and, in the latter, we might be satisfied to find the Suraseni†† of Arrian, but that there is a subsequent origin, of perhaps greater authenticity, in the family of Yadu, as we shall hereafter see.‡‡ ‘Kúśa built Kúśasthali on the brow of the Vindhya, the capital of Kośalá; and Lava reigned at Śrávastí (*vide supra*, pp. 249, 263) in Uttara

\* Two MSS. have the elongated form, Takshaka.

† One of my MSS. has Pushkala; and so has the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*.

‡ All my MSS., and most of those of the *Váyu-puráṇa*, have Śúrasena. Śrutasena: *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, IX., XI., 13.

§ My MSS. have Chandraketu,—the reading of the *Raghuvamśa*, XV., 90, also. But Chitraketu is the name in the *Bhágavata-puráṇa*, IX., XI., 12.

|| हिमवत्पर्वताभ्यासे स्तीती जनपदौ तयोः ।

चक्रदस्ताकृदी या तु देशे कारपथे पुरी ॥

Ángadí is, here, located in Kárapatha; as I find the name spelled. In the line following this stanza, the country seems to be named, of which Chandraketu's Chandravaktrá was the capital; but, unfortunately, it is illegible in all my MSS.

The *Raghuvamśa*, XV., 90, places both the brothers in Kárapatha.

¶ A large number of useful references bearing on this city will be found in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth's *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, *sub voce*.

\*\* मन्धारविषये सिद्धे तयोः पुर्यौ महात्मनोः ।

तत्रस्थं दिक्षु विख्याता रम्या तत्रशिला पुरी ।

पुष्करस्यापि नीरस्य विख्यातं पुष्करावती ॥

Takshaśilá and Pushkarávatí have been identified with the *Taxila* of Ptolemy and the *Πευκελαιώτις* of Arrian. For the people of Gandhára, see Vol. II., p. 174, note 2.

†† See Vol. II., p. 186, note 2.

‡‡ In Chapter XI. of this Book.

The son of Kuśa was Atithi; his son was Nishadha; his son was Nala;<sup>1</sup> his son was Nabhas;\* his son was Puṇḍarīka; his son was Kshemadhanwan; his son was Devānīka; his son was Ahīnagu;<sup>2</sup>† his son was Pāri-

(northern) Kośala:’

कुशस्य कोशलाः राज्यं पुरी चापि कुशस्यसी ।

रम्या निवेशिता तेन विन्ध्यपर्वतसामुपु ॥

उत्तरकोशले राज्यं खवस्य च महात्मनः ।

आवसी लोकविख्याता कुशवंशं निबोधत ॥ §

The Raghu Varāṇsa|| describes Kuśa as returning from Kuśāvati to Ayodhyā, after his father’s death; but it seems not unlikely, that the extending power of the princes of the Doab, of the lunar family, compelled Rāma’s posterity to retire more to the west and south.

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata is the only Purāṇa that omits this name; as if the author had been induced to correct the reading, ¶ in order to avoid the necessity of recognizing two Nalas. *Vide supra*, p. 303, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Here, again, we have two distinct series of princes, inde-

\* Nabha, in a few MSS.

† Ruru has here been omitted by the Translator. One of my MSS. —that which, I believe, Professor Wilson generally, and all but exclusively, used,—here exhibits the mutilation सुतो वसस्य च. There is no Ruru, however, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

‡ Query, कोशले, in ‘Kośala’?

§ This extract is from a somewhat long quotation in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. In a verse a little before these, we are told that Rāma established a rule of ten thousand years:

दश वर्षसहस्राणि रामो राज्यमकारयत् ।

With this compare the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 37.

|| XVI., 25. From the same work, XV., 97, it appears on what ground the Translator identified one of the Kuśasthalis with Kuśāvati. See Vol. II., p. 172, note ‡.

¶ He reads—IX., XII., 1,—Nabha, in its stead:

कुशस्य चातिथिस्यैव पुण्डरीकस्युतो नमः ।

And Nabha’s son is Puṇḍarīka.

pátra;\* his son was Dala;<sup>1</sup>† his son was Chhala;<sup>2</sup>‡ his son was Uktha;<sup>3</sup>§ his son was Vajranábha; his son

pendently of variations of individual names. Instead of the list of the text, with which the Váyu and Bhágavata nearly, and the Brahma and Hari Vamśa indifferently, conform, we have, in the Matysa, Linga, Kúrma, and Agni, the following: Ahinagu, || Sahasráśwa (Sahásráya, or Sahasrabala), ¶ Chandrávaloka, Tárápida (or Tárádhiśa), Chandragiri, Bhánuratha (or Bhánumitra),\*\* and Śrutáyus, with whom the list ends, except in the Linga, which adds Báhula,†† killed by Abhimanyu: enumerating, therefore, from Devánika, but seven or eight princes, to the Great War, instead of twenty-three, as in the other series. The Raghu Vamśa gives much the same list as our text, ending with Agnivarña.‡‡

<sup>1</sup> Bala: Bhágavata. Nala: Hari Vamśa.

<sup>2</sup> Sthala: Bhágavata. Śala: §§ Váyu and Brahma. Śila: Raghu Vamśa. |||

<sup>3</sup> Omitted: Bhágavata. ¶¶

\* My MSS. leave it very dubious whether the name is Páripátra or Páriyátra. There are two mountain-ranges, one imaginary, and the other real, regarding which there is, likewise, uncertainty as to the name being Páripátra or Páriyátra. See Vol. II., p. 123, note ‡; p. 128, notes, l. 8.

† A single MS. gives Bala.

‡ I find Śala in one MS.

§ The *Harivamśa*, *śl.* 825, 826, has Ahinagu, Sudhanwan, Śala, Uktha. For Śala I find Nala and Gaya, in some MSS.

|| In some MSS. of the *Linga-purāṇa* the name is Ahinara.

¶ Here, I believe, the *Linga-purāṇa* inserts Śubha.

\*\* Bhánuchandra seems to be the reading of the *Linga-purāṇa*.

†† I find Bñihadbala.

‡‡ *Vide infra*, p. 324, note ||.

§§ My MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa* have Bala.

||| Not so. The *Raghuvamśa*, XVIII., 17, make Śila son of Páriyátra, and mentions no one corresponding to Chhala.

¶¶ The *Raghuvamśa* has Unnábha, son of Śila. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to exhibit Auka.

was Śankhanábha;<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Dhyushitáśwa;<sup>2†</sup> his

<sup>1</sup> Śankha: Brahma.‡ Khagaña: Bhágavata.§

<sup>2</sup> Dúshitáśwa: Váyu. Adhyúshitáśwa:|| Brahma. Vidhṛiti: Bhágavata.

\* One MS. gives Śankhaña; one, Ohhampaña.

† By the kindness of Professor Monier Williams, of Oxford, I am enabled to state, that one of the MSS. of the text of the *Vishnú-purāna* which formerly belonged to Professor Wilson has तस्माद्ध्युषिताश्च:, i. e., Adhyushitáśwa; another, ततो ध्युषिताश्च:, the same name, or else Dhyushitáśwa; another, ततो व्युत्थिताश्च:, i. e., Vyutthitáśwa, or Avyutthitáśwa. Again, all Professor Wilson's and all my own MSS. that contain both the text and the commentary here read ततो व्युत्थिताश्च:; while my other MSS.—except one which has ततो व्युषिताश्च:,—give तस्माद्ध्युषिताश्च: or शङ्खयाध्युषिताश्च:, i. e., Dhyushitáśwa and Vyushitáśwa. Dhyushitáśwa is the name—corrupted, in some copies, into Vyushitáśwa,—in the *Váyu-purāna*, where we read:

शङ्खयास्य सुतो विद्वानध्युषिताश्च इति श्रुतः ।

ध्युषिताश्चसुतश्चापि राजा विश्वसहः क्षत्र ॥

In the *Harivamśa*, likewise, the true reading, as shown by my best MSS., is, undoubtedly, Dhyushitáśwa. This has been corrupted into Vyushitáśwa, and regularized into Adhyushitáśwa. Vyutthitáśwa looks like a heedless and uninquiring venture at emendation, on the part of the commentator on the *Vishnú-purāna*.

Conclusively, we find, in the *Raghuvamśa*, XVIII., 23:

तस्मावसाने हरिदश्चधामा

पित्र्यं प्रपदे पदमश्विरूपः ।

वेसातटेषुषितसैनिकाश्च

पुराविदो यं ध्युषिताश्चमाहुः ॥

“On his [Śankhaña's] death, one endued with the effulgence of the sun, handsome as the Aświns, and whom those conversant with antiquity call Dhyushitáśwa,—the horses of his troops having encamped on the declivity of the sea-shore,—acceded to the dignity of his fathers.”

My best MSS. of the *Raghuvamśa* read as above; and the best MSS. of Mallinātha's commentary that I have access to give, likewise, Dhyushitáśwa. Moreover, from a grammatical point of view, Kālidāsa's very etymology, and, similarly, Mallinātha's gloss, unquestionably favour this name, as against Vyushitáśwa.

The strange, but not unjustifiable, name Dhyushitáśwa would naturally

son was Viśwasaha;<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Hiraṇyanābha,† who was a pupil of the mighty Yogin Jaimini, and communicated the knowledge of spiritual exercises: to Yājñavalkya.<sup>2</sup> The son of this saintly king was

<sup>1</sup> Omitted: Brahma and Bhāgavata.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Brahma and Hari Vamśa; but included, with similar particulars, by the Vāyu, § Bhāgavata, and Raghu Vamśa.

provoke, to a careless scholar, a surmise of mistake; and the close resemblance between व्यु and वु, hastily written, may have seemed to support such a surmise. We thus see how, in all likelihood, Vyushitāśwa originated.

"Abhyutthitāśwa", the name in the former edition of the work under annotation, is in none of the MSS. that were used by Professor Wilson; and I have dismissed it for Dhyushitāśwa. It may be added, that Vyutthitāśwa is the name in the translation of the *Viśṇu-purāṇa* that was prepared for the Professor in Bengal.

Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth, in their *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, referring to Professor Lassen,—who confessedly copies from Professor Wilson,—insert Adhyushitāśwa, an unavowed alteration of Adhyūshitāśwa.

Turning, for comparison, to the *Sanskrit Dictionary* of Dr. Goldstücker, we here find that very critical work not only scrupulously holding with Professor Wilson, even to his long and short vowels, but doing so in silence, and, manifestly, without any care of verification. Abhyutthitāśwa is registered; and equally is Adhyūshitāśwa,—a name I have found nowhere,—for the constituent participle of which, rendered "very diseased," recourse is had to the verb *ūsh*, *ægrotare*, a mere invention, there is reason to suspect, of the grammarians. At the same time, Kālidāsa's word should seem to have escaped the observation of the learned and researchful lexicographer.

‡ And *Harivamśa*. § Sankhaṇa: *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Raghuvamśa*.

|| On this and "Dūshitāśwa", see note † in the preceding page and the present.

\* And so reads the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† In one view, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 2, 3, has, instead of Ahinaga, &c., Aniha, Pāriyātra, Bala, Sthala, Vajranābha, Khagaṇa, Viddhriti, Hiraṇyanābha.

‡ The expression "knowledge of spiritual exercises" is to render *yoga*.

§ Premising the name of Viśwasaha, the *Vāyu-purāṇa* states:

हिरण्यनाभः वीम्वसो वसिष्ठस्तुतोऽभवत् ।

Hiraṇyanābha seems, thus, to be called the Vasishtha of Kōśala. But

Pushya;\* his son was Dhruvasandhi;<sup>1</sup> his son was

See, also, p. 58, *supra*, where Kauśalya is, likewise, given as the synonym of Hiraṇyanābha;† being, as the commentator observes, his Viśeṣaṇam, his epithet or attribute,—born in, or king of, Kośala. The Vāyu, accordingly, terms him हिरण्यनाभः कौशल्यः; but, in the Bhāgavata,‡ the epithet Kauśalya is referred, by the commentator,§ to Yājñavalkya, the pupil of Hiraṇyanābha: यतः सकाशात्कौशल्यो याज्ञवल्क्यश्च विरध्यात् योगमध्यगात् । The author of the Raghu Vaṁśa, not understanding the meaning of the term, has converted Kauśalya into the son of Hiraṇyanābha. || Raghu Vaṁśa, XVIII., 27. The Bhāgavata, like our text, calls the prince the pupil of Jaimini; the Vāyu, more correctly, वैमिनेः पीतल्यः शिष्यः, 'the pupil of the sage's grandson'. There seems to be, however, something unusual in the account given of the relation, borne by the individuals named, to each other. As a pupil of Jaimini, Hiraṇyanābha is a teacher of the Sāma-veda (*vide supra*, p. 58); but Yājñavalkya is the teacher of the Vāja-saneyi branch of the Yajus (*vide supra*, p. 57). Neither of them

some MSS. have Kauśilya, not Kauśalya. *Vide supra*, p. 58, note †.

Then follows the stanza:

पीतल्यः वैमिनेः शिष्यः स्मृतः सर्वेषु शर्मसु ।

शतानि संहितानां तु पञ्च योऽधीतवांसतः ॥

Here, as before, Hiraṇyanābha is associated with five hundred *Saṁhitās*.

\* In the *Harivamśa*, śl. 827, 828, we find Dhyushitāśwa, and then Pushya.

† Corrected from "Hiraṇyagarbha", a mere slip of the pen.

‡ IX., XII., 4:

शिष्यः कौशल्यश्च ध्यात्वा याज्ञवल्क्योऽध्यगायतः ।

योगं महोदयमृषिर्हृदययन्त्रिभेदनम् ॥

"C'est de ce maître que le Richi Yājñavalkya, qui était né dans le Kôçala, apprit le Yôga de l'Esprit suprême, ce Yôga qui donne des facultés si puissantes, et qui tranche le lien du cœur."

§ Śrīdhara.

|| The *Raghuvaṁśa*, proceeding, makes Kauśalya father of Brahmishtha; him, father of Putra; and him, father of Pushya.



Sudarsana; his son was Agnivarña; his son was Śīghra; his son was Maru,<sup>2</sup> who, through the power of devotion (Yoga), is still living in the village called Kalāpa,\* and, in a future age, will be the restorer of the Kshattriya race in the solar dynasty.† Maru had a son named Prasusruta; his son was Susandhi;‡ his son was Amarsha;§ his son was Mahaswat;¶ his son was Viśrutavat;†† and his son was Brīhadbala,‡‡ who was killed, in the

---

is specified, by Mr. Colebrooke, amongst the authorities of the Pātanjala or Yoga philosophy; nor does either appear as a disciple of Jaimini, in his character of founder of the Mīmāṃsā school. Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. I. \*\*

<sup>1</sup> Arthasiddhi: Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Varṇa.

<sup>2</sup> Maruta: Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Varṇa. These authorities†† omit the succeeding four names.

<sup>3</sup> Sahaswat: Vāyu.

<sup>4</sup> Viśwasāhwan:‡‡ Bhāgavata.

---

\* The *Harivamśa* has Kalāpadwipa; some MSS. reading Kāliyadwipa. For the situation of the village of Kalāpa, *vide supra*, p. 197, note ||.

† आगामियुगे सूर्यवंशचक्रप्रवर्तयिता भविष्यति। The *Vāyu-purāṇa* seems to declare, that he will reestablish the Kshattras in the nineteenth coming *yuga*:

एकोनविंशप्रयुगे चक्रप्रवर्तकः प्रभुः ।

Some MSS. read एकोनविंशः, 'twenty-ninth.'

‡ All my MSS. but two—showing Susandhi,—have Sugavi. Sandhi is the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 7. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has Susandhi, distinctly.

§ Amarshaṇa: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

|| One MS. has Viśwavāha.

¶ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 7, 8, names Viśwasāhwan, Pra-senajit, Takshaka, Brīhadbala.

\*\* Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 230—236, 296.

†† *Harivamśa*, śl. 829, 830.

‡‡ Corrected from "Viśwasaha."

Great War,\* by Abhimanyu, the son of Arjuna. † These are the most distinguished princes in the family of Ikshwáku. Whoever listens to the account of them will be purified from all his sins.<sup>1</sup>‡

---

<sup>1</sup> The list closes here; as the author of the Purāṇas, Vyāsa, is contemporary with the Great War. The line of Ikshwáku is resumed, prophetically, in the twenty-second chapter.

---

\* *Bhārata-yuddha*.

† The former edition had "Anjuna", by error of the press.

‡ एते इक्ष्वाकुभूपालाः प्राधान्येन मयोदिताः ।  
एतेषां चरितं शृण्वन्सर्वपापैः प्रमुच्यते ॥

---

## CHAPTER V.

Kings of Mithilá. Legend of Nimi, the son of Ikshwáku. Birth of Janaka. Sacrifice of Síradhwaia. Origin of Sítá. Descendants of Kuśadhwaia. Kṛiti the last of the Maithila princes.

THE son of Ikshwáku, who was named Nimi,<sup>1</sup> instituted a sacrifice that was to endure for a thousand years, and applied to Vasishtha to offer the oblations.\* Vasishtha, in answer, said, that he had been preengaged, by Indra, for five hundred years, but that, if the Raja would wait for some time, he would come and officiate as superintending priest.† The king made no answer; and Vasishtha went away, supposing that he had assented.‡ When the sage had completed the performance of the ceremonies he had conducted for Indra, he returned, with all speed, to Nimi, purposing to render him the like office. When he arrived, however, and found that Nimi had retained Gautama and other priests to minister at his sacrifice, he was much displeased, and pronounced upon the king, who was then asleep, a curse, to this effect, that, since he had not intimated his intention, but transferred to Gautama the duty he had first entrusted to himself, Vasishtha, Nimi

---

<sup>1</sup> None of the authorities, except the Váyu and Bhágavata, contain the series of kings noticed in this chapter.

---

\* "Chose Vasishtha as the *hotri*," literally.

† *Ráurwig*.

‡ Here the scholiast quotes a proverb, **मीनं संमतिवचनम्**, which may be translated, almost word for word, "Silence implies consent."

should, thenceforth, cease to exist in a corporeal form. When Nimi woke, and knew what had happened, he, in return, denounced, as an imprecation upon his unjust preceptor, that he, also, should lose his bodily existence, as the punishment of uttering a curse upon him, without previously communicating with him. Nimi then abandoned his bodily condition. The spirit of Vasishtha, also, leaving his body, was united with the spirits of Mitra and Varuṇa, for a season, until, through their passion for the nymph Urvaśī, the sage was born again, in a different shape.\* The corpse of Nimi was preserved from decay, by being embalmed with fragrant oils and resins; and it remained as entire as if it were immortal.<sup>1</sup>† When the sacrifice was concluded,

---

\* This shows that the Hindus were not unacquainted with the Egyptian art of embalming dead bodies. In the *Kāśī Khaṇḍa*, s. 30, an account is given of a Brahman who carries his mother's bones, or, rather, her corpse, from Setubandha (or Rāmeśwara) to Kāśī. For this purpose, he first washes it with the five excretions‡ of a cow, and the five pure fluids, (or, milk, curds, ghee, honey, and sugar).§ He then embalms it with Yakshakardama ||

---

\* For a more literal rendering of this sentence, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 73, 74. The notes in the latter page may, also, be consulted to advantage.

† निमिरपि तच्छरीरमतिमनोहरतैलगन्धादिभिर्हृषसंस्क्रियमायं नैव क्लेदादिकं दोषमवाप । सखी मृतमिव तस्मै । The whole of this paragraph would admit of being much more closely Englished.

‡ They can hardly be generalized as "excretions". For particulars, see note \*\* to p. 193, *supra*.

§ So says Raghunandana, in the *Jyotistattwa*.

|| According to Colebrooke, in his edition of the *Amara-kośa*, it consists of "camphor, agallochum, musk, and bdellium (or else the three first, with saffron and sandal-wood), in equal proportions."

the priests applied to the gods, who had come to receive their portions, that they would confer a blessing upon the author of the sacrifice. The gods were willing to restore him to bodily life; but Nimi declined its acceptance, saying: "O deities, who are the alleviators of all worldly suffering, there is not, in the world, a deeper cause of distress than the separation of soul and body. It is, therefore, my wish to dwell in the eyes of all beings, but never more to resume a corporeal shape." To this desire the gods assented; and Nimi was placed, by them, in the eyes of all living creatures; in consequence of which, their eyelids are ever opening and shutting.\*

---

(a composition of agallochum, camphor, musk, saffron, sandal, and a resin called Kakkola), and envelopes it, severally, with Netra vastra (flowered muslin), Pattāmbara (silk), Surasa vastra (coarse cotton), Mánjishthavásas† (cloth dyed with madder), and Nepála Kambala (Nepal blanketing). He then covers it with pure clay, and puts the whole into a coffin of copper (Támra saṃputāka).‡ These practices are not only unknown, but would be thought impure, in the present day.

---

\* ततो भूतान्मुखेन निमेषं चक्षुः । This legend would connect the word *nimisha*, 'wink', with the name of Nimi.

† Corrected from "Mánjishtha", which means only "dyed with madder".

‡ धनंजयोऽपि धर्मात्मा मातृभक्तिपरायणः ।  
 आदायास्त्रीन्वथो मातुर्गंगामार्गस्थितोऽभवत् ॥  
 पञ्चगव्येन संस्नाप्य ततः पञ्चामृतेन वै ।  
 यच्च कर्दमलेपेन लिप्त्वा पुष्पैः प्रपूज्य च ॥  
 आवेष्ट्य नेत्रवस्त्रेण ततो माञ्जिष्ठवाससा ।  
 नेपालकम्बलेनाथ मृदा चाथ विशुद्धया ।  
 ताम्रसंयुक्ते कृत्वा मातुरङ्गाख्यो वशिष्ठ ॥

In the text of my MS., *pattāmbara* and *surasavastra* do not appear; but the latter is given as a gloss on *netravastra*.

As Nimi left no successor, the Munis, apprehensive of the consequences of the earth being without a ruler, agitated the body of the prince,\* and produced, from it, a prince, who was called Janaka, from being born without a progenitor.† In consequence of his father being without a body (videha), he was termed, also, Vaideha (the son of the bodiless); and (he, further, received the name of) Mithi, from (having been produced by) agitation (mathana).<sup>1</sup> The son of Janaka was Udā-

<sup>1</sup> These legends are intended to explain, and were, probably, suggested by, the terms Videha‡ and Mithilā, applied to the country upon the Gunduk and Coosy§ rivers, the modern Tirhoot. The Rāmāyaṇa|| places a prince named Mithi between Nimi and

\* अपुचस्व तस्मै भुभुजः शरीरमरावकभीरवक्षी मुनयोऽरक्षां ममन्वुः।

All my MSS. have अरक्षा, by which we are to understand the nether piece of timber used to produce fire, by attrition, at sacrifices,—the *arañi* containing a socket, into which the king's body was introduced, by way of upper *arañi*. On the reading अरक्षा, things would be reversed, and a socket for the upper *arañi* would be furnished in the royal corpse.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* says:

तस्मै पुत्रो मिथिर्नाम जनितः पर्वभिस्त्रिभिः।

अरक्षां मध्यमानायां प्रादुर्भूतो महायशः।

नाम्ना मिथिरिति ख्यातो जननाञ्जनकोऽभवत् ॥

A very complete dissertation on the *arañi* will be found in Dr. Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

† तच्च च कुमारो अक्षे । जननाञ्जनकसंज्ञां चासाववाप । It was by reason of the peculiar way in which he was engendered, that he was called Janaka.

The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XIII., 13, says:

अञ्जना जनकः सोऽभूद्विदेहसु विदेहजः।

“On l'appela Djanaka à cause de la manière dont il était né”, etc.

‡ Corrected from “Vaideha”. See Vol. II., p. 165.

§ For these two rivers, see Vol. II., p. 146, note 3.

|| *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 4.

vasu;\* his son was Nandivardhana; his son was Suketu;† his son was Devaráta; his son was Brīhaduktha;‡ his son was Mahāvīrya;§ his son was Satyadhṛiti;|| his son was Dhṛishtaketu; his son was Haryaśwa; his son was Maru; his son was Pratibandhaka;¶ his son was Kṛitaratha;\*\* his son was Kṛita;†† his son was Vi-

Janaka, whence comes the name Mithilá. In other respects, the list of kings of Mithilá agrees, except in a few names. Janaka, the successor of Nimi, is different from Janaka who is celebrated as the father of Sítá. One of them—which, does not appear,—is, also, renowned as a philosopher, and patron of philosophical teachers. Mahábhārata, Moksha Dharma. According to the Váyu Purāṇa, Nimi founded a city called Jayanta, near the Áśrama of Gautama.‡‡ The remains of a city called Janakpur, on the northern skirts of the district, are supposed to indicate the site of a city founded by one of the princes so named.

\* Two of my MSS. have Udávasu.

† The majority of my MSS. have Swaketu. But Suketu is the accepted reading, as in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXXI, 5, 6; &c. &c.

‡ Brīhadratha: *Rāmāyaṇa*.

§ Mahāvira: *Rāmāyaṇa*.

|| Two MSS. give Sudhṛiti, the reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Váyu-purāṇa*. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* exhibits Sudhṛiti and Sudhṛit in one and the same stanza.

¶ In one copy I find Pratika. Pratindhaka is read in the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Váyu-purāṇa*, and is, almost certainly, the correct name. Pratipaka is the *Bhāgavata*'s ordinary corruption. The Bengal *Rāmāyaṇa* has, according to Signor Gorresio, Prasiddhaka.

\*\* One MS. has Kṛitiratha; another, Śrutiratha. Kirttiratha is the reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Váyu-purāṇa*. The Bengal *Rāmāyaṇa* has Kṛittiratha, in Signor Gorresio's edition.

†† I find Kṛiti. The *Rāmāyaṇa*, the *Váyu-purāṇa*, and the *Bhāgavata* have Devamidha.

‡‡ योऽसौ निवेशयामास पुरं देवपुरोपमम् ।

अथकामिति विज्ञातं नीतमस्त्राग्रमाभितः ॥

budha;\* his son was Mahādhṛiti;† his son was Kṛitirāta;‡ his son was Mahāroman;§ his son was Suvarṇaroman;|| his son was Hraswaroman; his son was Śīradhwaja.

Śīradhwaja ploughing the ground, to prepare it for a sacrifice (which he instituted), in order to obtain progeny, there sprang up, in the furrow,¶ a damsel, who became his daughter, Sītā.<sup>1\*\*</sup> The brother of Śīradhwaja

<sup>1</sup> This identifies Śīradhwaja with the second Janaka, the father-in-law of Rāma. The story of Sītā's birth, or, rather, discovery, is narrated in the Āraṇya Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata, and in the Vāyu, Brahma Vaivarta, Kālikā, and other Purāṇas.

\* Viśruta is the name in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* shows both this and Dhṛiti. One of them is, perhaps, for the sake of metre. *Vide infra*, p. 335, note †. The *Rāmāyaṇa* seems to have Mahidhraka, corrupted, in some copies, into Mahāndhraka; while the Bengal recension has Andhaka.

‡ Kraturāta occurs in one MS. Kirttirāta: *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

§ The inferior character of the Bengal recension of the *Rāmāyaṇa* is evidenced by the fact that it here reads, at variance with all authority, Kṛitiroman.

|| A single copy has Swarnaroman, the synonymous reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and of the *Bhāgavata*.

¶ *Sire*, 'on his ploughshare'; for which the word for 'plough' seems to be here used by synecdoche. In the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., 13, 18, we read as follows:

सीता सीरायतो जाता तस्मात्सीरध्वजः स्यूतः ।

\*\* The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, having named Śīradhwaja, says:

उन्निम्ना व्रषतो येन सीता राज्ञा यशस्विनी ।

Śāmsapāyana interrupts with questions, which the other interlocutor, Sūta, answers as follows:

अपिचेने व्रषमाणे अश्वमेधे महात्मनः ।

विधिना सुप्रयुक्तेन तस्मात्सानुसमुत्पिता ॥



was Kuśadhwaḥ, who was king of Kāśī:<sup>1\*</sup> he† had a son, also, named Bhānumat.<sup>2</sup> The son of Bhānumat was Śatadyumna;‡ his son was Śuchi;§ his son was Ūrvavāha;|| his son was Satyadhwaḥ;¶ his son was

<sup>1</sup> The Rāmāyaṇa\*\* says, 'of Sāṅkāśyá',†† which is, no doubt, the correct reading.‡‡ Fa Hian found the kingdom of Sang-kia-shi in the Doab, about Mainpooree. §§ Account of the Foe-kúe-ki. || The Bhāgavata makes Kuśadhwaḥ the son of Śiradhwaḥ. ¶¶

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata differs from our authority, here, considerably, by inserting several princes between Kuśadhwaḥ and Bhānumat; or, Dharmadhwaḥ, who has two sons, Kṛitadhwaḥ and Khāṇḍikya: the former is the father of Keśidhwaḥ; the latter, of Bhānumat.\*\*\* See the last Book of the Viṣṇu.

\* The text of all my MSS. but two has साङ्काश्याधिपतिः, 'king of Sāṅkāśyá'. And herewith agrees the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. See the quotation in note \*\*\*, below. I have corrected the Translator's "Sankaśya". ●

† Namely, Śiradhwaḥ.

‡ One MS. gives Sudyumna. Pradyumna: *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

§ In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* the name is Muni.

|| Or the equivalent Ūrvavāha, in some copies; as in the *Vāyu*. One MS. has Ūrja.

¶ Variants, each in one MS.: Śatadhwaḥ and Bharadwāja.

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXXI., 19. Just before, the *Rāmāyaṇa* states that Kuśadhwaḥ conquered Sāṅkāśyá from Sudhanwan.

†† And so reads the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. See note \*\*\*, below.

‡‡ See the note next following.

§§ For Sāṅkāśyá, its site, &c., see the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1865, Part I., pp. 195—203.

||| See the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. V., p. 121.

¶¶ See the next note.

\*\*\* This requires correcting. According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XIII., 19—21, Śiradhwaḥ begot Kuśadhwaḥ; he, Dharmadhwaḥ; he, Kṛitadhwaḥ and Mitadhwaḥ; Kṛitadhwaḥ, Keśidhwaḥ; Mitadhwaḥ, Khāṇḍikya; Keśidhwaḥ, Bhānumat.

But the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* has the support of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, with regard to the relationship between Śiradhwaḥ, Kuśadhwaḥ, and Bhānumat:

सीरध्ववानुवातसु भानुमानाम मेधिलः ।

आता कुशध्ववसस साङ्काश्याधिपतिर्नृपः ॥

Kuṇi;<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Anjana;† his son was Ritujit;‡ his son was Arishtānemi;<sup>§</sup> his son was Śrutāyus;§ his son was Supārśwa;|| his son was Sanjaya;<sup>¶</sup> his son was Kshemāri;<sup>¶¶</sup> his son was Anenas;<sup>¶¶¶</sup> his son was Mīnaratha;<sup>¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Satyaratha; his son was Sātyarathi;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Upagu;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Śruta;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Śāsṃwata;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Sudhanwan;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Subhāsa;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was Suśruta;<sup>¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶¶</sup> his son was

<sup>1</sup> Śakuni; and the last of the series, according to the Vāyu. |||

<sup>2</sup> Between this prince and Śuchi the series of the Bhāgavata is: Sanadhwa, Ūrdhwaketu, Aja, Purajit. ¶¶ The following variations are from the same authority.

<sup>3</sup> Chitraratha.

<sup>4</sup> Kshemādhi. \*\*\*

<sup>5</sup> Omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Samaratha.

<sup>7</sup> Omitted.

<sup>8</sup> Upaguru.

<sup>9</sup> Upagupta.

<sup>10</sup> Vaswananta.

<sup>11</sup> Yuyudhan, ††† Subhāshana, Śruta.

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa has Śakuni; and then follow Swāgata, Suvarchas, Sutoya, Suśruta, Jaya, &c.

† In one copy, Arjuna.

‡ Kratujit, in two MSS.; Kuntijit, in one.

§ A single MS. gives Śatāyus.

|| Supārśwaka, the longer form, in the Bhāgavata-purāṇa.

¶ One MS. has Kshemādhi; another has Kshemavat, followed by Vāramatha, after whom comes Sātyarathi.

¶¶ One copy has Mānaratha. Also see the last note.

¶¶¶ In one MS. the name is Upagupta. In another MS., which I purchased at Ajmere, occur Upagu, Upagupta, Upayuta, Swāga (Swāgata?), Suvarchas, Supārśwa, Sustuta, Jaya, &c. Compare note \*, above.

¶¶¶ Vasuvarchas, in one copy.

§§ One MS. gives Subhāvya.

||| See note \*, above.

¶¶¶ Corrected from "Purujit".

\*\*\* Corrected from "Kshemadhi".

††† Corrected from "Yuyudhāna".

Jaya; his son was Vijaya; his son was Rīta;\* his son was Sunaya;<sup>1</sup> his son was Vītahavya; his son was Dhṛiti;† his son was Bahulās̥wa; his son was Kṛiti,‡ with whom terminated the family of Janaka. These are the kings of Mithilā, who, for the most part, § will be<sup>2</sup> proficient in spiritual knowledge.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Śunaka.

<sup>2</sup> चात्तुविवाश्रयिणी\* भविष्यन्ति || is the reading of all the copies; but why the future verb, 'will be', is used does not appear.

<sup>3</sup> Descendants of two of the other sons of the Manu are noticed in the Bhāgavata. From Nṛiga, it is said, proceeded Sumati, Bhūtajyotis, Vasu, Pratika, Oghavat, and his sister Oghavati, married to Sudarśana. ¶ The Linga\*\* gives three sons to Nṛiga,—Vṛisha, Dhṛishṭaka, and Rañadhṛishṭa, †† and alludes to a legend of his having been changed to a lizard, by the curse of a Brahman. Narishyanta's descendants‡‡ were Chitrasena, Daksha, Madhwat, §§ Pūrva, Indrasena, Vītihoṭra, Satyaśravas, Uruśravas,

\* Kṛita seems to be the name in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* seems to place, here, Manodhṛiti, whom it forthwith calls Dhṛiti. Perhaps the first name is a lengthening of the second, to fill out the line. *Vide supra*, p. 332, note †. One of my MSS. of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*, which I procured from Arrah, gives, instead of Vītahavya, Dhṛitahavya, followed by Sanjaya, Jitās̥wa, Dhṛiti.

‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* gives him a son, Vaśin.

§ *Prāchuryeṇa*, 'abundantly'.

|| One of my MSS. has the present, भवन्ति; and this tense is implied in the parallel passage of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

¶ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 17, 18.

\*\* Prior Section, LXVI., 46; where, however, I find Dhṛishṭa, Dhṛishṭaketu, and Rañadhṛishṭa.

†† It looks as if there were some confusion between these persons and the *Matsya-purāṇa*'s sons of Dhṛishṭa and their father. *Vide supra*, p. 255, note 2.

‡‡ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 19—22.

§§ I find Mīdhwas. Professor Wilson's "Madhwat" is, almost certainly, wrong. Paurāṇik names that are restrictively so, are, with rare exceptions,

Devadatta, Agniveśya (also called Játukarṇa\*), a form of Agni, and progenitor of the Ágniveśya Brahmanas.† In the Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vaṁśa, the sons of Narishyat—whom the commentator on the latter considers as the same with Narishyanta,‡ —are termed Śakas (Sacæ or Scythians); whilst, again, it is said, that the son of Narishyanta was Dama, or, as differently read, Yama. As this latter affiliation is stated in the authorities, it would appear as if this Narishyanta was one of the sons of the Manu: but this is only a proof of the carelessness of the compilation; for, in the Vishnú, § Váyu, and Márkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, Narishyanta, the father of Dama, is the son of Marutta, the fourteenth of the posterity of Dishta or Nedishtha.||

---

significant. In the generality of instances, it is only when we recede into rather remote antiquity, that there is a difficulty in making Hindu proper names amenable to etymological investigation.

\* Likewise called Kánina.

† The Ágniveśyáyanas.

‡ We have, here, only two forms of one name.

§ *Vide supra*, p. 353.

|| Corrected from "Nedishtha."

---

## CORRIGENDA, &amp;c.

- P. 3, note \*. See Vol. II., p. 26, note 2.
- P. 4, l. 1. Read Ūrja.
- P. 11, note †. See Vol. II., p. 100, note 1. We read, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, V., I, 28: **अन्यस्त्रामपि जायायां त्रयः पुत्रा आसन्तु मन्त्रमसो रैवत इति मन्वन्तराधिपतयः ।**
- P. 13, l. 1. Read Ūru.
- P. 13, note §. For the Manu's wife, Śraddhā, see p. 233, note §. The Manu's correct epithet, as Dr. Muir reminds me, is Śraddhādeva, of which Śraddhadeva is a corruption. Śraddhadeva is, however, appropriate to Yama. See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 209, note 66 (2nd ed.). Also see the *Mahābhārata*, *Śānti-parvan*, śl. 9449.
- P. 13, note ††. For Dhṛiṣṭu read Dhṛiṣṭū. See p. 232, note ††, foot of the page.
- P. 13, note §§. Burnouf, in his *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III, Preface, p. CVI., takes the printer's error "Sanyāti", in the former edition, for a real reading.
- P. 14, note \*, end. The commentary there spoken of as ampler than the other is so, I am now convinced, only by interpolations; and these are comparatively rare, after the first few chapters of Book III.
- P. 16, note \*. Its last sentence may be a misstatement. See note below, on p. 24, note 1.
- P. 16, note †. See p. 80, note †.
- P. 22, l. 2 *ab infra*. I owe to Dr. Muir the indication of *sāvarīya* and *sāvarī* in the *Rigveda*, X., LXII., 8—11; and of the Muni Sāmvarāṇi, in the same Veda, *Vālakhilya*, III., 1. See, further, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 217, note 71 (2nd ed.).
- P. 24, note 1. I am unable to decipher, in any of my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, the passage there abstracted in translation.
- P. 24, l. 3. The ninth Manu and the eleventh are called Dakṣaputra and Dharmaputra, in a Paurāṇik extract already referred to: see Vol. II., p. 339, supplement to p. 131, note ¶.
- P. 26, l. 1. Read Rīshis.
- P. 26, l. 6. "Dharma-sāvarī." See supplementary note, just above, on p. 24, l. 3.
- P. 28, l. 6. Many particulars regarding the Manus, which I have not incorporated in my annotations, may be found in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth's *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, *sub voce* मनु.
- P. 29, notes, l. 2 *ab infra*. Read *Śānti-parvan*.
- P. 34, notes, l. 7. For यथा read यया.
- P. 34, note §. For Vamra, son of Vikhanas, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 293, note a.
- P. 34, notes, last line. For Traijāruṇi read Traiyāruṇi.
- P. 37, notes, l. 11 *ab infra*. See p. 221, note †.
- P. 40, notes, l. 11 *ab infra*. Read दशविधत्वम्.
- P. 40, notes, l. 9 *ab infra*. Read *paśubandha*.
- P. 44, notes † and ‡. The commentator on the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* says: **वाष्कल एव वाष्कलिः स्वार्थे इत् ।**

- P. 52, note †, line 1. Read यजुर्वेदं.
- P. 58, note †. See p. 323, note §.
- P. 63, l. 3. For the technicality *vaitāna*, see Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśvalāyana's *Āthiyasūtra*, Part II., p. 1, note 1.
- P. 66, note §. See, in explanation of *gāthā*, the same work, Part II., p. 90, III., 1, note 2.
- P. 67, l. 1. Read Āgneya.
- P. 68, l. 2. For the *artha-sāstra*, see the *Mitāksharā* on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, II., 21.
- P. 84, note †. In the *Matsya-purāṇa*, Chapter CXXVIII., the *brahmāstra* is represented as shot from a bow.  
For Bhṛigu, in connexion with fiery weapons, see p. 291, text and note †.
- P. 86, l. 4. Read Śūdra.
- P. 88, notes, l. 8. Read दादशेऽहि.
- P. 89, note †. In the *Nirṇayasindhu*, the passage cited is attributed to Gautama.
- P. 90, notes, ll. 6—11. Compare the *Nirṇayasindhu*, Bombay edition of 1857, III., B, fol. 10 r.
- P. 90, notes, l. 2 *ab infra*. Read चात्रं.
- P. 93, note 2. Sāyaṇa Āchārya, however, commenting on the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, VII., IX., cites the following *śruti*: यज देवानधीष्व वेदान्मयामुत्पादय । "Sacrifice to the gods, read the Vedas, beget offspring."  
See, further, the *Kaushitaki-brāhmaṇa Upanishad*, and the *Bṛihad-āranyaka Upanishad*, VI., IV.
- P. 94, note †. See p. 123, note ||.
- P. 98, l. 7 *ab infra*. Compare pp. 146, 147, text and notes.
- P. 103, notes, ll. 5, 6. Read III., A, fol. 30 v.
- P. 104, notes, last line. See p. 197, note ¶.
- P. 107, note †. The *Mitāksharā*, commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 7, has: सदाचारः । सतां शिष्टानामाचारोऽनुष्ठानम् ।
- P. 109, note \*. For Mitra, &c., see, further, the *Laws of the Mānavas*, XII., 121.
- P. 118, ll. 5, *et seq.* See p. 171, note §.
- P. 123, notes, l. 9. For *svadhā*, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 34, note a.
- P. 139, l. 2 *ab infra*. The double asterisks should be attached to the word "towel".
- P. 141, note \*, l. 12 *ab infra*. Read इदमन्यच्च.
- P. 146, ll. 1—4. The original is as follows:

सचैलस्य पितुः स्नानं जाति पुत्रे विधीयते ।

जातकर्म तथा कुर्याच्छ्राद्धमभ्युदये च यत् ॥

"When a son is born, the bathing of the father, in his clothes, is enjoined. Let him perform the *jāta-karman*, also, and the *śrāddha* for joyous occasions."

Compare p. 98, ll. 7—4 *ab infra*, the original of which is as follows:

जातस्य जातकर्मादि क्रियाकाण्डमशेषतः ।

पुत्रस्य कुर्वीत पिता श्राद्धं चाभ्युदयात्मकम् ॥

P. 146, note \*. See p. 291, note \*.

P. 151, notes, l. 4 *ab infra*. Read निवर्तेता चतुर्दशात्.

P. 152, note †. Compare the following stanza. referred to the *Kūrma-purāṇa*, quoted in the *Nirṇayasindhu*, Bombay edition, III., C, fol. 18 v.:

वापादयेव आत्मानं स्वयमग्न्युदकादिभिः ।

विहितं तस्य नाशीचं नापि कार्योदकक्रिया ॥

P. 158, note ††. See p. 221, note †.

P. 159, notes, l. 12 *ab infra*. For चित्रुता: read विश्रुता:.

P. 160, note †. See p. 147, notes, l. 1.

P. 161, notes, l. 3. Read Āttāh.

P. 162, note †, l. 1. Read चित्रियाणां.

P. 166, note †. Hemādri's quotations from the *Nandi-purāṇa* are, I find, too incorrect to be transcribed. They recognize five classes of *pitṛis*: Agnishwāttas, Barhishads, Kāvyas, Sukālins, and Vyāmas. The *Nāgara-khaṇḍa* of the *Skanda-purāṇa* names six classes: Agnishwāttas, Barhishads, Ājyapas, Somapas, Rāsmipas, and Upahūtas. In the *Vishṇudharmottara* we find seven classes, in two groups: Subhāswaras, Barhishads, Agnishwāttas, without form; Kravyādas, Upahūtas, Ājyapas, Sukālins, possessing forms. The *Śrāddhakalpa*, from which these particulars are taken, is very full on the subject of the *pitṛis*.

The *Vakni-purāṇa* reckons seven classes of *pitṛis*, entitled Subhāswaras, Barhishads, Agnishwāttas, Ājyapas, Upahūtas, Kravyādas, and Sukālins. It agrees, thus, precisely, with the *Vishṇudharmottara*, as just above referred to.

In the *Mahābhārata*, *Sabhā-parvan*, śl. 341, the names are given of classes of *pitṛis* called, agreeably to the best MSS. within my reach, Phenapas, Ushmapas, and Sudhāvats. In śl. 461—463, seven classes are enumerated: Vairājas, Agnishwāttas, Gārhapatyas, Somapas, Ekasṅgas, Chaturvedas, and Kālas:

पितृणां च गणान्विद्धि सन्नेव पुरुषर्षभ ।

मूर्तिमन्तो वै चत्वारस्त्रयस्याप्यशरीरिणः ॥

वैराजाश्च महाभागा अपिष्वात्ताश्च भारत ।

गार्हपत्या नाकचराः पितरो लोकविश्रुताः ॥

सोमपा एकमृक्काश्च चतुर्वेदाः कलास्तथा ।

एते चतुर्षु वर्णेषु पूज्यन्ते पितरो नृप ॥

The last-named classes are said to be honoured among the four castes. Compare p. 163, note †.

In the *Rigveda*, X., XIV. and XV., we read of the Kavyas, Barhishads, Agnishwāttas, Upahūtas, &c. &c.; and—compare p. 166, note \*,—the distinction is, thus early, made of *pitṛis* into the divisions of Agnidagdhas and Anagnidagdhas.

To exhaust the subject of these demigods, or even to collect all the more ancient passages in which they figure, would require considerable research.

In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, the origin of the *pitrīs* is stated as follows:

पितृवत्कर्ममानसान्मुचान्माधायत प्रभुः ।

पितरो सुपपन्नाः रात्र्यहोरकारासुजत ॥

तस्मात्ते पितरो देवाः पुत्रत्वं तेन तेषु ततः ।

यथा सुष्टासु पितरस्तान् तजुं स व्यपोहत ॥

"Regarding himself as a father, he [Prajāpati] thought upon these sons: he created Fathers (*Pitrīs*) from his armpits, in the interval between day and night. Hence these Fathers are gods: therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created." *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 78, 79. (2nd ed.).

P. 170, note ||. In p. 66, note §, the *Pitrī-gītā* is instanced as a specimen of a *gāthā*.

P. 175, note §. For further information regarding the sacrificial fires, see Śāṅkara Āchārya's commentary on the fourth chapter of the *Praśna Upanishad*.

P. 184, notes, last line. For त हस्य read तं हस्यं.

P. 188, l. 2. Read Śrāddha.

P. 190, l. 15. The work there named seems to be entitled, in preference, *Vahni-purāṇa*.

P. 190, l. 18. Read रोचकसाद्रवाधिव.

P. 194, note \*\*, l. 1. Read *priyangu*.

P. 196, note ||. Compare p. 130, note \*.

P. 198, notes, l. 9. Read vague sense.

P. 205, ll. 6 et seq. *ab infra*. The original is as follows:

वैष्णव्यं यज्ञभागाच्च देविह्रीदपुरोगमिः ।

इतं नो ब्रह्मणोऽप्याश्चामुल्लङ्घ्य परमेश्वर ॥

यद्यप्यशेषभूतस्तच्च वर्धते च तवांशकाः ।

तद्याप्यविद्याभेदेन भिन्नं पञ्चामहि जगत् ॥

P. 209, note 1. Were the Śāptatantavas a sect of Jains? They are named, as are the Jains, in the *Harshacharita*. See my edition of the *Vāsavadattā*, Preface, p. 53.

P. 215, notes, l. 2 *ab infra*. Trisanku, the Buddhist, uses the following language regarding Brāhmanas: "Quand ils veulent manger de la viande, voici le moyen qu'ils emploient: ils tuent les animaux en prononçant des Mantras, parce que, disent-ils, les brebis ainsi immolées vont droit au ciel. Mais si c'est là le chemin du ciel, pourquoi donc ces Brāhmanes n'immolent-ils pas aussi avec des Mantras eux et leurs femmes, leur père et leur mère, leurs frères et leurs sœurs, leurs fils et leurs filles? \* \* \* Non, il n'est pas vrai que l'eau lustrale et que les Mantras fassent monter au ciel les chèvres et les brebis; toutes ces inventions sont des moyens employés par ces méchants Brāhmanes pour satisfaire leur désir de manger de la viande." Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., p. 209.

P. 221, notes, l. 6. Read स भोगान् and संभोगान्.

P. 221, notes, l. 6 *ab infra*. Read Triyāruhi.

P. 230, note ||. See, further, Vol. II., p. 27.

P. 231, note ||. The legend of the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, there referred to, is translated, by Dr. Muir, as follows: "The brothers of Nābhāne-



dishtha disinherited him, whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachārin. Coming (to them), he said: 'What share have you given to me?' They replied: '(We have given thee) this judge and divider, (as thy share).' In consequence, sons, even now, speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father, and said: 'Father, they have given thee to me, as my share.' His father answered: 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice, in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but, as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony), they become bewildered. Make them recite these two hymns (R. V., x., 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and, when they are going to heaven, they will give thee that provision of a thousand which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said: 'So be it.' He approached them, saying: 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied: 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said: 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice and the heavenly world. Hence, when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him: 'This thousand, O Brāhman, is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand), a man in dark clothing rose up before him, from the north, and said: 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nābhānedishtha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who asked: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied; 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me, from the north, and took it from me, saying, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' His father said: 'It is his; but he will give it to thee.' He returned, and said (to the man): 'This is thine, reverend sir; so my father says.' (The man) replied: 'I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth.' Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand,—that Nābhānedishtha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this." *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 192, 193, (2nd ed.).

A relative passage, referred to in p. 257, note †, is then given, from the *Taittirīya-saṁhitā* of the *Yajurveda*: "Manu divided his property to his sons. He disinherited his son Nābhānedishtha, who was living as a Brahmachārin. He came and said: 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirases are celebrating a sacrifice. They do not know the heavenly world. Declare to them this *Brāhmaṇa*; and, when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the *Brāhmaṇa* to them; and, when they were going to heaven, they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him, as he was on the place of sacrifice, employed with the cattle, and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nābhānedishtha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so: that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence, the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give

me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of *soma* and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of *soma* and flour, and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."

- P. 232, notes, l. 6 *ab infra*. According to the *Linga-purāṇa*, the Manu's sons were nine; and their names are as in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, saving that Dhṛishṇu and Arishṭa take the places of Dhṛishṭa and Dishṭa. Except for Arishṭa instead of Dishṭa, the nine names, in the *Brahma-purāṇa*, are the same as those in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*. The *Vahni-purāṇa* gives Manu ten sons, with appellations altogether peculiar, as a whole; and the same may be said of the *Matsya-purāṇa*, my MSS. of which here present, for the rest, a good number of various readings.
- P. 238, notes, l. 13. Read *Rāmāyaṇa*.
- P. 240, notes, last line. Read *वैश्वता*.
- P. 246, note \*. See p. 311, note \*.
- P. 248, note ||. The ensuing legend is taken from the *Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa*, IV., V., 1, *etc.*: Chyavana of the race of Bhṛigu, or Chyavana of the race of Angīras, having magically assumed a shrivelled form, was abandoned. Śaryāta, the descendant of Manu, wandered over this [world], with his tribe. He sat down in the neighbourhood [of Chyavana]. His youths, while playing, fancied this shrivelled magical body to be worthless, and pounded it with clods. Chyavana was incensed at the sons of Śaryāta. He created discord among them, so that father fought with son, and brother with brother. Śaryāta bethought him, 'what have I done, in consequence of which this calamity has befallen us?' He ordered the cowherds and shepherds to be called, and said, 'which of you has seen anything here to day?' They replied, 'this shrivelled magical body which lies there is a man. Fancying it was something worthless, the youths pounded it with clods.' Śaryāta knew, then, that it was Chyavana. He yoked his chariot, and, taking his daughter Sukanyā, drove off, and arrived at the place where the Rishi was. He said, 'Reverence to thee, Rishi! I injured thee, because I did not know. This is Sukanyā: with her I appease thee. Let my tribe be reconciled.' His tribe was, in consequence, reconciled; and Śaryāta, of the race of Manu, strove that he might never again do injury to any one. Now, the Āświns used to wander over this world, performing cures. They approached Sukanyā, and wished to seduce her; but she would not consent. They said to her: 'Sukanyā, what shrivelled magical body is this by which thou liest? Follow us.' She replied: 'I will not abandon, while he lives, the man to whom my father gave me.' The Rishi became aware of this. He said, 'Sukanyā, what was this that they said to thee?' She told it to him. When informed, he said, 'If they address thee thus again, say to them, 'ye are neither complete nor perfect, and yet ye speak contemptuously of my husband;' and, if they ask 'in what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' then reply, 'make my husband young again, and I will tell you.' Accordingly, they came again to her, and said the same thing. She answered, 'Ye are neither complete nor perfect, and yet ye talk contemptuously of my husband.' They inquired, 'In what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' She rejoined, 'make my husband young again, and I

will tell you.' They replied, 'take him to this pond, and he shall come forth with any age which he shall desire. She took him to the pond; and he came forth with the age that he desired. The Áświns then asked, 'Sukanyá, in what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' To this the Rishi replied: 'The other gods celebrate a sacrifice in Kurukshetra, and exclude you two from it. That is the respect in which ye are incomplete and imperfect.' The Áświns then departed, and came to the gods who were celebrating a sacrifice, when the *Bahishpavamána* text had been recited. They said, 'Invite us to join you.' The gods replied, 'We will not invite you; for ye have wandered about very familiarly among men, performing cures.' The Áświns rejoined, 'Ye worship with a headless sacrifice.' They asked, 'How [do we worship] with a headless [sacrifice]?' The Áświns answered, 'Invite us to join you, and we will tell you.' The gods consented, and invited them. They offered this Áświna draught (*graha*) to the Áświns, who became the two *adhvaryu* priests of the sacrifice, and restored the head of the sacrifice. It is related, in the Bráhmaṇa of the Divákirttyas, in what manner they restored the head of the sacrifice," etc., etc. Dr. Muir, in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series, Vol. II., pp. 11—13.

- P. 259, l. 1. The proper name Ikshwáku occurs in the *Rigveda*, X., LX., 4., on which Professor Max Müller remarks: "This is the first mention of Ikshwáku, and the only one in the *Rigveda*. I take it not as the name of a king, but as the name of a people,—probably, the people who inhabited Bhájeratha, the country washed by the northern Gangá or the Bhágirathi." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series, Vol. II., p. 462, note 1.
- P. 264, note †. Read बृहदसुतश्चापि.
- P. 264, note ‡. See p. 319, note 1.
- P. 269, note †. *Prishthatas* rather means, there, 'behind him.'
- P. 283, notes, l. 7 *ab infra*. For note † read note ‡. There must be an omission, in the *Váyu-purána*, before the verse there quoted from it.
- P. 297, note †. Another inconsistency of the *Rámáyana* may be mentioned. In the *Áraṇya-kánda*, XLV., 8, 9, Marichi, Kaśyapa, and Vivaswat are spoken of as sons of Brahmá. Elsewhere in the same poem, as we have seen, they are represented as being, respectively, grandfather, father, and son.
- P. 308, note ¶. A better rendering is as follows: "With a view to the preservation from injury of the grain and the clouds, he threw that water for cursing neither on the earth nor into the air," &c.
- P. 312, notes, l. 4 *ab infra*. Read जीवितं.
- P. 313, note ¶. A special reason for my having declined to enter into particulars as to what is found in the *Matsya-purána* is, that the copies of it accessible to me are, for the most part, exceedingly incorrect, and, in the matter of proper names, exhibit the widest discrepancy. I may add, that my MSS. seem to support the list of names to which this note is appended.
- P. 316, notes, l. 5 *ab infra*. Read Báli.

